



THE WAIKATO REGIONAL POLICY STATEMENT

TE TAUĀKĪ KAUPAPAHERE
O TE ROHE O WAIKATO



HE TAIAO MAURIORA

HEALTHY ENVIRONMENT

HE ŌHANGA PAKARI

STRONG ECONOMY

HE HAPORI HIHIRI

VIBRANT COMMUNITIES

Document# 3647993
Policy Series 2016/01
ISSN 2230-4339 (Print)
ISSN 2230-4347 (Online)

Printed May 2016
JOB 4686

Private Bag 3038
Waikato Mail Centre
Hamilton 3240
New Zealand

0800 800 401
waikatoregion.govt.nz



Waikato Regional Council

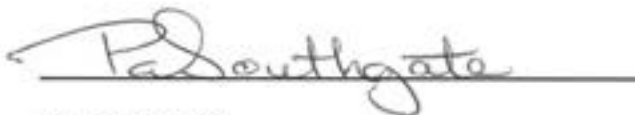
Regional Policy Statement for the Waikato Region

Waikato Regional Council has prepared the Proposed Waikato Regional Policy Statement in accordance with section 60 and the First Schedule of the Resource Management Act 1991.

The Waikato Regional Council resolved, by resolution on 28 April 2016, to approve and make operative the Proposed Waikato Regional Policy Statement.

The Regional Policy Statement became operative on the 20th day of May 2016

Signed by Waikato Regional Council by the affixing of its Common Seal in the presence of



PA Southgate
Chairperson



CDA McLay
Chief Executive Officer



Dated at Hamilton this 28th day of April 2016.

Chairperson's foreword

I love the Waikato region: its beautiful natural environment, its vibrant city and towns, and the excellent services and opportunities.

Looking after the health of our environment is especially important and, like me, the people of the Waikato have an amazing passion for it.

It's not surprising – we have iconic landscapes, rivers, mountains and coastal areas, and a strong desire for healthy water, soil and air.

These all need protecting to meet many of our economic, cultural and recreational needs – water for safe drinking and swimming, soil for agriculture and horticulture, land for housing, geothermal resources for energy generation, and clean air. But our needs and lifestyles place a heavy demand on these resources through pollution and waste from land use, industry and vehicle use.

There are many big and varied issues which need to be addressed – from climate change, ecological integrity and indigenous biodiversity to management of the built environment, natural hazards and geothermal resources.

That's where Waikato's Regional Policy Statement (RPS) has a major role to play so our region can be enjoyed by future generations.

It's a planning tool that will help the regional, city and district councils decide what needs to be done to keep and enhance the environmental conditions that drive our economy and provide us with the quality of life our region currently enjoys.

Importantly, it focuses councils on ensuring the way we use our natural resources doesn't tip the balance and compromise the ability of future generations to provide for their own needs.

It's been really important to us to hear the thoughts of the people in our region and the community has had a big influence on the RPS. We released the proposed Regional Policy Statement for public comment in 2010. Two years later, following four months of submissions and deliberations on the evidence, a hearings committee released more than 10,000 separate decisions.

A healthy environment is critical to our region's economy and ensuring everyone benefits from the quality of life most of us enjoy now.

We all have a part to play, because it's only by working together that we can ensure our region's natural resources are protected for a better and brighter future.

Paula Southgate
Chairperson

Table of contents

Introduction	1
1 Role and purpose of regional policy statements	1
2 Other relevant legislation	2
3 Relationships with other policies and plans	2
4 Integrated management	5
5 Policy horizon	5
Reader's guide	7
1 Structure of the Regional Policy Statement	7
2 General interpretation	7
3 Area covered by the Regional Policy Statement	8
PART A	
1 Issues	1-1
Issue 1.1 State of resources	1-1
Issue 1.2 Effects of climate change	1-2
Issue 1.3 Providing for energy demand	1-3
Issue 1.4 Managing the built environment	1-4
Issue 1.5 Relationship of tāngata whenua with the environment (te taiao)	1-6
Issue 1.6 Health and wellbeing of the Waikato River catchment	1-7
2 Te Ture Whaimana o Te Awa o Waikato – Vision and Strategy for the Waikato River	2-1
2.1 Waikato-Tainui Raupatu Claims (Waikato River) Settlement Act 2010	2-1
2.2 Ngati Tuwharetoa, Raukawa, and Te Arawa River Iwi Waikato River Act 2010	2-1
2.3 Nga Wai o Maniapoto (Waipa River) Act 2012	2-1
2.4 Waikato Regional Policy Statement	2-2
2.5 Vision and Strategy for the Waikato River	2-2
3 Objectives	3-1
3.1 Integrated management	3-1
3.2 Resource use and development	3-1
3.3 Decision making	3-2
3.4 Health and wellbeing of the Waikato River	3-4
3.5 Energy	3-4
3.6 Adapting to climate change	3-5
3.7 Coastal environment	3-5
3.8 Ecosystem services	3-6
3.9 Relationship of tāngata whenua with the environment	3-6
3.10 Sustainable and efficient use of resources	3-7
3.11 Air quality	3-7
3.12 Built environment	3-7
3.13 Mauri and health of marine waters	3-8
3.14 Mauri and values of fresh water bodies	3-9
3.15 Allocation and use of fresh water	3-10
3.16 Riparian areas and wetlands	3-10
3.17 Geothermal	3-11
3.18 Historic and cultural heritage	3-11
3.19 Ecological integrity and indigenous biodiversity	3-12
3.20 Outstanding natural features and landscapes	3-12
3.21 Amenity	3-12

3.22	Natural character	3-13
3.23	Public access	3-13
3.24	Natural hazards	3-14
3.25	Values of soil	3-14
3.26	High class soils	3-14
PART B		
4	Integrated management	4-1
Policy 4.1	Integrated approach	4-1
Policy 4.2	Collaborative approach	4-6
Policy 4.3	Tāngata whenua	4-9
Policy 4.4	Regionally significant industry and primary production	4-10
4A	Indicative coastal environment maps	4-13
5	Air	5-1
Policy 5.1	Improve degraded air quality	5-1
Policy 5.2	Manage discharges to air	5-3
Policy 5.3	Manage adverse effects on amenity	5-4
6	Built environment	6-1
Policy 6.1	Planned and co-ordinated subdivision, use and development	6-1
Policy 6.2	Planning for development in the coastal environment	6-4
Policy 6.3	Co-ordinating growth and infrastructure	6-6
Policy 6.4	Marae and papakāinga	6-8
Policy 6.5	Energy demand management	6-9
Policy 6.6	Significant infrastructure and energy resources	6-10
Policy 6.7	Mangatawhiri and Mangatangi municipal water supply bodies	6-13
Policy 6.8	Access to minerals	6-13
Policy 6.9	Information collection	6-15
Policy 6.10	Implementing the Coromandel Peninsula Blueprint	6-16
Policy 6.11	Implementing Taupo District 2050	6-17
Policy 6.12	Implementing Franklin District Growth Strategy	6-18
Policy 6.13	Governance collaboration in the Future Proof area	6-18
Policy 6.14	Adopting Future Proof land use pattern	6-20
Policy 6.15	Density targets for Future Proof area	6-22
Policy 6.16	Commercial development in the Future Proof area	6-23
Policy 6.17	Rural-residential development in Future Proof area	6-24
Policy 6.18	Monitoring development in Future Proof area	6-25
Policy 6.19	Review of Future Proof map and tables	6-26
6A	Development principles	6-27
6B	Significant transport infrastructure maps	6-29
6C	Future Proof map (indicative only)	6-31
6D	Future Proof tables	6-32
7	Coastal marine area	7-1
Policy 7.1	Interests in the coastal marine area	7-1
Policy 7.2	Marine water quality	7-3
8	Fresh water bodies	8-1
Policy 8.1	Approach to identifying fresh water body values and managing fresh water bodies	8-1
Policy 8.2	Outstanding fresh water bodies and significant values of wetlands	8-4
Policy 8.3	All fresh water bodies	8-6

Policy 8.4	Catchment-based intervention	8-10
Policy 8.5	Waikato River catchment	8-12
Policy 8.6	Allocating fresh water	8-14
Policy 8.7	Efficient use of fresh water	8-16
8A	Modified fresh water bodies	8-17
8B	Freshwater bodies and wetlands that have high water quality	8-17
8B	Map of fresh water bodies and wetlands	8-20
8C	Priority catchments map	8-21
9	Geothermal	9-1
Policy 9.1	Sustainable management of the Regional Geothermal Resource	9-1
Policy 9.2	Significant Geothermal Features	9-5
Policy 9.3	Development Geothermal Systems	9-7
Policy 9.4	Limited Development Geothermal Systems	9-9
Policy 9.5	Protected Geothermal Systems	9-10
Policy 9.6	Research Geothermal Systems	9-11
Policy 9.7	Small Geothermal Systems	9-12
Policy 9.8	Geothermal characteristics valued by tāngata whenua	9-13
9A	Geothermal systems	9-14
9B	Significant Geothermal Feature types	9-15
10	Heritage	10-1
Policy 10.1	Managing historic and cultural heritage	10-1
Policy 10.2	Relationship of Māori to taonga	10-2
Policy 10.3	Effects of development on historic and cultural heritage	10-3
10A	Historic and cultural heritage assessment criteria	10-5
11	Indigenous biodiversity	11-1
Policy 11.1	Maintain or enhance indigenous biodiversity	11-1
Policy 11.2	Protect significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitats of indigenous fauna	11-5
Policy 11.3	Collaborative management	11-7
Policy 11.4	Safeguard coastal/marine ecosystems	11-8
11A	Criteria for determining significance of indigenous biodiversity	11-10
11B	Significant indigenous biodiversity roles and responsibilities	11-12
11C	Opoutere and Wharekawa Harbour – Area of significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitats of indigenous fauna	11-13
12	Landscape (including seascape), natural character and amenity	12-1
Policy 12.1	Outstanding natural features and landscapes	12-1
Policy 12.2	Preserve natural character	12-2
Policy 12.3	Maintain and enhance areas of amenity value	12-4
Policy 12.4	Maintain and enhance public access	12-5
Policy 12.5	Appropriate restrictions on public access	12-6
12A	Outstanding natural features and landscapes	12-8
12B	Landscape assessment approach	12-26
12C	Natural character of the coastal environment: assessment criteria	12-28
13	Natural hazards	13-1
Policy 13.1	Natural hazard risk management approach	13-1

Policy 13.2	Manage activities to reduce the risks from natural hazards	13-4
Policy 13.3	High impact, low probability natural hazard events	13-6
14	Soils	14-1
Policy 14.1	Maintain or enhance the life supporting capacity of the soil resource	14-1
Policy 14.2	High class soils	14-2
Policy 14.3	Soil contaminants	14-3
Policy 14.4	Contaminated land	14-4
Policy 14.5	Peat soils	14-6
PART C		
15	Monitoring and evaluation	15-1
15.1	General	15-1
15.2	Review existing procedures for monitoring	15-2
15.3	Tāngata whenua involvement	15-2
15.4	Environmental results anticipated	15-2
15.5	Giving effect to the Regional Policy Statement	15-7
16	Principal reasons for adopting	16-1
16.1	Background	16-1
16.2	Objectives	16-1
16.3	Policies and implementation methods	16-1
Glossary		G-1
Appendix 1: Statutory acknowledgements		A-1

List of figures

Figure 1:	Planning framework	2
Figure 2:	Coverage of the resource management policy and planning framework	3
Figure 11:	Significant indigenous biodiversity roles and responsibilities	11-12
Figure 15:	Policy implementation, monitoring and review cycle	15-1

List of maps

Map 1-1:	Waikato region	9
Map 2-1:	Area covered by the Vision and Strategy for the Waikato and Waipa Rivers	2-4
Map 4-1:	Overview of indicative coastal environment maps	4-13
Map 4-2:	Coastal environment 1	4-14
Map 4-3:	Coastal environment 2	4-15
Map 4-4:	Coastal environment 3	4-16
Map 4-5:	Coastal environment 4	4-17
Map 4-6:	Coastal environment 5	4-18
Map 4-7:	Coastal environment 6	4-19
Map 4-8:	Coastal environment 7	4-20
Map 4-9:	Coastal environment 8	4-21
Map 4-10:	Coastal environment 9	4-22
Map 4-11:	Coastal environment 10	4-23
Map 4-12:	Coastal environment 11	4-24
Map 4-13:	Coastal environment 12	4-25
Map 4-14:	Coastal environment 13	4-26
Map 4-15:	Coastal environment 14	4-27
Map 4-16:	Coastal environment 15	4-28
Map 4-17:	Coastal environment 16	4-29
Map 4-18:	Coastal environment 17	4-30
Map 6-1:	Significant transport corridors	6-29
Map 6-1A:	Significant transport corridors (Greater Hamilton)	6-30
Map 6-2:	Future Proof indicative urban limits	6-31
Map 8-1:	Fresh water bodies and wetlands to be considered by Method 8.2.1	8-20
Map 8-2:	Identified catchments for intervention (Policy 8.4)	8-21

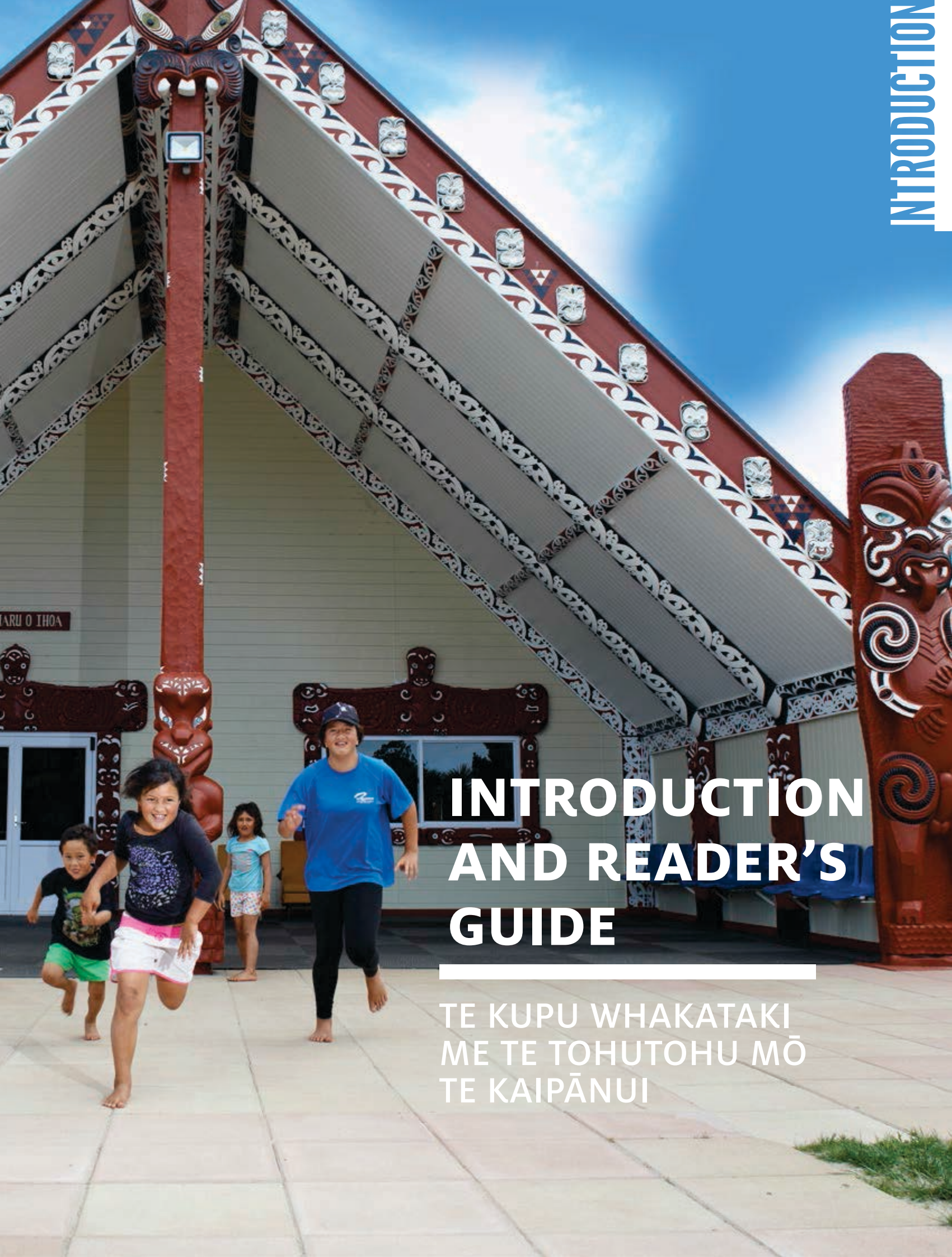
Map 9-1:	Geothermal systems	9-14
Map 11-1:	Opoutere and Wharekawa Harbour	11-13
Map 12-1:	Overview of outstanding natural features and landscapes (ONFL) maps	12-10
Map 12-2:	ONFL 1 – Tongariro National Park	12-11
Map 12-3:	ONFL 2 – Kaimanawa Mountains	12-12
Map 12-4:	ONFL 3 – Northern Herangi Range	12-13
Map 12-5:	ONFL 4 – Mount Karioi	12-14
Map 12-6:	ONFL 5 – Coromandel Range and Moehau Range	12-15
Map 12-7:	ONFL 6 – Mount Maungatautari	12-16
Map 12-8:	ONFL 7 – Mount Pirongia	12-17
Map 12-9:	ONFL 8 – Kaimai Range (north of Ngatamahinerua)	12-18
Map 12-10:	ONFL 9 – Lake Taupō	12-19
Map 12-11:	ONFL 10/1 – Cathedral Cove, Shakespeare Cliff and coastline south of Hahei	12-20
Map 12-12:	ONFL 10/2 – Northern tip of Coromandel Peninsula and western slopes of Moehau Range out to coast	12-21
Map 12-13:	ONFL 10/3 – Tuatēawa	12-22
Map 12-14:	ONFL 11 – Waiotapu Geothermal Area & Lake Ngakoro	12-23
Map 12-15:	ONFL 12 – Horohoro Escarpment	12-24
Map 12-16:	ONFL 13 – Opoutere Beach	12-25

List of tables

Table 6-1:	Future Proof residential growth allocation and staging 2006-2061	6-32
Table 6-2:	Future Proof industrial land allocation	6-33
Table 6-3:	Industrial land allocation in the North Waikato	6-34
Table 6-4:	Future Proof hierarchy of major commercial centres	6-35
Table 8-1:	Fresh water bodies – hydro electric generation	8-17
Table 8-2:	Fresh water bodies – domestic and municipal water supply bodies	8-17
Table 8-3:	Freshwater bodies with high water quality – ecological health (inferred from water quality measurements)	8-17
Table 8-4:	Freshwater bodies – contact recreation purposes	8-18
Table 8-5:	Lakes with high water quality, based on condition and vulnerability	8-18
Table 8-6:	Wetlands identified as being of international importance	8-19
Table 9-1:	Significant Geothermal Feature types	9-15
Table 10-1:	Historic and cultural heritage assessment criteria	10-5
Table 10-2:	Māori culture and traditions assessment criteria	10-6
Table 11-1:	Criteria for determining significance of indigenous biodiversity	11-11
Table 12-1:	Outstanding natural features and landscapes (ONFL) of regional significance	12-8
Table 12-2:	Typical factors to consider when assessing landscapes	12-27
Table 12-3:	Natural character assessment criteria	12-28

INTRODUCTION AND READER'S GUIDE

TE KUPU WHAKATAKI
ME TE TOHUTOHU MŌ
TE KAIPĀNUI



Introduction

1 Role and purpose of regional policy statements

The purpose of the Resource Management Act 1991 (RMA) is stated in section 5:

- (1) *The purpose of this Act is to promote the sustainable management of natural and physical resources.*
- (2) *In this Act, sustainable management means managing the use, development, and protection of natural and physical resources in a way, or at a rate, which enables people and communities to provide for their social, economic, and cultural wellbeing and for their health and safety while—*
 - (a) *sustaining the potential of natural and physical resources (excluding minerals) to meet the reasonably foreseeable needs of future generations; and*
 - (b) *safeguarding the life-supporting capacity of air, water, soil, and ecosystems; and*
 - (c) *avoiding, remedying, or mitigating any adverse effects of activities on the environment.*

The RMA requires every region to prepare a regional policy statement. The purpose of a regional policy statement is to achieve the purpose of the RMA by providing an overview of the resource management issues of the region, and policies and methods to achieve integrated management of the **natural and physical resources**.

The contents of regional policy statements are set out in section 62 of the RMA:

- (1) *A regional policy statement must state —*
 - (a) *the significant resource management issues for the region; and*
 - (b) *the resource management issues of significance to —*
 - (i) *iwi authorities in the region; and*
 - (ii) *the board of a foreshore and seabed reserve, to the extent that those issues relate to that reserve; and*
 - (c) *the objectives sought to be achieved by the statement; and*
 - (d) *the policies for those issues and objectives and an explanation of those policies; and*
 - (e) *the methods (excluding rules) used, or to be used, to implement the policies; and*
 - (f) *the principal reasons for adopting the objectives, policies, and methods of implementation set out in the statement; and*
 - (g) *the environmental results anticipated from implementation of those policies and methods; and*
 - (h) *the processes to be used to deal with issues that cross local authority boundaries, and issues between territorial authorities or between regions; and*
 - (i) *the local authority responsible in the whole or any part of the region for specifying the objectives, policies, and methods for the control of the use of land —*
 - (i) *to avoid or mitigate natural hazards or any group of hazards; and*
 - (ii) *to prevent or mitigate the adverse effects of the storage, use, disposal, or transportation of hazardous substances; and*
 - (iii) *to maintain indigenous biological diversity; and*
 - (j) *the procedures used to monitor the efficiency and effectiveness of the policies or methods contained in the statement; and*
 - (k) *any other information required for the purpose of the regional council's functions, powers, and duties under this Act.*
- (2) *If no responsibilities are specified in the regional policy statement for functions described in subsection (1)(i)(i) or (ii), the regional council retains primary responsibility for the function in subsection (1)(i)(i) and the territorial authorities of the region retain primary responsibility for the function in subsection (1)(i)(ii).*

- (3) *A regional policy statement must not be inconsistent with any water conservation order and must give effect to a national policy statement or New Zealand coastal policy statement.*

The planning framework is illustrated in Figure 1 below.

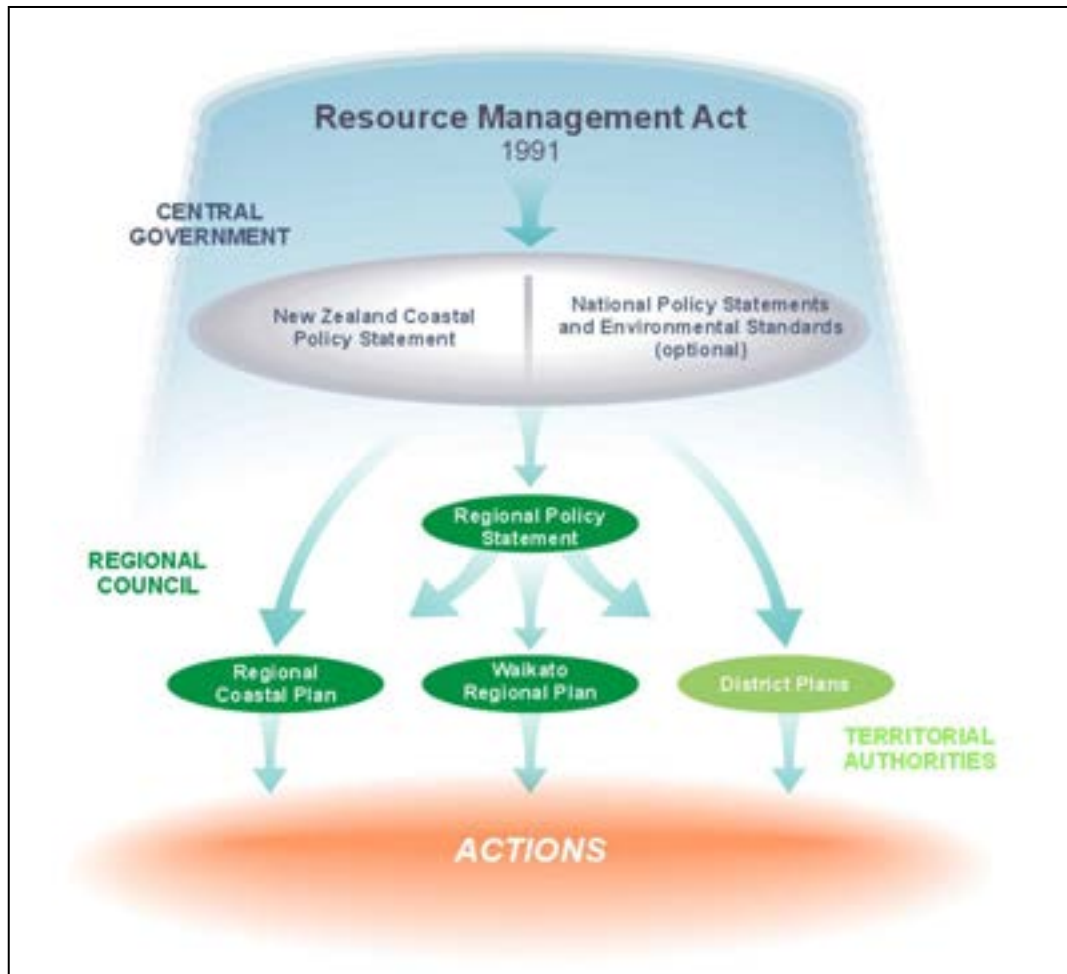


Figure 1: Planning framework

2 Other relevant legislation

- Land Transport Act 2003
- Local Government Act 2002
- Hauraki Gulf Marine Park Act 2000

3 Relationships with other policies and plans

The RMA establishes a system for resource management planning at the national, regional and local levels. The policy and planning documents provided for in the RMA are illustrated in Figure 2 below. Central to the purpose of each of these documents is the promotion of sustainable resource management.

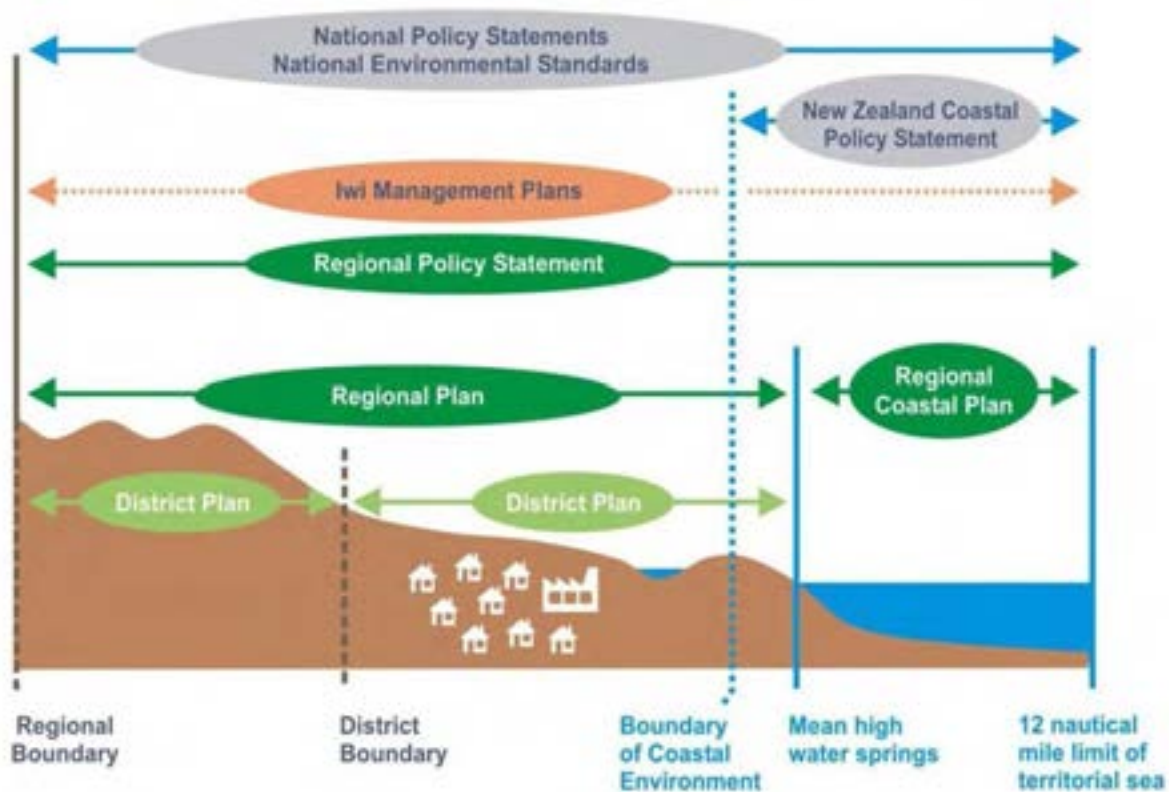


Figure 2: Coverage of the resource management policy and planning framework

3.1 National policy statements

National policy statements are prepared by central government and cover matters of national importance. Regional policy statements must give effect to national policy statements. There are currently four national policy statements in effect:

- New Zealand Coastal Policy Statement 2010, and Sections 7 and 8 of the Hauraki Gulf Marine Park Act 2000 are deemed to be a New Zealand Coastal Policy Statement;
- National Policy Statement on Electricity Transmission;
- National Policy Statement on Freshwater Management; and
- National Policy Statement on Renewable Electricity Generation.

One additional policy statement has been proposed by the Minister for the Environment:

- Proposed National Policy Statement on Indigenous Biodiversity.

3.2 National environmental standards

Central government can prepare technical standards relating to the use, development and protection of natural and physical resources (national environmental standards). These are a form of regulation (see section 3.2 below). Methods for implementing these standards can also be prescribed. This provides an opportunity to promote the use of consistent standards, requirements or recommended practices nationally. National standards override existing provisions in plans that require a lesser standard. However, where a plan specifies a higher standard it prevails over a national standard if the standard expressly says that a rule in a plan or consent may be more stringent than the standard.

Currently the following five standards are in effect:

- National Environmental Standards for Air Quality;
- National Environmental Standard for Sources of Human Drinking Water;
- National Environmental Standards for Telecommunication Facilities;
- National Environmental Standards for Electricity Transmission; and
- National Environmental Standard for Assessing and Managing Contaminants in Soil to Protect Human Health.

A further three are in various stages of development and relate to:

- ecological flows and water levels;
- future sea level rise; and
- forestry.

3.3 Regulations

Regulations are a type of subordinate legislation. The power to make regulations under the Resource Management Act is contained in section 360. Current regulations in force include the Resource Management (Marine Pollution) Regulations 1998. Currently under development are regulations on the measurement and reporting of water takes, in place of the proposed National Environmental Standard for Measurement of Water Takes.

3.4 Vision and Strategy for the Waikato River

As part of the Waikato River Settlement between the Crown and Waikato-Tainui, Te Ture Whaimana o Te Awa o Waikato – the Vision and Strategy for the Waikato River has been developed. This Vision and Strategy was developed by the Guardians Establishment Committee, **iwi** and communities of the Waikato River **catchment** and will be periodically reviewed by the Waikato River Authority.

3.5 Iwi planning documents

The RMA requires that planning documents recognised by an **iwi authority**, such as iwi management plans, be taken into account in the preparation of the regional policy statement, to the extent that it has bearing on the resource management issues of the region.

3.6 Statutory acknowledgements

A statutory acknowledgement is a means by which the Crown has formally acknowledged the statements made by iwi of their cultural, spiritual, historical and traditional association with a statutory area. Local authorities must attach information recording statutory acknowledgements to all statutory plans that wholly or partly cover the area. The attachment of such information is not subject to the provisions of Schedule 1 of the RMA. Statutory acknowledgements are listed in Appendix 1 to this Regional Policy Statement.

3.7 Marine and Coastal Area (Takutai Moana) Act 2011

When preparing a regional policy statement a regional council must take into account, if it is lodged with the council, a planning document prepared by a customary marine title group under section 85 of this Act, to the extent that it has bearing on the resource management issues of the region. It must:

- recognise and provide for the matters in that document to the extent that they relate to the relevant customary marine title area; and
- take into account the matters in that document to the extent that they relate to a part of the common marine area outside the customary marine title area of the relevant group.

3.8 Regional plans

Each region is required to produce a regional coastal plan to assist the regional council to exercise its functions in the **coastal marine area**. It must be approved by the Minister of Conservation. Other regional plans are optional and if prepared must give effect to regional policy statements, and any national policy statement. Regional plans may contain rules that have the force and effect of a regulation under the RMA.

3.9 District plans

Territorial authorities are required to prepare district plans. District plans may contain rules to control the use of land, including subdivision. As with regional plans, district plans must also give effect to regional policy statements. It is through this that integrated management of regional council and **territorial authority** functions occurs.

In addition to the regional policy statement and plans mentioned above, the RMA also makes provision for the preparation of joint plans and for combined plans and regional policy statements. At this stage there are no joint plans within the Waikato region.

3.10 Other plans and strategies

Other plans and strategies prepared by local and central government agencies and other organisations are relevant to resource management and can contribute to achieving the objectives and policies of a regional policy statement. They may be prepared pursuant to other legislation, such as the Local Government Act or Civil Defence and Emergency Management Act, or they may be non-regulatory documents. Examples include:

- pest management strategies;
- structure plans;
- long-term plans;
- reserve management plans;
- conservation management strategies and plans;
- national energy efficiency and conservation strategies;
- civil defence and emergency management plans; and
- growth management strategies.

In addition, Waikato Regional Council must prepare a land transport plan for the region. The Land Transport Management Amendment Act 2013 requires that any regional land transport plan take into account any relevant regional policy statement.

4 Integrated management

Integrated management requires the adoption of an approach that recognises and accounts for:

- the natural processes and basic principles that support life;
- the complex interactions between air, water, land and all living things;
- the needs of current and future generations;
- environmental, social, economic and cultural outcomes; and
- the need to work with agencies, landowners, resource users and communities.

This is achieved through the hierarchical relationship of regional policy statements to other policy and planning documents developed under the RMA and other legislation (including biosecurity and transport legislation), the cross-linkages within the regional policy statement, and the relationships between the implementation methods.

5 Policy horizon

This Regional Policy Statement is forward looking and takes a long-term approach to the identification and resolution of resource management issues. It recognises that issues often emerge or evolve over time (from years to decades or centuries), and that it will similarly take time to address them and halt or reverse any adverse trends.

This Regional Policy Statement looks 100 years into the future. This accords well with the purposes of sustainable management of our natural and physical resources, and meeting the reasonably foreseeable needs of future generations. It recognises the long life of community **infrastructure**, including the fact that many critical infrastructural elements in the region are either the same **structures** or have been in the same location for the last century. Additionally, the effects of current activities are projected to take many years for their full impacts to be realised. Notwithstanding the 100 year policy horizon applying generally to the management of resources in the Waikato Region, a shorter policy horizon typically applies when modelling Development Geothermal Systems. However, it must be acknowledged that the **Regional Geothermal Resource** should be sustained for future generations.

While the Regional Policy Statement adopts a long timeframe, it has a 10-year review cycle as set out in the Resource Management Act. More information on this can be found in Chapter 15.

Reader's guide

1 Structure of the Regional Policy Statement

1.1 Outline

This Regional Policy Statement is set out in three substantive parts. This structure addresses the requirement for integrated management. In so doing it advances the understanding of the inter-connected nature of resource management through the explicit identification of objectives that are relevant to the management of more than one resource.

Part A: Issues and Objectives

Six significant resource management issues are identified. Twenty-six objectives address the issues. The objectives identify the desired end state of the region's **natural and physical resources**. In many instances they are enduring targets and will take longer than the life of the Regional Policy Statement to be achieved. Achievement will be through the actions identified as policies and methods in Part B. This section also contains Te Ture Whaimana o Te Awa o Waikato – the Vision and Strategy for the Waikato River, which is the primary direction-setting document for the Waikato River and its catchments.

Part B: Policies and Methods

This is where the power of the policy statement lies. This section identifies what action is to be taken by whom and by what means to achieve the objectives identified in Part A. This enables an appreciation of the effects of implementation methods and provides an opportunity to measure success within the statutory 10-year review period. This is particularly useful in relation to long-term objectives.

Part C: Monitoring and Evaluation

This part identifies the procedures to be used for monitoring the effectiveness of the Regional Policy Statement in achieving the stated objectives. Where the objectives are aspirational in nature and are expected to endure beyond the life of the Regional Policy Statement, the environmental results anticipated will be used as a measure of success. This part also includes discussion of the principal reasons for adopting.

1.2 Issues of significance to iwi authorities

Regional policy statements are required to state the resource management issues of significance to **iwi authorities**. Waikato-Tainui, Maniapoto, Raukawa, Te Arawa, Ngāti Tūwharetoa and Hauraki have worked with Waikato Regional Council to ensure the issues of significance to them are reflected in Chapter 1 and addressed through the objectives, policies and methods in Chapters 3-14. Each of the six issues in Chapter 1 is significant to **tāngata whenua**.

2 General interpretation

The following are intended to assist the reader in the general interpretation and use of this policy statement:

- Objectives are intended to be achieved through the implementation of policies and methods in this document. Policies and implementation methods are to be interpreted as outlined in the Resource Management Act 1991, whereby the implementation methods are not part of the policy, but are a means to achieve the policy. The policies and methods are interrelated and are to be read as a package.
- Unless otherwise specified, the items included in bulleted or numbered lists are provided in no order or priority and all factors should be considered equal.
- For ease of reference the terms that are defined or further explained in a glossary are **bolded** the first time that they appear in each chapter.

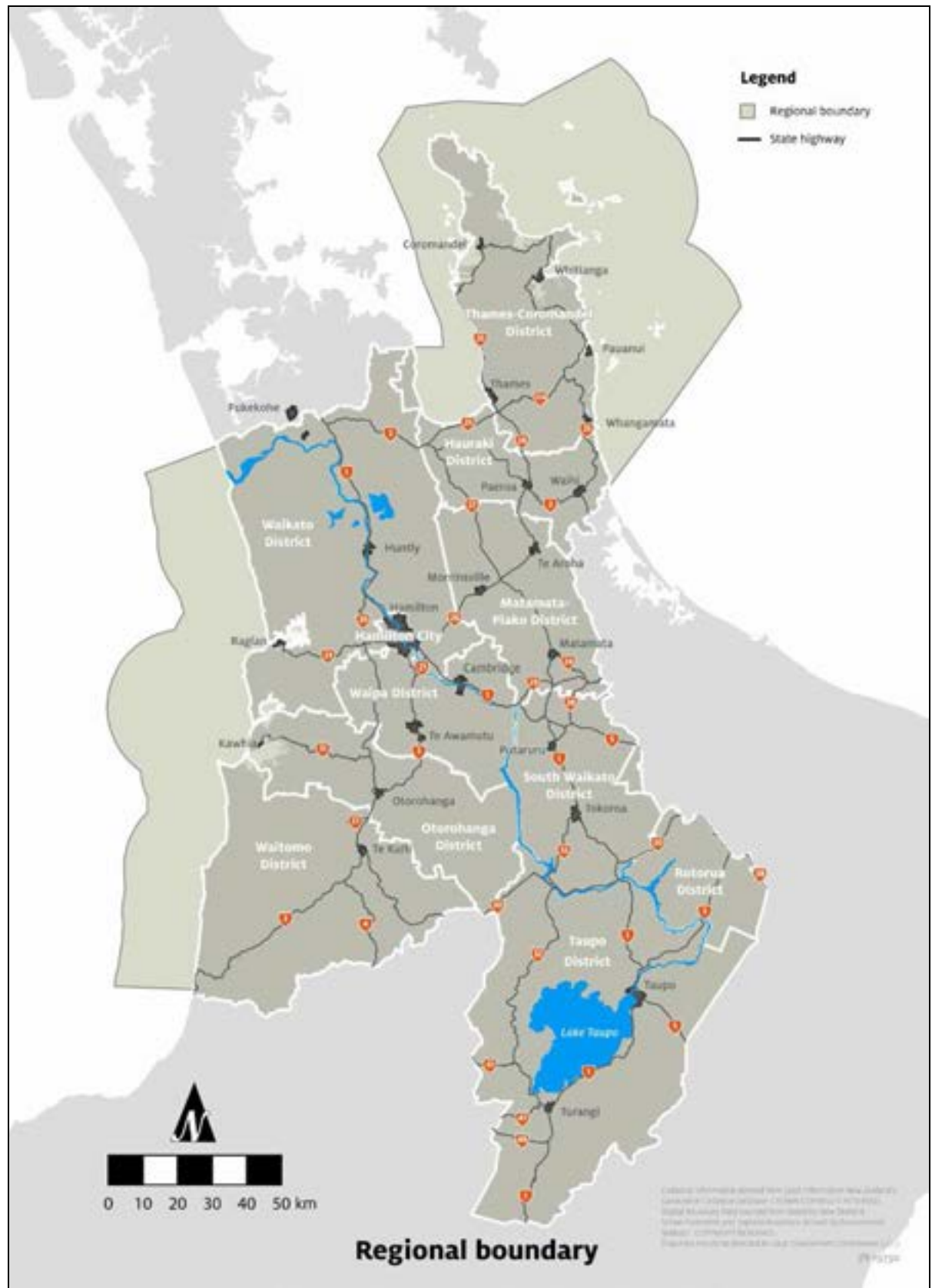
- All consent holders are required, where practicable, to avoid the adverse effects of their activities, and to remedy or mitigate them if they have not been avoided.
- Regional policy statements do not contain rules. Any rules that stem from the implementation of policies must be translated through a district or regional plan. In general the term 'control' has been used in implementation methods in this document where it is anticipated that rules will be necessary to implement the method (this may or may not be in combination with non-regulatory methods).
- This Regional Policy Statement has adopted the following standard terminology:
 - 'Shall' has been used where methods are of a directive nature, where little discretion is intended to be exercised, and where it is intended that district or regional plans shall give effect to the method.
 - 'Should' has been used where it is intended that the direction should be followed, except where there are good reasons not to, as demonstrated in a s32 report or other appropriate evaluation or analysis.
 - 'Will' has been used in those methods that apply to only the Waikato Regional Council and where it is intended that the direction should be followed, except where there are good reasons not to, as demonstrated in a s32 report or other appropriate evaluation or analysis.
- Some activities will be deemed appropriate despite the fact they will or may create adverse effects. This will generally occur when the positive effects the activity will generate are considered to outweigh the adverse effects. This document refers to these adverse effects as 'unavoidable adverse effects'.
- Where a provision in this document refers to both regional plans and district plans, it is intended that the provision will be applied through both documents but within the functions and jurisdiction of the respective authorities as outlined in the Resource Management Act and this Regional Policy Statement.
- While district plans are required to give effect to the Regional Policy Statement, territorial authorities may choose to adopt a stronger or more restrictive management regime within the areas under their control. In this respect the provisions of this policy statement can be considered as 'bottom lines'.
- Chapter 4 of the Regional Policy Statement (Integrated management) relates to the management of natural and physical resources generally. As such, the provisions of this chapter should be read in conjunction with and in addition to all of the resource-specific chapters.
- Where lists are provided and the same conjunction (and/or) is intended for the entire list, the conjunction is placed only between the second to last and the last list items.

3 Area covered by the Regional Policy Statement

This Regional Policy Statement is a statement of policy for the Waikato region as constituted by the Local Government (Waikato Region) Reorganisation Order 1989 (see Map 1 below). The local authorities comprising the Waikato region are:

- Waikato Regional Council
- the territorial authorities of:
 - a) Thames-Coromandel District
 - b) Hauraki District (including Franklin)
 - c) Waikato District (including Franklin)
 - d) Matamata-Piako District
 - e) Hamilton City
 - f) Waipa District
 - g) South Waikato District
 - h) Otorohanga District
 - i) Waitomo District

Regional and district plans prepared by these authorities must give effect to the Regional Policy Statement for the Waikato region.



Map 1-1: Waikato region

PART A

TE WĀHANGA A

1 Issues

The Resource Management Act requires regional policy statements to state both the regionally significant resource management issues and issues of significance to **iwi** authorities of the region. This section fulfils both requirements.

Issue 1.1 State of resources

Declining quality and quantity of **natural and physical resources** impacts their life-supporting capacity, reduces **intrinsic values** and **ecosystem services** and in general reduces our ability to provide for our wellbeing.

While addressing this issue generally, specific focus should be directed to addressing the following matters:

- a) restoring and protecting the health and wellbeing of the Waikato and Waipa Rivers;
- b) unacceptable risk to human health from poor air quality caused by fine particulate matter;
- c) effects of intensive land based activities by the accumulation of **contaminants** from point and non-point sources in soils and the effects on water quality;
- d) efficient allocation and efficient use of freshwater resources;
- e) effects of sedimentation and nutrients in estuaries and harbours that is not derived from natural processes;
- f) **indigenous biodiversity** decline;
- g) increasing potential for conflicts between activities in the **coastal marine area**;
- h) increasing demand and competition for **fresh water** and the need for management responses to address conflicting demands, existing over-allocation at a **catchment** level, and to avoid any further over allocation;
- i) the interrelationship between the volume of water abstracted and the quality of the water remaining in the **water body**;
- j) the availability of water to enable people and communities to provide for their existing and future social, economic and cultural wellbeing;
- k) better integration of land use and water resource planning;
- l) riparian margins and the interrelationship between the land and water interface, and impact on freshwater quality and quantity; and
- m) loss of outstanding natural landscapes and features and the **natural character** of the **coastal environment** and **wetlands**, and lakes, and rivers and their margins.

Issue 1.1 is addressed by the following objectives:

3.1	<i>Integrated management</i>	3.14	<i>Mauri and values of fresh water bodies</i>
3.2	<i>Resource use and development</i>	3.15	<i>Allocation and use of fresh water</i>
3.3	<i>Decision making</i>	3.16	<i>Riparian areas and wetlands</i>
3.4	<i>Health and wellbeing of the Waikato River</i>	3.17	<i>Geothermal</i>
3.5	<i>Energy</i>	3.18	<i>Historic and cultural heritage</i>
3.6	<i>Adapting to climate change</i>	3.19	<i>Ecological integrity and indigenous biodiversity</i>
3.7	<i>Coastal environment</i>	3.20	<i>Outstanding natural features and landscapes</i>
3.8	<i>Ecosystem services</i>	3.21	<i>Amenity</i>
3.9	<i>Relationship of tāngata whenua with the environment</i>	3.22	<i>Natural character</i>
3.10	<i>Sustainable and efficient use of resources</i>	3.23	<i>Public access</i>
3.11	<i>Air quality</i>	3.24	<i>Natural hazards</i>
3.12	<i>Built environment</i>	3.25	<i>Values of soil</i>
3.13	<i>Marine water quality</i>	3.26	<i>High class soils</i>

Explanation

Natural and physical resources include air, water, energy, **minerals**, soil, plants, animals and the things we build such as **infrastructure**. We rely on natural and physical resources for our social, cultural and economic wellbeing, as will future generations. Natural resources also have intrinsic value, or a value beyond their usefulness to us.

Through the use of natural and physical resources we provide for the necessities of life as well as the comforts and pleasures that come with prosperity. In order to remain prosperous and healthy, we need continued access to a healthy environment. We need to ensure ecosystems can continue to provide us with the services we rely on such as healthy soils to grow food, clean water for drinking and to service our farms and industries, wetlands to provide flood protection and water purification, clean air to breathe, and so on.

A healthy environment not only provides for our physical needs, but also influences our sense of wellbeing. People derive satisfaction from having access to natural areas and living in healthy and attractive surroundings. The health and **mauri** of the environment is important to the **tāngata whenua** of the region who view much of the degradation that occurs as unacceptable. Safeguarding the life-supporting capacity of the environment is consistent with the holistic and inter-connected view **tāngata whenua** have of the environment, and their role as **kaitiaki**.

In many ways, our use of natural and physical resources is resulting in their declining quality and quantity or availability. Use of resources by one party can conflict with the way others want to use a resource. The matters of particular concern in the Waikato region are as follows:

- There are areas where poor air quality is resulting in unacceptable health risks. This mainly occurs in certain **urban** areas due to fine particulate matter.
- Some intensive land use practices are causing a reduction in **soil quality** including damage to soil structure, fertility and porosity, and a build-up of contaminants such as cadmium, zinc and fluorine. Some land uses are also resulting in reduced water quality in some areas, such as by causing an increase in nutrients, sediment, pathogens and algal growth in water bodies.
- There is an increase in demand and competition for fresh water, with some catchments that are already over allocated.
- Indigenous biodiversity, including fisheries, is continuing to decline, mainly due to reducing health and extent of natural ecosystems.
- Increasing pressure for development in the coastal marine area is likely to lead to increasing tensions between uses such as aquaculture, recreation, tourism, energy developments and sea floor mining.
- Increasing pressure on outstanding natural landscapes and features and the natural character of the coastal environment and inland water bodies from development.

Issue 1.2 Effects of climate change

The effects of climate change (including climate variability) may impact our ability to provide for our wellbeing, including health and safety.

While addressing this issue generally, specific focus should be directed to the following matters:

- a) increased potential for storm damage and weather-related **natural hazards**; and
- b) long-term risks of sea level rise to settlements and infrastructure such as through increased coastal flooding and erosion.

Issue 1.2 is addressed by the following objectives:

3.1	<i>Integrated management</i>	3.8	<i>Ecosystem services</i>
3.2	<i>Resource use and development</i>	3.12	<i>Built environment</i>
3.3	<i>Decision making</i>	3.15	<i>Allocation and use of fresh water</i>
3.6	<i>Adapting to climate change</i>	3.19	<i>Ecological integrity and indigenous biodiversity</i>
3.7	<i>Coastal environment</i>	3.24	<i>Natural hazards</i>

Explanation

Under the Resource Management Act, Waikato Regional Council is required to have particular regard to the effects of climate change. The council should ensure that we prepare for and adapt to these changes so that their impacts on us and on resources is minimised. New Zealand's response in terms of actions to reduce climate change is primarily a central government rather than a local government role.

As a result of climate change, the Waikato region is at risk from increasing sea levels and greater climate variability, including changing temperature and rainfall patterns, and increasing storm intensities.

In terms of resource management, the main immediate threats that need to be responded to are the effects from higher storm intensities and potential for weather-related natural hazards such as floods, slips and drought. In some cases, these pose significant risks to life and property.

Over the longer term, climate change and sea level rise is likely to increase risks to coastal properties due to increased coastal flooding and erosion. Although sea level rise will happen gradually, we need to make responsible decisions today about the nature of development in coastal areas if we are to minimise risks to our communities.

The changing climate will also lead to changes in the habitat range of plant and animal species, including pest and domestic species. We can therefore expect to face challenges in managing indigenous biodiversity and biosecurity including the increased incursions of pest species that may have previously been unable to survive in our climate. We can also expect there to be implications for **primary production** industries, such as:

- changes to the region's suitability for different types of farming; and
- water storage.

Issue 1.3 Providing for energy demand

With increasing demand for energy coupled with Government objectives and targets regarding renewable electricity generation, there is an increasing need for improvements in the way we use energy, and for new energy projects and associated **infrastructure**, and increasing need to manage potential adverse effects on natural and physical resources.

While addressing this issue generally, specific focus should be directed to addressing the following matters:

- a) how the increasing demand for energy is to be met;
- b) potential for conflicts between activities to meet energy demand and other land or water uses including natural values;
- c) the need to locate renewable energy generation infrastructure where the resource exists;
- d) the need to maintain the efficiency of, and production from, existing **renewable electricity generation** activities;
- e) the need for the continued existence, and operation of the Waikato Hydro-scheme as significant national infrastructure; and
- f) security of supply.

Issue 1.3 is addressed by the following objectives:

3.1	<i>Integrated management</i>	3.8	<i>Ecosystem services</i>
3.2	<i>Resource use and development</i>	3.10	<i>Sustainable and efficient use of resources</i>
3.3	<i>Decision making</i>	3.12	<i>Built environment</i>
3.5	<i>Energy</i>	3.15	<i>Allocation and use of fresh water</i>
3.7	<i>Coastal environment</i>	3.17	<i>Geothermal</i>

Explanation

Demand for energy is increasing in order to service our growing population, economic development, expanding urban areas and more technological lifestyles. We are travelling more and freighting more product, which is adding further to energy demand. On the supply side, we are facing a decline in availability of oil and an increase in its cost.

The Waikato region is rich in energy resources including geothermal, water (for hydro), coal, marine and wind. It is also a region crossed by important energy transmission lines that take gas and electricity from energy sources in the south to the Auckland region in the north. Historically the Waikato Region has been substantially shaped by the development of the Waikato Hydro Scheme which is a contributor to New Zealand's energy needs. Electricity generation and transmission activities in the Waikato Region make a contribution to national electricity generation capacity and supply. There is likely to be increasing demand for new electricity generation and transmission infrastructure through the region.

To provide for our increasing energy demands, there will be further pressure for development of the region's energy resources. We will need to find new ways of meeting energy demands into the future including the ability to apply local solutions in rural and remote areas. Central government has objectives and targets for renewable electricity generation recognising the need to focus on development of those sources. This will create a greater need to manage impacts on existing renewable electricity generation activities and promote new electricity generations from energy sources such as geothermal, wind, hydro, tides, wave energy and possibly biofuels. Development of renewable energy resources results in a range of local and national benefits including those associated with increased security of supply and reduced greenhouse emissions.

The development of new energy sources and related infrastructure poses potential for greater effects on resources such as water bodies, landscapes and biodiversity. It will also mean greater potential for conflicts with existing land and water uses. These matters need to be carefully managed into the future, to ensure that appropriate environmental outcomes are maintained while meeting renewable energy generation needs.

Issue 1.4 Managing the built environment

Development of the **built environment** including infrastructure has the potential to positively or negatively impact on our ability to sustainably manage natural and physical resources and provide for our wellbeing.

While addressing this issue generally, specific focus should be directed to the following matters:

- a) high pressure for development in Hamilton City, Waipa District, Waikato District, around Lake Taupō, along the Waikato River and in the coastal environment;
- b) increasing potential for natural hazards;
- c) increasing conflict with, and demands for, new infrastructure;
- d) the need to use existing infrastructure efficiently and to maintain and enhance that infrastructure;
- e) protecting domestic and municipal water supply sources from the adverse effects of land use;

- f) the effect of development on access to mineral resources (particularly aggregates), high class soils, and future energy development sites;
- g) increasing impacts on and conflicts with existing resource users;
- h) the underperformance of some elements of Hamilton's central business district and consequential effects on its function, amenity and vitality as a result of unplanned dispersal of retail and office development;
- i) the integrated relationship between land use and development, and the transport infrastructure network;
- j) the contribution of **regionally significant industry** and primary production to economic, social and cultural wellbeing, and the need for those industries to access natural and physical resources, having regard to catchment specific situations;
- k) increased need for the future provision of infrastructure to respond to resource demands from within and outside the region and the need to enable efficient installation of that infrastructure; and
- l) the availability of water to meet existing, and reasonably justifiable and foreseeable **domestic or municipal supply** requirements to support planned urban growth, including promoting the integration of land use and water planning.

Issue 1.4 is addressed by the following objectives:

3.1	<i>Integrated management</i>	3.11	<i>Air quality</i>
3.2	<i>Resource use and development</i>	3.12	<i>Built environment</i>
3.3	<i>Decision making</i>	3.17	<i>Geothermal</i>
3.5	<i>Energy</i>	3.18	<i>Historic and cultural heritage</i>
3.6	<i>Adapting to climate change</i>	3.21	<i>Amenity</i>
3.7	<i>Coastal environment</i>	3.22	<i>Natural character</i>
3.10	<i>Sustainable and efficient use of resources</i>	3.24	<i>Natural hazards</i>

Explanation

Under the Resource Management Act, physical resources must be sustainably managed. The built environment includes physical resources such as buildings and infrastructure, which are important for our social, economic and cultural wellbeing.

The Resource Management Act requires the strategic integration of infrastructure with land use. Efficient and effective infrastructure is crucial for our economic progress and social and physical wellbeing. However, land use change can adversely affect this, for example ribbon development along arterial roads can result in the slowing of traffic and may consequentially affect the efficiency of transport along these routes.

Development can also lead to a range of other undesirable and unsustainable outcomes if not appropriately managed. For example:

- **reverse sensitivity** issues;
- natural hazards are increasing due to ongoing development in hazard prone areas;
- The region supports a range of primary production activities, which require a range of attributes, such as soil, climate, water, access to transportation and labour. Inappropriate subdivision, use and development may limit access to such resources and hence the ability for primary production activities to be undertaken;
- minerals are sometimes made inaccessible by urban and rural-residential development. Such development can be very important to the region, but requires careful management to avoid these kinds of outcomes; and
- land use development that adversely affects municipal water supplies.

The benefits and positive effects of the use and development of resources also need to be recognised in order to achieve balance when assessing the potential effects of activities.

Hamilton's central business district's continued viability, vibrancy and accessibility is significant to the entire region. The previous planning framework has enabled an unplanned dispersal of retail and office development which has contributed to the underperformance of some elements of the central business district with consequential effects on its function, amenity and vitality.

Regionally significant industry and primary production play an important role in providing for the economic, social and cultural wellbeing of people and communities. The sustainable management of natural and physical resources needs to consider the ability and need for regionally significant industry and primary production to have appropriate access to resources in order for them to continue to successfully operate and develop, having regard to catchment specific situations.

Territorial authorities manage land use change through district plans. Increasingly, tools such as structure plans and growth strategies are important in high growth areas. In areas of the region that are not experiencing the pressure of high growth, planning principles that prevent unsustainable outcomes should still be the foundation of district plans. There is a need to keep improving strategic planning for development in order to ensure ongoing development is sustainable.

Issue 1.5 Relationship of **tāngata whenua** with the environment (te taiao)

The relationship **tāngata whenua** have with the domains of **Ranginui** and **Papatūānuku** is of paramount importance and this relationship is being damaged through:

- a) activities which degrade the mauri of the environment, including through cumulative effects;
- b) loss of access to, and use and enjoyment of, resources and places;
- c) loss or diminishment of the ability of **tāngata whenua** to be involved in or influence management decisions; and
- d) loss of ability to exercise and provide for **kaitiakitanga**.

Issue 1.5 is addressed by the following objectives:

3.1 Integrated management	3.14 Mauri and values of fresh water bodies
3.2 Resource use and development	3.15 Allocation and use of fresh water
3.3 Decision making	3.16 Riparian areas and wetlands
3.4 Health and wellbeing of the Waikato River	3.18 Historic and cultural heritage
3.7 Coastal environment	3.19 Ecological integrity and indigenous biodiversity
3.8 Ecosystem services	3.20 Outstanding natural features and landscapes
3.9 Relationship of tāngata whenua with the environment	3.21 Amenity
3.10 Sustainable and efficient use of resources	3.22 Natural character
3.12 Built environment	3.23 Public access
3.13 Mauri and health of marine waters	3.25 Values of soil

Explanation

Māori see the natural world holistically – being wholly inter-connected and complementary. According to this concept Ranginui (sky), Papatūānuku (Earth), the mountains, open lands, rivers and the sea and the life therein exist seamlessly together and not as individual resources in isolation from one another. Māori believe that humans, too, form part of the natural world. An interdependent relationship exists between humans and the natural world. This allows people to live off the environment and use resources but at the same time requires them to ensure that they are cared for and protected. This relationship extends from ancestral beginnings and carries with it resource management knowledge (a component of **mātauranga Māori**) and responsibilities that are shared by successive generations. The nature of this relationship is recognised and provided for in Part II of the Resource Management Act.

Mātauranga Māori informs **tikanga** and **kawa** which guide resource management practices used by tāngata whenua. An example of such a practice is the imposition of **rāhui** to enable regeneration of stocks, to preserve and protect species, or to minimise any adverse effects of resource use. The relationship with **te taiao** suffers when tāngata whenua cannot fulfil their responsibilities, including managing resources to ensure mauri is preserved and that they are not depleted beyond their ability to replenish. These management responsibilities are embodied in the concept of **kaitiakitanga**. Kaitiakitanga extends beyond purely protection or preservation of resources to use and enjoyment, and includes for economic purposes.

An inability to influence decision making has been a long-standing and common concern of tāngata whenua within the region. One of the impacts of this is on the ability of tāngata whenua to effectively carry out their **kaitiaki** duties. While there has been improvement in recent years, including through the settlement of Treaty of Waitangi claims, this remains an issue for tāngata whenua.

A lack of understanding, awareness and recognition of the nature and existence of cultural heritage and its importance to tāngata whenua has frequently led to the destruction of areas, sites, places, landscapes or resources of significance, or the destruction of their values and/or of the relationship of tāngata whenua with them.

Issue 1.6 Health and wellbeing of the Waikato River catchment

The health and wellbeing of the Waikato River, its major tributary the Waipa River, and their catchments has been and continues to be degraded. Of particular concern is:

- a) adverse effects on the mauri of the Waikato and Waipa Rivers;
- b) the ability of the Waikato and Waipa Rivers to sustainably and safely provide food and cultural, economic and recreation opportunities;
- c) the effect this has on the relationship of Waikato-Tainui, Ngāti Tūwharetoa, Te Arawa River Iwi, Maniapoto and Raukawa and the regional community with the rivers; and
- d) the need to restore and protect the health and wellbeing of the Waikato River while providing for the existence and continued operation and output of the Waikato hydro scheme.

Issue 1.6 is addressed by the following objectives:

3.1	<i>Integrated management</i>	3.15	<i>Allocation and use of fresh water</i>
3.2	<i>Resource use and development</i>	3.16	<i>Riparian areas and wetlands</i>
3.3	<i>Decision making</i>	3.17	<i>Geothermal</i>
3.4	<i>Health and wellbeing of the Waikato River</i>	3.18	<i>Historic and cultural heritage</i>
3.5	<i>Energy</i>	3.19	<i>Ecological integrity and indigenous biodiversity</i>
3.8	<i>Ecosystem services</i>	3.20	<i>Outstanding natural features and landscapes</i>
3.9	<i>Relationship of tāngata whenua with the environment</i>	3.21	<i>Amenity</i>
3.10	<i>Sustainable and efficient use of resources</i>	3.22	<i>Natural character</i>
3.12	<i>Built environment</i>	3.23	<i>Public access</i>
3.14	<i>Mauri and values of fresh water bodies</i>		

Explanation

The relationship of the River Iwi with the Waikato River, and its major tributary the Waipa River, lies at the heart of their spiritual, cultural, historic and physical wellbeing and their identity.

To Waikato-Tainui the Waikato River is a **tūpuna** which has **mana** and in turn represents the mana and **mauri** of the tribe. Ngāti Tūwharetoa have a direct interest in, and special relationship with, the Waikato River. This includes the rights and responsibilities associated with kaitiakitanga. The people of Raukawa have their own unique and ancient relationship with the Waikato River. Prominent in their beliefs is the hereditary right and responsibility to protect the river. Te Arawa River Iwi comprise

Ngāti Tahu-Ngāti Whaoa, Ngāti Kearoa-Ngāti Tuarā and Tūhourangi-Ngāti Wahiao. Te Arawa River Iwi exercise mana whakahaere in accordance with their long-established tikanga to ensure the wellbeing of the Waikato River. The Waipa River forms part of the catchment of the Waikato River. It flows within the **rohe** of Ngāti Maniapoto and is integral to their spiritual, cultural, historic and physical wellbeing and their identity.

Deeds and settlements between the Crown and the respective Waikato River Iwi acknowledge that the deterioration of the health of the Waikato River while the Crown had authority over the river has been a source of distress. They set in place a framework with the overarching purpose of restoring and protecting the health and wellbeing of the Waikato River for current and future generations.

The Waikato River is at the heart of the social and economic development of the Waikato region. It supports the domestic and municipal needs of the region and is important for many reasons, including for primary production, powering the Waikato Hydro Scheme, providing drinking water and for cultural and recreational activity. This, along with the intensification of land use throughout the catchment, has caused the health and wellbeing of the Waikato River and its major tributary, the Waipa River, to be degraded.

This Regional Policy Statement recognises that the Waikato and Waipa Rivers are degraded and an important resource that requires balanced management and planning. It contains provisions aimed at restoring the rivers' health as a regional priority while continuing to provide for the communities they support.

2 Te Ture Whaimana o Te Awa o Waikato – Vision and Strategy for the Waikato River

2.1 Waikato-Tainui Raupatu Claims (Waikato River) Settlement Act 2010

The Waikato-Tainui Raupatu Claims (Waikato River) Settlement Act 2010 (the Waikato-Tainui Act) gave effect to the 2009 deed of settlement in respect of the **raupatu** claims of Waikato-Tainui over the Waikato River. The overarching purpose of the settlement is to restore and protect the health and wellbeing of the river for future generations.

The purpose of the Waikato-Tainui Act, as set out in Section 4 is to:

- a) *give effect to the settlement of raupatu claims under the 2009 deed:*
- b) *recognise the significance of the Waikato River to Waikato-Tainui:*
- c) *recognise the vision and strategy for the Waikato River:*
- d) *establish and grant functions and powers to the Waikato River Authority:*
- e) *establish the Waikato River Clean-up Trust:*
- f) *recognise certain customary activities of Waikato-Tainui:*
- g) *provide co-management arrangements for the Waikato River:*
- h) *provide redress to Waikato-Tainui relating to certain assets:*
- i) *recognise redress to Waikato-Tainui of the Kiingitanga Accord and other accords provided for in the schedule of the Kiingitanga Accord.*

2.2 Ngāti Tuwharetoa, Raukawa, and Te Arawa River Iwi Waikato River Act 2010

The Ngāti Tuwharetoa, Raukawa, and Te Arawa River Iwi Waikato River Act 2010 gives effect to the co-management deeds entered into between the Crown and Ngāti Tūwharetoa, Raukawa, and Te Arawa River Iwi. The Crown and each iwi have agreed to the establishment and participation of each iwi in a co-governance framework. The overarching purpose of the Ngāti Tuwharetoa, Raukawa, and Te Arawa River Iwi Waikato River Act 2010 is to restore and protect the health and wellbeing of the Waikato River for present and future generations.

The purpose of the Ngāti Tuwharetoa, Raukawa, and Te Arawa River Iwi Waikato River Act 2010 as set out in Section 4 is to:

- a) *recognise the significance of the Waikato River to Ngāti Tūwharetoa, Raukawa, and Te Arawa River Iwi:*
- b) *recognise the vision and strategy for the Waikato River:*
- c) *establish and grants functions and powers to the Waikato River Authority:*
- d) *establish the Waikato River Clean-up Trust:*
- e) *acknowledge and provides a process that may recognise certain customary activities of Ngāti Tūwharetoa, Raukawa, and Te Arawa River Iwi:*
- f) *provide co-management arrangements for the Waikato River.*

2.3 Nga Wai o Maniapoto (Waipa River) Act 2012

The Nga Wai o Maniapoto (Waipa River) Act 2012 gives effect to the co-management deeds entered into between the Crown and Ngāti Maniapoto. The overarching purpose of the Nga Wai o Maniapoto (Waipa River) Act 2012 is to restore and maintain the quality and integrity of the waters that flow into and form part of the Waipa River for present and future generations and the care and protection of the mana tuku iho o Waiwaia.

2.4 Waikato Regional Policy Statement

Te Ture Whaimana o Te Awa o Waikato – the Vision and Strategy for the Waikato River is set out in schedules to the above Acts. The Vision and Strategy is the primary direction-setting document for the Waikato and Waipa Rivers and their catchments which include the lower reaches of the Waipa River (for the area covered refer to Map 2-1 at the end of this chapter).

Under the Acts, the Vision and Strategy is deemed, in its entirety, to be part of the Regional Policy Statement. The Regional Policy Statement cannot be inconsistent with the Vision and Strategy. If there is any inconsistency, the Vision and Strategy prevails over that part of the Regional Policy Statement. This also applies to any future reviews of the Vision and Strategy.

Objectives, policies and methods in Chapters 3-14 of this Regional Policy Statement assist in achieving the purpose of the Vision and Strategy, however, should be read in conjunction with the Vision and Strategy in its entirety (section 2.4 below).

2.5 Vision and Strategy for the Waikato River

2.5.1 Vision for the Waikato River

Tooku awa koiora me oona pikonga he kura tangihia o te maataamuri

“The river of life, each curve more beautiful than the last”

Our vision is for a future where a healthy Waikato River sustains abundant life and prosperous communities who, in turn, are all responsible for restoring and protecting the health and wellbeing of the Waikato River, and all it embraces, for generations to come.

2.5.2 Objectives for the Waikato River

In order to realise the vision, the following objectives will be pursued:

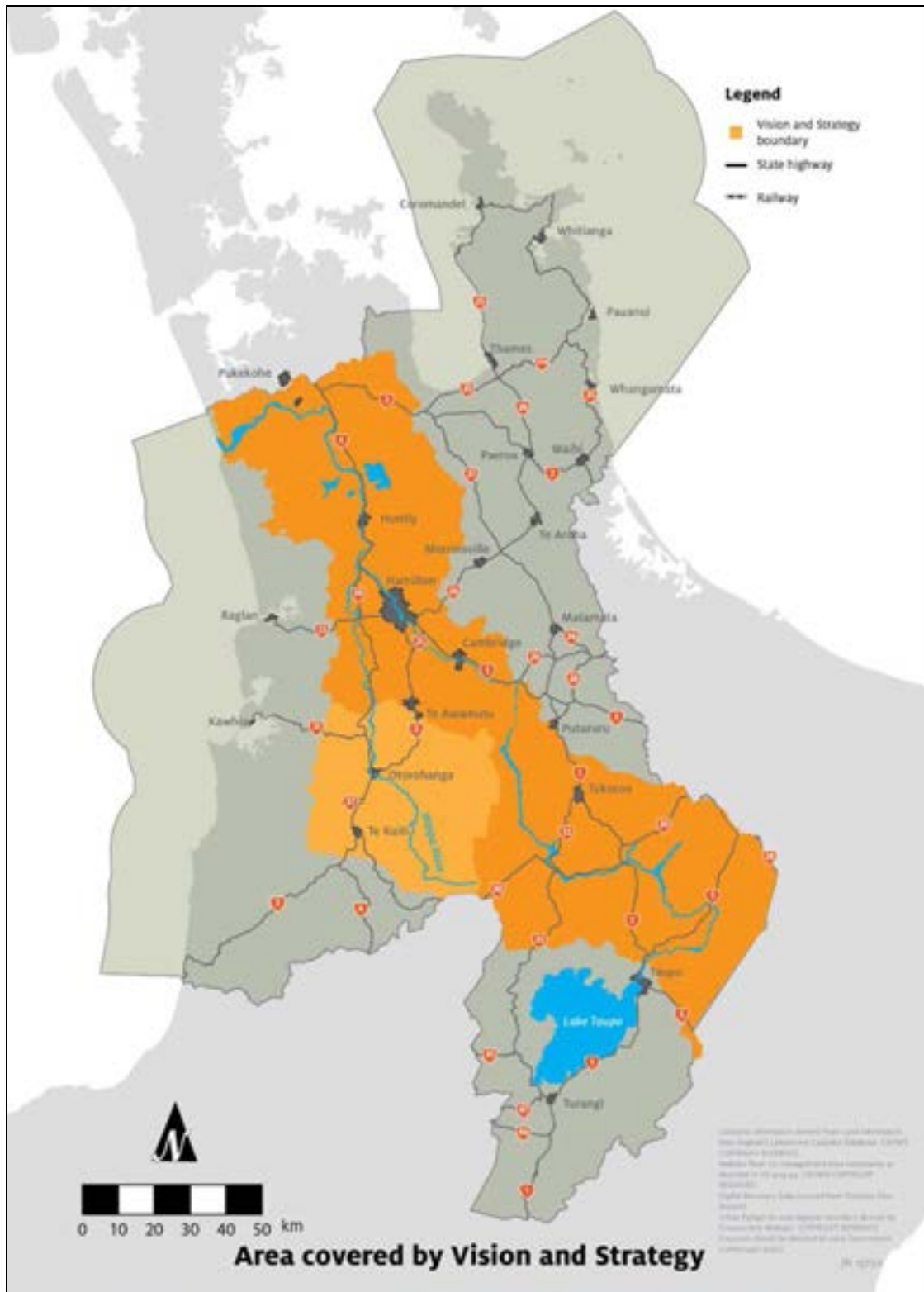
- a) The restoration and protection of the health and wellbeing of the Waikato River.
- b) The restoration and protection of the relationships of Waikato-Tainui with the Waikato River, including their economic, social, cultural, and spiritual relationships.
- c) The restoration and protection of the relationships of Waikato River Iwi according to their tikanga and kawa with the Waikato River, including their economic, social, cultural and spiritual relationships.
- d) The restoration and protection of the relationships of the Waikato Region's communities, with the Waikato River, including their economic, social, cultural and spiritual relationships.
- e) The integrated, holistic and co-ordinated approach to management of the natural, physical, cultural, and historic resources of the Waikato River.
- f) The adoption of a precautionary approach towards decisions that may result in significant adverse effects on the Waikato River, and in particular, those effects that threaten serious or irreversible damage to the Waikato River.
- g) The recognition and avoidance of adverse cumulative effects, and potential cumulative effects, of activities undertaken both on the Waikato River and within the catchment on the health and wellbeing of the Waikato River.
- h) The recognition that the Waikato River is degraded and should not be required to absorb further degradation as a result of human activities.
- i) The protection and enhancement of significant sites, fisheries, flora and fauna.
- j) The recognition that the strategic importance of the Waikato River to New Zealand's social, cultural, environmental and economic wellbeing, requires the restoration and protection of the health and wellbeing of the Waikato River.

- k) The restoration of water quality within the Waikato River so that it is safe for people to swim in and take food from over its entire length.
- l) The promotion of improved access to the Waikato River to better enable sporting, recreational, and cultural opportunities.
- m) The application to the above of both maatauranga Maaori and the latest available scientific methods.

2.5.3 Strategies for the Waikato River

To achieve the vision, the following strategies will be followed:

- a) Ensure that the highest level of recognition is given to the restoration and protection of the Waikato River.
- b) Establish what the current health status of the Waikato River is by utilising maatauranga Maaori and latest available scientific methods.
- c) Develop targets for improving the health and wellbeing of the Waikato River by utilising maatauranga Maaori and latest available scientific methods.
- d) Develop and implement a programme of action to achieve the targets for improving the health and wellbeing of the Waikato River.
- e) Develop and share local, national and international expertise, including indigenous expertise, on rivers and activities within their catchments that may be applied to the restoration and protection of the health and wellbeing of the Waikato River.
- f) Recognise and protect waahi tapu and sites of significance to Waikato-Tainui and other Waikato River iwi (where they do decide) to promote their cultural, spiritual and historic relationship with the Waikato River.
- g) Recognise and protect appropriate sites associated with the Waikato River that are of significance to the Waikato regional community.
- h) Actively promote and foster public knowledge and understanding of the health and wellbeing of the Waikato River among all sectors of the Waikato community.
- i) Encourage and foster a 'whole of river' approach to the restoration and protection of the Waikato River, including the development, recognition and promotion of best practice methods for restoring and protecting the health and wellbeing of the Waikato River.
- j) Establish new, and enhance existing, relationships between Waikato-Tainui, other Waikato River iwi (where they so decide), and stakeholders with an interest in advancing, restoring and protecting the health and wellbeing of the Waikato River.
- k) Ensure that cumulative adverse effects on the Waikato River of activities are appropriately managed in statutory planning documents at the time of their review.
- l) Ensure appropriate public access to the Waikato River while protecting and enhancing health and wellbeing of the Waikato River.



Map 2-1: Area covered by the Vision and Strategy for the Waikato and Waipa Rivers

3 Objectives

This chapter describes the outcomes that Waikato Regional Council seeks to achieve with the Regional Policy Statement, as required by the Resource Management Act. The objectives address the issues contained in Chapter 1 and will be achieved through implementation of the policies and methods in Part B.

3.1 Integrated management

Natural and physical resources are managed in a way that recognises:

- a) the inter-relationships within and values of **water body catchments, riparian areas and wetlands**, the coastal environment, the Hauraki Gulf and the Waikato River;
- b) natural processes that inherently occur without human management or interference;
- c) the complex interactions between air, water, land and all living things;
- d) the needs of current and future generations;
- e) the relationships between environmental, social, economic and cultural wellbeing;
- f) the need to work with agencies, landowners, resource users and communities; and
- g) the interrelationship of natural resources with the built environment.

Objective 3.1 addresses the following issues:

- 1.1 State of resources
- 1.2 Effects of climate change
- 1.3 Providing for energy demand
- 1.4 Managing the built environment
- 1.5 Relationship of *tāngata whenua* with the environment (*te taiao*)
- 1.6 Health and wellbeing of the Waikato River catchment

Objective 3.1 is achieved by the following policies:

- | | |
|---|---|
| 4.1 Integrated approach | 8.2 Outstanding fresh water bodies and significant values of wetlands |
| 4.2 Collaborative approach | 8.3 All fresh water bodies |
| 4.3 <i>Tāngata whenua</i> | 8.4 Catchment-based intervention |
| 4.4 Regionally significant industry and primary production | 8.5 Waikato River catchment |
| 6.1 Planned and co-ordinated subdivision, use and development | 8.6 Allocating fresh water |
| 6.2 Planning for development in the coastal environment | 8.7 Efficient use of fresh water |
| 6.10 Implementing the Coromandel Peninsula Blueprint | 9.1 Sustainable management of the Regional Geothermal Resource |
| 6.11 Implementing Taupo District 2050 | 9.3 Development Geothermal Systems |
| 6.12 Implementing Franklin District Growth Strategy | 11.1 Maintain or enhance indigenous biodiversity |
| 6.13 Governance collaboration in the Future Proof area | 11.2 Protect significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitats of indigenous fauna |
| 7.1 Interests in the coastal marine area | 11.4 Safeguard coastal/marine ecosystems |
| 7.2 Marine water quality | 13.1 Natural hazard risk management approach |
| 8.1 Approach to identifying fresh water body values and managing fresh water bodies | |

3.2 Resource use and development

Recognise and provide for the role of sustainable resource use and development and its benefits in enabling people and communities to provide for their economic, social and cultural wellbeing, including by maintaining and where appropriate enhancing:

- a) access to natural and physical resources to provide for **regionally significant industry** and **primary production** activities that support such industry;
- b) the life supporting capacity of soils, water and ecosystems to support primary production activities;

OBJECTIVES

- c) the availability of energy resources for electricity generation and for **electricity generation activities** to locate where the energy resource exists;
- d) access to the **significant mineral resources** of the region; and
- e) the availability of water for municipal and domestic supply to people and communities.

Objective 3.2 addresses the following issues:

- 1.1 State of resources
- 1.2 Effects of climate change
- 1.3 Providing for energy demand
- 1.4 Managing the built environment
- 1.5 Relationship of tāngata whenua with the environment (te taiao)
- 1.6 Health and wellbeing of the Waikato River catchment

Objective 3.2 is achieved by the following policies:

- | | |
|---|--|
| 4.1 Integrated approach | 8.4 Catchment-based intervention |
| 4.2 Collaborative approach | 8.5 Waikato River catchment |
| 4.3 Tāngata whenua | 8.6 Allocating fresh water |
| 4.4 Regionally significant industry and primary production | 8.7 Efficient use of fresh water |
| 5.2 Manage discharges to air | 9.1 Sustainable management of the Regional Geothermal Resource |
| 5.3 Manage adverse effects on amenity | 9.2 Significant Geothermal Features |
| 6.1 Planned and co-ordinated subdivision, use and development | 9.3 Development Geothermal Systems |
| 6.2 Planning for development in the coastal environment | 9.4 Limited Development Geothermal Systems |
| 6.3 Co-ordinating growth and infrastructure | 9.6 Research Geothermal Systems |
| 6.4 Marae and papakāinga | 9.7 Small Geothermal Systems |
| 6.5 Energy demand management | 9.8 Geothermal characteristics valued by tāngata whenua |
| 6.6 Significant infrastructure and energy resources | 10.1 Managing historic and cultural heritage |
| 6.8 Access to minerals | 10.2 Relationship of Māori to taonga |
| 6.10 Implementing the Coromandel Peninsula Blueprint | 10.3 Effects of development on historic and cultural heritage |
| 6.11 Implementing Taupo District 2050 | 11.1 Maintain or enhance indigenous biodiversity |
| 6.12 Implementing Franklin District Growth Strategy | 11.3 Collaborative management |
| 6.13 Governance collaboration in the Future Proof area | 12.1 Outstanding natural features and landscapes |
| 6.14 Adopting Future Proof land use pattern | 12.2 Preserve natural character |
| 6.15 Density targets for Future Proof area | 12.3 Maintain and enhance areas of amenity value |
| 6.16 Commercial development in the Future Proof area | 12.4 Maintain and enhance public access |
| 6.17 Rural-residential development in Future Proof area | 12.5 Appropriate restrictions on public access |
| 6.19 Review of Future Proof map and tables | 13.1 Natural hazard risk management approach |
| 7.1 Interests in the coastal marine area | 13.2 Manage activities to reduce the risks from natural hazards |
| 7.2 Marine water quality | 14.1 Maintain or enhance the life supporting capacity of the soil resource |
| 8.1 Approach to identifying fresh water body values and managing fresh water bodies | 14.2 High class soils |
| 8.2 Outstanding fresh water bodies and significant values of wetlands | 14.5 Peat soils |
| 8.3 All fresh water bodies | |

3.3 Decision making

Resource management decision making is holistic and consistent and:

- a) is aligned across legislation and national and regional strategies;
- b) takes an integrated approach to managing resources that cross regional and functional boundaries;
- c) adopts an appropriate planning timeframe;

OBJECTIVES

- d) adopts a precautionary approach, including the use of adaptive management, where appropriate, towards any proposed activity whose effects may be significant or irreversible but are as yet uncertain, unknown or little understood;
- e) is transparent;
- f) has regard to the potential for cumulative effects from activities;
- g) is based on the best available information, including **mātauranga Māori**;
- h) allows for flexible solutions for local variations;
- i) recognises that time may be needed for change to occur;
- j) includes working with **tāngata whenua**;
- k) includes working with key stakeholders;
- l) considers a mix of methods to achieve objectives; and
- m) results in solutions which include processes to minimise conflicts.

Objective 3.3 addresses the following issues:

- 1.1 State of resources
- 1.2 Effects of climate change
- 1.3 Providing for energy demand
- 1.4 Managing the built environment
- 1.5 Relationship of tāngata whenua with the environment (te taiao)
- 1.6 Health and wellbeing of the Waikato River catchment

Objective 3.3 is achieved by the following policies:

- | | |
|---|---|
| 4.1 Integrated approach | 8.3 All fresh water bodies |
| 4.2 Collaborative approach | 8.4 Catchment-based intervention |
| 4.3 Tāngata whenua | 8.5 Waikato River catchment |
| 4.4 Regionally significant industry and primary production | 8.6 Allocating fresh water |
| 5.1 Improve degraded air quality | 8.7 Efficient use of fresh water |
| 5.2 Manage discharges to air | 9.1 Sustainable management of the Regional Geothermal Resource |
| 5.3 Manage adverse effects on amenity | 9.2 Significant Geothermal Features |
| 6.1 Planned and co-ordinated subdivision, use and development | 9.3 Development Geothermal Systems |
| 6.2 Planning for development in the coastal environment | 9.4 Limited Development Geothermal Systems |
| 6.3 Co-ordinating growth and infrastructure | 9.5 Protected Geothermal Systems |
| 6.6 Significant infrastructure and energy resources | 9.6 Research Geothermal Systems |
| 6.8 Access to minerals | 9.7 Small Geothermal Systems |
| 6.9 Information collection | 9.8 Geothermal characteristics valued by tāngata whenua |
| 6.10 Implementing the Coromandel Peninsula Blueprint | 10.1 Managing historic and cultural heritage |
| 6.11 Implementing Taupo District 2050 | 10.2 Relationship of Māori to taonga |
| 6.12 Implementing Franklin District Growth Strategy | 10.3 Effects of development on historic and cultural heritage |
| 6.13 Governance collaboration in the Future Proof area | 11.1 Maintain or enhance indigenous biodiversity |
| 6.14 Adopting Future Proof land use pattern | 11.2 Protect significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitats of indigenous fauna |
| 6.15 Density targets for Future Proof area | 11.3 Collaborative management |
| 6.16 Commercial development in the Future Proof area | 11.4 Safeguard coastal/marine ecosystems |
| 6.17 Rural-residential development in Future Proof area | 12.1 Outstanding natural features and landscapes |
| 6.18 Monitoring development in Future Proof area | 12.2 Preserve natural character |
| 6.19 Review of Future Proof map and tables | 12.3 Maintain and enhance areas of amenity value |
| 7.1 Interests in the coastal marine area | 13.1 Natural hazard risk management approach |
| 7.2 Marine water quality | 13.2 Manage activities to reduce the risks from natural hazards |
| 8.1 Approach to identifying fresh water body values and managing fresh water bodies | 14.2 High class soils |
| 8.2 Outstanding fresh water bodies and significant values of wetlands | 14.4 Contaminated land |

3.4 Health and wellbeing of the Waikato River

The health and wellbeing of the Waikato River is restored and protected and Te Ture Whaimana o Te Awa o Waikato (the Vision and Strategy for the Waikato River) is achieved.

Objective 3.4 addresses the following issues:

- 1.1 State of resources
- 1.5 Relationship of *tāngata whenua* with the environment (*te taiao*)
- 1.6 Health and wellbeing of the Waikato River catchment

Objective 3.4 is achieved by the following policies:

- | | |
|---|--|
| 4.1 Integrated approach | 9.4 Limited Development Geothermal Systems |
| 4.2 Collaborative approach | 9.5 Protected Geothermal Systems |
| 4.3 <i>Tāngata whenua</i> | 9.6 Research Geothermal Systems |
| 6.1 Planned and co-ordinated subdivision, use and development | 9.7 Small Geothermal Systems |
| 8.1 Approach to identifying fresh water body values and managing fresh water bodies | 10.1 Managing historic and cultural heritage |
| 8.2 Outstanding fresh water bodies and significant values of wetlands | 10.2 Relationship of Māori to taonga |
| 8.3 All fresh water bodies | 11.1 Maintain or enhance indigenous biodiversity |
| 8.4 Catchment-based intervention | 11.3 Collaborative management |
| 8.5 Waikato River catchment | 12.2 Preserve natural character |
| 8.6 Allocating fresh water | 12.3 Maintain and enhance areas of amenity value |
| 8.7 Efficient use of fresh water | 12.4 Maintain and enhance public access |
| 9.3 Development Geothermal Systems | |

3.5 Energy

Energy use is managed, and electricity generation and transmission is operated, maintained, developed and upgraded, in a way that:

- a) increases efficiency;
- b) recognises any increasing demand for energy;
- c) seeks opportunities to minimise demand for energy;
- d) recognises and provides for the national significance of **electricity transmission** and **renewable electricity generation** activities;
- e) recognises and provides for the national, regional and local benefits of electricity transmission and renewable electricity generation;
- f) reduces reliance on fossil fuels over time;
- g) addresses adverse effects on natural and physical resources;
- h) recognises the technical and operational constraints of the electricity transmission network and electricity generation activities; and
- i) recognises the contribution of existing and future electricity transmission and electricity generation activities to regional and national energy needs and security of supply.

Objective 3.5 addresses the following issues:

- 1.1 State of resources
- 1.3 Providing for energy demand
- 1.4 Managing the built environment
- 1.6 Health and wellbeing of the Waikato River catchment

Objective 3.5 is achieved by the following policies:

- | | |
|---|---|
| 4.1 Integrated approach | 7.1 Interests in the coastal marine area |
| 4.2 Collaborative approach | 8.1 Approach to identifying fresh water body values and managing fresh water bodies |
| 4.3 <i>Tāngata whenua</i> | 8.3 All fresh water bodies |
| 4.4 Regionally significant industry and primary production | 8.6 Allocating fresh water |
| 5.1 Improve degraded air quality | 8.7 Efficient use of fresh water |
| 6.1 Planned and co-ordinated subdivision, use and development | 9.1 Sustainable management of the Regional Geothermal Resource |
| 6.2 Planning for development in the coastal environment | 9.3 Development Geothermal Systems |

OBJECTIVES

6.3	Co-ordinating growth and infrastructure	9.4	Limited Development Geothermal Systems
6.5	Energy demand management	9.5	Protected Geothermal Systems
6.6	Significant infrastructure and energy resources	9.6	Research Geothermal Systems
6.8	Access to minerals	9.7	Small Geothermal Systems

3.6 Adapting to climate change

Land use is managed to avoid the potential adverse effects of climate change induced weather variability and sea level rise on:

- a) amenity;
- b) the built environment, including **infrastructure**;
- c) **indigenous biodiversity**;
- d) **natural character**;
- e) public health and safety; and
- f) public access.

Objective 3.6 addresses the following issues:

- 1.1 State of resources
- 1.2 Effects of climate change
- 1.4 Managing the built environment

Objective 3.6 is achieved by the following policies:

- | | |
|---|---|
| 4.1 Integrated approach | 7.1 Interests in the coastal marine area |
| 4.2 Collaborative approach | 8.6 Allocating fresh water |
| 4.3 Tāngata whenua | 8.7 Efficient use of fresh water |
| 6.1 Planned and co-ordinated subdivision, use and development | 12.4 Maintain and enhance public access |
| 6.2 Planning for development in the coastal environment | 13.1 Natural hazard risk management approach |
| 6.10 Implementing the Coromandel Peninsula Blueprint | 13.2 Manage activities to reduce the risks from natural hazards |

3.7 Coastal environment

The **coastal environment** is managed in an integrated way that:

- a) preserves **natural character** and protects natural features and landscape values of the coastal environment;
- b) avoids conflicts between uses and values;
- c) recognises the interconnections between marine-based and land-based activities; and
- d) recognises the dynamic, complex and interdependent nature of natural biological and physical processes in the coastal environment.

Objective 3.7 addresses the following issues:

- 1.1 State of resources
- 1.2 Effects of climate change
- 1.3 Providing for energy demand
- 1.4 Managing the built environment
- 1.5 Relationship of tāngata whenua with the environment (te taiao)

Objective 3.7 is achieved by the following policies:

- | | |
|--|--|
| 4.1 Integrated approach | 7.2 Marine water quality |
| 4.2 Collaborative approach | 11.4 Safeguard coastal/marine ecosystems |
| 4.3 Tāngata whenua | 12.1 Outstanding natural features and landscapes |
| 4.4 Regionally significant industry and primary production | 12.2 Preserve natural character |
| 6.2 Planning for development in the coastal environment | 12.3 Maintain and enhance areas of amenity value |
| 6.3 Co-ordinating growth and infrastructure | 12.4 Maintain and enhance public access |
| 6.10 Implementing the Coromandel Peninsula Blueprint | 12.5 Appropriate restrictions on public access |
| 7.1 Interests in the coastal marine area | |

3.8 Ecosystem services

The range of **ecosystem services** associated with natural resources are recognised and maintained or enhanced to enable their ongoing contribution to regional wellbeing.

Objective 3.8 addresses the following issues:

- 1.1 State of resources
- 1.2 Effects of climate change
- 1.3 Providing for energy demand
- 1.5 Relationship of *tāngata whenua* with the environment (*te taiao*)
- 1.6 Health and wellbeing of the Waikato River catchment

Objective 3.8 is achieved by the following policies:

- | | |
|---|--|
| 4.1 Integrated approach | 8.6 Allocating fresh water |
| 4.2 Collaborative approach | 8.7 Efficient use of fresh water |
| 4.3 <i>Tāngata whenua</i> | 9.3 Development Geothermal Systems |
| 4.4 Regionally significant industry and primary production | 9.4 Limited Development Geothermal Systems |
| 5.1 Improve degraded air quality | 9.5 Protected Geothermal Systems |
| 5.2 Manage discharges to air | 9.6 Research Geothermal Systems |
| 6.1 Planned and co-ordinated subdivision, use and development | 9.7 Small Geothermal Systems |
| 6.2 Planning for development in the coastal environment | 11.1 Maintain or enhance indigenous biodiversity |
| 7.1 Interests in the coastal marine area | 11.4 Safeguard coastal/marine ecosystems |
| 7.2 Marine water quality | 14.1 Maintain or enhance the life supporting capacity of the soil resource |
| 8.1 Approach to identifying fresh water body values and managing fresh water bodies | 14.2 High class soils |
| 8.2 Outstanding fresh water bodies and significant values of wetlands | 14.3 Soil contaminants |
| 8.3 All fresh water bodies | 14.4 Contaminated land |
| 8.4 Catchment-based intervention | 14.5 Peat soils |
| 8.5 Waikato River catchment | |

3.9 Relationship of *tāngata whenua* with the environment

The relationship of *tāngata whenua* with the environment is recognised and provided for, including:

- a) the use and enjoyment of natural and physical resources in accordance with **tikanga** Māori, including *mātauranga Māori*; and
- b) the role of *tāngata whenua* as **kaitiaki**.

Objective 3.9 addresses the following issues:

- 1.1 State of resources
- 1.5 Relationship of *tāngata whenua* with the environment (*te taiao*)
- 1.6 Health and wellbeing of the Waikato River catchment

Objective 3.9 is achieved by the following policies:

- | | |
|---|--|
| 4.1 Integrated approach | 8.6 Allocating fresh water |
| 4.2 Collaborative approach | 8.7 Efficient use of fresh water |
| 4.3 <i>Tāngata whenua</i> | 9.8 Geothermal characteristics valued by <i>tāngata whenua</i> |
| 4.4 Regionally significant industry and primary production | 10.1 Managing historic and cultural heritage |
| 6.1 Planned and co-ordinated subdivision, use and development | 10.2 Relationship of Māori to <i>taonga</i> |
| 6.4 Marae and <i>papakāinga</i> | 11.1 Maintain or enhance indigenous biodiversity |
| 6.8 Access to minerals | 11.3 Collaborative management |
| 7.1 Interests in the coastal marine area | 12.1 Outstanding natural features and landscapes |
| 7.2 Marine water quality | 12.2 Preserve natural character |
| 8.1 Approach to identifying fresh water body values and managing fresh water bodies | 12.3 Maintain and enhance areas of amenity value |
| 8.2 Outstanding fresh water bodies and significant values of wetlands | 12.4 Maintain and enhance public access |
| 8.3 All fresh water bodies | 12.5 Appropriate restrictions on public access |
| 8.4 Catchment-based intervention | 14.1 Maintain or enhance the life supporting capacity of the soil resource |

8.5 Waikato River catchment

3.10 Sustainable and efficient use of resources

Use and development of natural and physical resources, excluding **minerals**, occurs in a way and at a rate that is sustainable, and where the use and development of all natural and physical resources is efficient and minimises the generation of waste.

Objective 3.10 addresses the following issues:

- 1.1 State of resources
- 1.3 Providing for energy demand
- 1.4 Managing the built environment
- 1.5 Relationship of *tāngata whenua* with the environment (*te taiao*)
- 1.6 Health and wellbeing of the Waikato River catchment

Objective 3.10 is achieved by the following policies:

- | | |
|---|---|
| 4.1 Integrated approach | 7.1 Interests in the coastal marine area |
| 4.2 Collaborative approach | 8.1 Approach to identifying fresh water body values and managing fresh water bodies |
| 4.3 <i>Tāngata whenua</i> | 8.6 Allocating fresh water |
| 4.4 Regionally significant industry and primary production | 8.7 Efficient use of fresh water |
| 5.1 Improve degraded air quality | 9.1 Sustainable management of the Regional Geothermal Resource |
| 5.2 Manage discharges to air | 9.3 Development Geothermal Systems |
| 6.1 Planned and co-ordinated subdivision, use and development | 9.4 Limited Development Geothermal Systems |
| 6.3 Co-ordinating growth and infrastructure | 9.5 Protected Geothermal Systems |
| 6.5 Energy demand management | 9.6 Research Geothermal Systems |
| 6.6 Significant infrastructure and energy resources | 9.7 Small Geothermal Systems |
| 6.8 Access to minerals | 14.2 High class soils |
| 6.11 Implementing Taupo District 2050 | 14.3 Soil contaminants |
| 6.15 Density targets for Future Proof area | 14.4 Contaminated land |
| 6.16 Commercial development in the Future Proof area | 14.5 Peat soils |

3.11 Air quality

Air quality is managed in a way that:

- a) ensures that where air quality is better than national environmental standards and guidelines for ambient air, any degradation is as low as reasonably achievable;
- b) avoids unacceptable risks to human health and ecosystems, with high priority placed on achieving compliance with national environmental standards and guidelines for ambient air; and
- c) avoids, where practicable, adverse effects on local **amenity values** and people's wellbeing including from discharges of particulate matter, smoke, odour, dust and agrichemicals, recognising that it is appropriate that some areas will have a different amenity level to others.

Objective 3.11 addresses the following issues:

- 1.1 State of resources
- 1.4 Managing the built environment

Objective 3.11 is achieved by the following policies:

- | | |
|----------------------------------|---|
| 4.1 Integrated approach | 5.2 Manage discharges to air |
| 4.2 Collaborative approach | 5.3 Manage adverse effects on amenity |
| 4.3 <i>Tāngata whenua</i> | 6.1 Planned and co-ordinated subdivision, use and development |
| 5.1 Improve degraded air quality | 14.4 Contaminated land |

3.12 Built environment

Development of the **built environment** (including transport and other infrastructure) and associated land use occurs in an integrated, sustainable and planned manner

OBJECTIVES

which enables positive environmental, social, cultural and economic outcomes, including by:

- a) promoting positive indigenous biodiversity outcomes;
- b) preserving and protecting natural character, and protecting outstanding natural features and landscapes from inappropriate subdivision, use, and development;
- c) integrating land use and infrastructure planning, including by ensuring that development of the built environment does not compromise the safe, efficient and effective operation of infrastructure corridors;
- d) integrating land use and water planning, including to ensure that sufficient water is available to support future planned growth;
- e) recognising and protecting the value and long-term benefits of **regionally significant infrastructure**;
- f) protecting access to identified significant mineral resources;
- g) minimising land use conflicts, including minimising potential for reverse sensitivity;
- h) anticipating and responding to changing land use pressures outside the Waikato region which may impact on the built environment within the region;
- i) providing for the development, operation, maintenance and upgrading of new and existing electricity transmission and renewable electricity generation activities including small and community scale generation;
- j) promoting a viable and vibrant central business district in Hamilton city, with a supporting network of sub-regional and town centres; and
- k) providing for a range of **commercial development** to support the social and economic wellbeing of the region.

Objective 3.12 addresses the following issues:

- 1.1 State of resources
- 1.2 Effects of climate change
- 1.3 Providing for energy demand
- 1.4 Managing the built environment
- 1.5 Relationship of tāngata whenua with the environment (te taiao)
- 1.6 Health and wellbeing of the Waikato River catchment

Objective 3.12 is achieved by the following policies:

- | | |
|---|--|
| 4.1 Integrated approach | 6.14 Adopting Future Proof land use pattern |
| 4.2 Collaborative approach | 6.15 Density targets for Future Proof area |
| 4.3 Tāngata whenua | 6.16 Commercial development in the Future Proof area |
| 4.4 Regionally significant industry and primary production | 6.17 Rural-residential development in Future Proof area |
| 6.1 Planned and co-ordinated subdivision, use and development | 6.18 Monitoring development in Future Proof area |
| 6.2 Planning for development in the coastal environment | 6.19 Review of Future Proof map and tables |
| 6.3 Co-ordinating growth and infrastructure | 7.1 Interests in the coastal marine area |
| 6.4 Marae and papakāinga | 9.1 Sustainable management of the Regional Geothermal Resource |
| 6.5 Energy demand management | 9.3 Development Geothermal Systems |
| 6.6 Significant infrastructure and energy resources | 9.4 Limited Development Geothermal Systems |
| 6.8 Access to minerals | 11.1 Maintain or enhance indigenous biodiversity |
| 6.9 Information collection | 12.1 Outstanding natural features and landscapes |
| 6.10 Implementing the Coromandel Peninsula Blueprint | 12.2 Preserve natural character |
| 6.11 Implementing Taupo District 2050 | 12.3 Maintain and enhance areas of amenity value |
| 6.12 Implementing Franklin District Growth Strategy | 13.1 Natural hazard risk management approach |
| 6.13 Governance collaboration in the Future Proof area | 14.5 Peat soils |

3.13 Mauri and health of marine waters

Recognise and provide for the **mauri** and health of marine waters by:

OBJECTIVES

- a) maintaining the following:
 - i) natural character and natural function;
 - ii) health and functioning of indigenous biodiversity, ecosystems and habitats;
 - iii) human relationships with marine water including:
 - i. the cultural and traditional relationship of tāngata whenua with marine waters;
 - ii. harvesting of aquatic food species and **mahinga kai** that is safe to eat; and
 - iii. recreation values including swimming;
- b) improving the life-supporting capacity of marine waters where they have been degraded as a result of human activities;
- c) to enable people and communities to provide for their social, economic and cultural wellbeing and for their health and safety; and
- d) managing adverse cumulative effects of land use activities on water in the **coastal marine area**.

Objective 3.13 addresses the following issues:

1.1 State of resources

1.5 Relationship of tāngata whenua with the environment (te taiao)

Objective 3.13 is achieved by the following policies:

4.1 Integrated approach

4.2 Collaborative approach

4.3 Tāngata whenua

4.4 Regionally significant industry and primary production

6.2 Planning for development in the coastal environment

7.1 Interests in the coastal marine area

7.2 Marine water quality

8.1 Approach to identifying fresh water body values and managing fresh water bodies

8.3 All fresh water bodies

8.4 Catchment-based intervention

8.5 Waikato River catchment

8.6 Allocating fresh water

3.14 Mauri and values of fresh water bodies

Maintain or enhance the mauri and identified values of **fresh water bodies** including by:

- a) maintaining or enhancing the overall quality of freshwater within the region;
- b) safeguarding ecosystem processes and indigenous species habitats;
- c) safeguarding the outstanding values of identified outstanding freshwater bodies and the significant values of wetlands;
- d) safeguarding and improving the life supporting capacity of freshwater bodies where they have been degraded as a result of human activities, with demonstrable progress made by 2030;
- e) establishing objectives, limits and targets, for freshwater bodies that will determine how they will be managed;
- f) enabling people to provide for their social, economic and cultural wellbeing and for their health and safety;
- g) recognising that there will be variable management responses required for different catchments of the region; and

recognising the interrelationship between land use, water quality and water quantity. **Objective 3.14 addresses the following issues:**

1.1 State of resources

1.5 Relationship of tāngata whenua with the environment (te taiao)

1.6 Health and wellbeing of the Waikato River catchment

Objective 3.14 is achieved by the following policies:

4.1 Integrated approach

4.2 Collaborative approach

8.4 Catchment-based intervention

8.5 Waikato River catchment

OBJECTIVES

4.3	<i>Tāngata whenua</i>	8.6	<i>Allocating fresh water</i>
4.4	<i>Regionally significant industry and primary production</i>	9.3	<i>Development of geothermal systems</i>
6.1	<i>Planned and co-ordinated subdivision, use and development</i>	9.4	<i>Limited development geothermal systems</i>
6.6	<i>Significant infrastructure and energy resources</i>	11.1	<i>Maintain or enhance indigenous biodiversity</i>
8.1	<i>Approach to identifying fresh water body values and managing fresh water bodies</i>	13.1	<i>Natural hazard risk management approach</i>
8.2	<i>Outstanding fresh water bodies and significant values of wetlands</i>	14.3	<i>Soil contaminants</i>
8.3	<i>All fresh water bodies</i>	14.4	<i>Contaminated land</i>

3.15 Allocation and use of fresh water

The allocation and use of fresh water is managed to achieve freshwater objectives (derived from identified values) by:

- a) avoiding any new over-allocation of ground and surface waters;
- b) seeking to phase out any existing over-allocation of ground and surface water bodies by 31 December 2030;
- c) increasing efficiency in the allocation and use of water; and
- d) recognising the social, economic and cultural benefits of water takes and uses.

Objective 3.15 addresses the following issues:

- 1.1 *State of resources*
- 1.2 *Effects of climate change*
- 1.3 *Providing for energy demand*
- 1.5 *Relationship of tāngata whenua with the environment (te taiao)*
- 1.6 *Health and wellbeing of the Waikato River catchment*

Objective 3.15 is achieved by the following policies:

- | | |
|--|--|
| 4.1 <i>Integrated approach</i> | 8.2 <i>Outstanding fresh water bodies and significant values of wetlands</i> |
| 4.2 <i>Collaborative approach</i> | 8.3 <i>All fresh water bodies</i> |
| 4.3 <i>Tāngata whenua</i> | 8.4 <i>Catchment-based intervention</i> |
| 4.4 <i>Regionally significant industry and primary production</i> | 8.5 <i>Waikato River catchment</i> |
| 6.5 <i>Energy demand management</i> | 8.6 <i>Allocating fresh water</i> |
| 6.6 <i>Significant infrastructure and energy resources</i> | 8.7 <i>Efficient use of fresh water</i> |
| 8.1 <i>Approach to identifying fresh water body values and managing fresh water bodies</i> | |

3.16 Riparian areas and wetlands

Riparian areas (including coastal dunes) and wetlands are managed to:

- a) maintain _____ and _____ enhance:
 - i) public access; and
 - ii) amenity values.
- b) maintain or enhance:
 - i) water quality;
 - ii) indigenous biodiversity;
 - iii) **natural hazard risk** reduction;
 - iv) cultural values;
 - v) riparian habitat quality and extent; and
 - vi) wetland quality and extent.

Objective 3.16 addresses the following issues:

- 1.1 *State of resources*
- 1.5 *Relationship of tāngata whenua with the environment (te taiao)*
- 1.6 *Health and wellbeing of the Waikato River catchment*

Objective 3.16 is achieved by the following policies:

4.1 Integrated approach	8.4 Catchment-based intervention
4.2 Collaborative approach	8.5 Waikato River catchment
4.3 Tāngata whenua	8.6 Allocating fresh water
6.1 Planned and co-ordinated subdivision, use and development	11.1 Maintain or enhance indigenous biodiversity
6.2 Planning for development in the coastal environment	11.4 Safeguard coastal/marine ecosystems
8.1 Approach to identifying fresh water body values and managing fresh water bodies	12.4 Maintain and enhance public access
8.2 Outstanding fresh water bodies and significant values of wetlands	13.1 Natural hazard risk management approach
8.3 All fresh water bodies	14.5 Peat soils

3.17 Geothermal

Sustainable management of the **Regional Geothermal Resource** is promoted by:

- ensuring integrated management of **geothermal systems**;
- allocating some of the geothermal resource for take, use and discharge in a way that enables current energy needs and the reasonably foreseeable energy needs of future generations to be met, while avoiding, remedying or mitigating significant adverse effects on the Regional Geothermal Resource; and
- protecting some characteristics of the Regional Geothermal Resource from significant adverse effects.

Objective 3.17 addresses the following issues:

- 1.1 State of resources
- 1.3 Providing for energy demand
- 1.5 Relationship of tāngata whenua with the environment (te taiao)
- 1.6 Health and wellbeing of the Waikato River catchment

Objective 3.17 is achieved by the following policies:

4.1 Integrated approach	9.3 Development Geothermal Systems
4.2 Collaborative approach	9.4 Limited Development Geothermal Systems
4.3 Tāngata whenua	9.5 Protected Geothermal Systems
4.4 Regionally significant industry and primary production	
6.6 Significant infrastructure and energy resources	9.6 Research Geothermal Systems
9.1 Sustainable management of the Regional Geothermal Resource	9.7 Small Geothermal Systems
9.2 Significant Geothermal Features	9.8 Geothermal characteristics valued by tāngata Whenua

3.18 Historic and cultural heritage

Sites, **structures**, landscapes, areas or places of **historic and cultural heritage** are protected, maintained or enhanced in order to retain the identity and integrity of the Waikato region's and New Zealand's history and culture.

Objective 3.18 addresses the following issues:

- 1.1 State of resources
- 1.4 Managing the built environment
- 1.5 Relationship of tāngata whenua with the environment (te taiao)
- 1.6 Health and wellbeing of the Waikato River catchment

Objective 3.18 is achieved by the following policies:

4.1 Integrated approach	9.8 Geothermal characteristics valued by tāngata whenua
4.2 Collaborative approach	10.1 Managing historic and cultural heritage
4.3 Tāngata whenua	10.2 Relationship of Māori to taonga
6.1 Planned and co-ordinated subdivision, use and development	10.3 Effects of development on historic and cultural heritage
6.10 Implementing the Coromandel Peninsula Blueprint	12.3 Maintain and enhance areas of amenity value
9.2 Significant Geothermal Features	

3.19 Ecological integrity and indigenous biodiversity

The full range of ecosystem types, their extent and the indigenous biodiversity that those ecosystems can support exist in a healthy and functional state.

Objective 3.19 addresses the following issues:

- 1.1 State of resources
- 1.5 Relationship of tāngata whenua with the environment (te taiao)
- 1.6 Health and wellbeing of the Waikato River catchment

Objective 3.19 is achieved by the following policies:

- | | |
|---|---|
| 4.1 Integrated approach | 9.2 Significant Geothermal Features |
| 4.2 Collaborative approach | 9.3 Development Geothermal Systems |
| 4.3 Tāngata whenua | 9.4 Limited Development Geothermal Systems |
| 6.1 Planned and co-ordinated subdivision, use and development | 9.5 Protected Geothermal Systems |
| 6.2 Planning for development in the coastal environment | 9.6 Research Geothermal Systems |
| 6.10 Implementing the Coromandel Peninsula Blueprint | 11.1 Maintain or enhance indigenous biodiversity |
| 7.2 Marine water quality | 11.2 Protect significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitats of indigenous fauna |
| 8.1 Approach to identifying fresh water body values and managing fresh water bodies | 11.3 Collaborative management |
| 8.2 Outstanding fresh water bodies and significant values of wetlands | 11.4 Safeguard coastal/marine ecosystems |
| 8.3 All fresh water bodies | 12.1 Outstanding natural features and landscapes |
| 8.4 Catchment-based intervention | 12.2 Preserve natural character |
| 8.5 Waikato River catchment | 12.3 Maintain and enhance areas of amenity value |
| 8.6 Allocating fresh water | 12.5 Appropriate restrictions on public access |

3.20 Outstanding natural features and landscapes

The values of outstanding natural features and landscapes are identified and protected from inappropriate subdivision, use and development.

Objective 3.20 addresses the following issues:

- 1.1 State of resources
- 1.5 Relationship of tāngata whenua with the environment (te taiao)
- 1.6 Health and wellbeing of the Waikato River catchment

Objective 3.20 is achieved by the following policies:

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| 4.1 Integrated approach | 9.4 Limited Development Geothermal Systems |
| 4.2 Collaborative approach | 9.5 Protected Geothermal Systems |
| 4.3 Tāngata whenua | 9.6 Research Geothermal Systems |
| 9.2 Significant Geothermal Features | 12.1 Outstanding natural features and landscapes |
| | 12.3 Maintain and enhance areas of amenity value |

3.21 Amenity

The qualities and characteristics of areas and features, valued for their contribution to amenity, are maintained or enhanced.

Objective 3.21 addresses the following issues:

- 1.1 State of resources
- 1.4 Managing the built environment
- 1.5 Relationship of tāngata whenua with the environment (te taiao)
- 1.6 Health and wellbeing of the Waikato River catchment

Objective 3.21 is achieved by the following policies:

- | | |
|---|--|
| 4.1 Integrated approach | 8.6 Allocating fresh water |
| 4.2 Collaborative approach | 9.1 Sustainable management of the Regional Geothermal Resource |
| 4.3 Tāngata whenua | 9.2 Significant Geothermal Features |
| 5.1 Improve degraded air quality | 9.3 Development geothermal systems |
| 5.2 Manage discharges to air | 9.4 Limited Development Geothermal Systems |
| 5.3 Manage adverse effects on amenity | 9.5 Protected Geothermal Systems |
| 6.1 Planned and co-ordinated subdivision, | 9.6 Research Geothermal Systems |

OBJECTIVES

<i>use and development</i>	
6.2	Planning for development in the coastal environment
6.10	Implementing Coromandel Peninsula Blueprint
7.1	Interests in the coastal marine area
7.2	Marine water quality
8.1	Approach to identifying fresh water body values and managing fresh water bodies
8.2	Outstanding fresh water bodies and significant values of wetlands
8.3	All fresh water bodies
8.4	Catchment-based intervention
8.5	Waikato River catchment
9.7	Small geothermal systems
10.1	Managing historic and cultural heritage
11.1	Maintain or enhance indigenous biodiversity
11.4	Safeguard coastal/marine ecosystems
12.1	Outstanding natural features and landscapes
12.3	Maintain and enhance areas of amenity value
12.4	Maintain and enhance public access
13.1	Natural hazard risk management approach

3.22 Natural character

The natural character of the coastal environment, wetlands, and lakes and rivers and their margins are protected from the adverse effects of inappropriate subdivision, use and development.

Objective 3.22 addresses the following issues:

- 1.1 State of resources
- 1.4 Managing the built environment
- 1.5 Relationship of tāngata whenua with the environment (te taiao)
- 1.6 Health and wellbeing of the Waikato River catchment

Objective 3.22 is achieved by the following policies:

- | | |
|---|--|
| 4.1 Integrated approach | 8.4 Catchment-based intervention |
| 4.2 Collaborative approach | 8.5 Waikato River catchment |
| 4.3 Tāngata whenua | 8.6 Allocating fresh water |
| 6.1 Planned and co-ordinated subdivision, use and development | 9.2 Significant Geothermal Features |
| 6.2 Planning for development in the coastal environment | 9.4 Limited Development Geothermal Systems |
| 6.10 Implementing the Coromandel Peninsula Blueprint | 9.5 Protected Geothermal Systems |
| 7.1 Interests in the coastal marine area | 9.6 Research Geothermal Systems |
| 7.2 Marine water quality | 11.1 Maintain or enhance indigenous biodiversity |
| 8.1 Approach to identifying fresh water body values and managing fresh water bodies | 11.4 Safeguard coastal/marine ecosystems |
| 8.2 Outstanding fresh water bodies and significant values of wetlands | 12.2 Preserve natural character |
| 8.3 All fresh water bodies | 13.1 Natural hazard risk management approach |

3.23 Public access

Public access to and along the coastal marine area, lakes and rivers is maintained and enhanced.

Objective 3.23 addresses the following issues:

- 1.1 State of resources
- 1.5 Relationship of tāngata whenua with the environment (te taiao)
- 1.6 Health and wellbeing of the Waikato River catchment

Objective 3.23 is achieved by the following policies:

- | | |
|---|---|
| 4.1 Integrated approach | 8.2 Outstanding fresh water bodies and significant values of wetlands |
| 4.2 Collaborative approach | 8.3 All fresh water bodies |
| 4.3 Tāngata whenua | 8.4 Catchment-based intervention |
| 6.1 Planned and co-ordinated subdivision, use and development | 8.5 Waikato River catchment |
| 6.2 Planning for development in the coastal environment | 12.3 Maintain and enhance areas of amenity value |
| 7.1 Interests in the coastal marine area | 12.4 Maintain and enhance public access |
| 8.1 Approach to identifying fresh water body values and managing fresh water bodies | 12.5 Appropriate restrictions on public access |

3.24 Natural hazards

The effects of **natural hazards** on people, property and the environment are managed by:

- a) increasing community resilience to hazard risks;
- b) reducing the risks from hazards to acceptable or tolerable levels; and
- c) enabling the effective and efficient response and recovery from natural hazard events.

Objective 3.24 addresses the following issues:

- 1.1 State of resources
- 1.2 Effects of climate change
- 1.4 Managing the built environment

Objective 3.24 is achieved by the following policies:

- | | |
|---|---|
| 4.1 Integrated approach | 7.1 Interests in the coastal marine area |
| 4.2 Collaborative approach | 9.3 Development Geothermal Systems |
| 4.3 Tāngata whenua | 9.4 Limited Development Geothermal Systems |
| 6.1 Planned and co-ordinated subdivision, use and development | 13.1 Natural hazard risk management approach |
| 6.2 Planning for development in the coastal environment | 13.2 Manage activities to reduce the risks from natural hazards |
| 6.10 Implementing the Coromandel Peninsula Blueprint | 13.3 High impact, low probability natural hazard events |

3.25 Values of soil

The soil resource is managed to safeguard its life supporting capacity, for the existing and foreseeable range of uses.

Objective 3.25 addresses the following issues:

- 1.1 State of resources
- 1.5 Relationship of tāngata whenua with the environment (te taiao)

Objective 3.25 is achieved by the following policies:

- | | |
|---|--|
| 4.1 Integrated approach | 14.1 Maintain or enhance the life supporting capacity of the soil resource |
| 4.2 Collaborative approach | 14.2 High class soils |
| 4.3 Tāngata whenua | 14.3 Soil contaminants |
| 4.4 Regionally significant industry and primary production | 14.4 Contaminated land |
| 6.1 Planned and co-ordinated subdivision, use and development | 14.5 Peat soils |
| 6.2 Planning for development in the coastal environment | |

3.26 High class soils

The value of **high class soils** for primary production is recognised and high class soils are protected from inappropriate subdivision, use or development.

Objective 3.26 addresses the following issues:

- 1.1 State of resources

Objective 3.26 is achieved by the following policies:

- | | |
|--|--|
| 4.1 Integrated approach | 6.1 Planned and co-ordinated subdivision, use and development |
| 4.2 Collaborative approach | 14.1 Maintain or enhance the life supporting capacity of the soil resource |
| 4.3 Tāngata whenua | 14.2 High class soils |
| 4.4 Regionally significant industry and primary production | 14.3 Soil contaminants |

PART B

TE WĀHANGA B

4 Integrated management

Policy 4.1 Integrated approach

An integrated approach to resource management will be adopted that:

- a) recognises the inter-connected nature of **natural and physical resources** (including spatially and temporally) and the benefits of aligning the decisions of relevant management agencies across boundaries;
- b) maximises the benefits and efficiencies of working together ;
- c) recognises the multiple values of natural and physical resources including **ecosystem services**;
- d) responds to the nature and values of the resource and the diversity of effects (including cumulative effects) that can occur;
- e) maximises opportunities to achieve multiple objectives;
- f) takes a long-term strategic approach which recognises the changing environment and changing resource use pressures and trends;
- g) applies consistent and best practice standards and processes to decision making; and
- h) establishes, where appropriate, a planning framework which sets clear limits and thresholds for resource use.

Implementation methods

4.1.1 Amendments to regional and district plans

Amendments to regional and district plans to give effect to this Regional Policy Statement shall be notified within two years of its operative date.

4.1.2 Land use change and intensification

Waikato Regional Council will work with territorial authorities to identify and manage the adverse effects of large-scale land use change or intensification, by taking account of:

- a) the potential to adversely affect the range of natural and physical resources, including effects occurring off site;
- b) the potential cumulative effects;
- c) opportunities to manage adverse effects in collaboration with territorial authorities, **tāngata whenua**, industry, landowners and other stakeholders; and
- d) options for managing adverse effects including:
 - i) regulatory and non-regulatory methods;
 - ii) education and advocacy; and
 - iii) use of economic instruments.

The relevant objectives are:

- 3.1 *Integrated management*
- 3.2 *Resource use and development*
- 3.3 *Decision making*
- 3.4 *Health and wellbeing of the Waikato River*
- 3.5 *Energy*
- 3.6 *Adapting to climate change*
- 3.7 *Coastal environment*
- 3.8 *Ecosystem services*
- 3.9 *Relationship of tāngata whenua with the environment*
- 3.10 *Sustainable and efficient use of resources*
- 3.11 *Air quality*
- 3.12 *Built environment*
- 3.13 *Mauri and health of marine waters*
- 3.14 *Mauri and values of fresh water bodies*
- 3.15 *Allocation and use of fresh water*
- 3.16 *Riparian areas and wetlands*
- 3.17 *Geothermal*
- 3.18 *Historic and cultural heritage*
- 3.19 *Ecological integrity and indigenous biodiversity*
- 3.20 *Outstanding natural features and landscapes*
- 3.21 *Amenity*
- 3.22 *Natural character*
- 3.23 *Public access*
- 3.24 *Natural hazards*
- 3.25 *Values of soil*
- 3.26 *High class soils*

4.1.3 Co-ordinated approach

Waikato Regional Council will seek opportunities to align its own activities, including the provision of works and services, regulation, education programmes and environmental initiatives, to maximise the benefits achieved.

4.1.4 Plans and strategies

In developing plans and strategies for the management of resources, Waikato Regional Council will

- a) adopt an appropriate scale of management;
- b) seek opportunities to promote positive environmental outcomes across a range of resources; and
- c) consider relevant industry guidelines and codes of practice that represent appropriate industry practice and management approaches.

4.1.5 Environmental management plans

Waikato Regional Council will collaborate with territorial authorities, tāngata whenua, industry and stakeholders to investigate the benefits of and options for developing property level environmental management plans to promote positive outcomes and manage the effects of rural land uses including farming.

Environmental management plans should identify:

- a) potential and actual adverse effects of the current land use;
- b) options/recommendations for addressing identified adverse effects;
- c) an implementation plan to address identified adverse effects;
- d) options and opportunities for environmental enhancement;
- e) recommended sustainable land management practices; and
- f) any monitoring required.

4.1.6 Advocacy and education

Waikato Regional Council will promote an integrated approach to resource management, including by:

- a) promoting sustainable land management practices;
- b) educating landowners/managers about the adverse effects of land use practices, including off-site and cumulative effects;
- c) promoting understanding of the values and benefits of resources in contributing to community wellbeing through providing ecosystem services;
- d) promoting understanding of the different ways in which resources are valued by people and communities;
- e) advocating for consistent application of best practices standards and processes, including best practice **tikanga** and **mātauranga Māori**;
- f) encouraging research to increase understanding of the effects of climate change on the Waikato region;
- g) making submissions on the long-term plans and annual plans of territorial authorities to seek the appropriate allocation of resources to give effect to the Regional Policy Statement; and
- h) advocating to central government agencies, tāngata whenua, and other stakeholders to assist implementation of the Regional Policy Statement.

4.1.7 Managing the coastal environment

Local authorities should:

- a) recognise and manage the **coastal environment** as an integrated unit; and
- b) recognise the special context of the coastal environment, including the recognition that it has particular values and issues that are of regional and national significance and that impact on the wellbeing of the Waikato region, including:

- i) its contribution to the regional and local economy;
- ii) its cultural values and association, including **historic heritage**;
- iii) its value as a **pātaka kai**;
- iv) its public nature;
- v) its **amenity values**, including its contribution to open space;
- vi) its dynamic and hazardous nature;
- vii) the difficulty in containing adverse effects due to its inter-connected nature;
- viii) its potential for renewable energy generation;
- ix) its ecological diversity and **indigenous biodiversity** values;
- x) the use of the **coastal marine area** as the receiving environment for land-based discharges of sediment and **contaminants** and its sensitivity to them; and
- xi) its potential for **mineral** resources.

4.1.8 Identifying extent of the coastal environment

In relation to the coastal environment:

- a) the Regional Policy Statement shall map the landward extent of the coastal environment at an indicative level;
- b) regional and district plans shall map or otherwise identify the landward extent of the **coastal environment** as the area:
 - i) identified in the indicative maps provided in Section 4A; or
 - ii) determined by further detailed investigation;
- c) any detailed investigation undertaken under b) above shall:
 - i) recognise and include assessment and consideration of all of the elements of the coastal environment (as defined in the Glossary);
 - ii) be undertaken by the relevant **local authority** using a collaborative approach under Policy 4.2 in recognition of the need to manage the coastal environment as an integrated unit;
- d) where a detailed investigation has been undertaken and the results of this investigation have been made operative through inclusion in the relevant regional and district plans, this area should take precedence over the relevant indicative area provided in Section 4A.
- e) regional and district plans shall contain provisions that:
 - i) address adverse effects of activities on the coastal environment, including cross-boundary and cumulative effects; and
 - ii) recognise the particular values and issues present in the coastal environment; and
 - iii) provide for integrated management and consistent provisions to give effect to the policy direction of the Regional Policy Statement for the coastal marine area and the adjoining land in the coastal environment.

4.1.9 Planning approach

Regional and district plans shall:

- a) ensure that cumulative adverse effects are managed;
- b) recognise the long timeframes at which natural physical processes operate (e.g. coastal erosion and accretion cycles) and adopt at least a 100-year planning timeframe to allow for changes in these processes, while acknowledging that a shorter timeframe typically applies when modelling Development Geothermal Systems;
- c) adopt a precautionary approach towards any proposed activity whose effects may be significant or irreversible but are as yet uncertain, unknown or little understood, including the use and management of coastal resources particularly vulnerable to effects from climate change; and

- d) recognise lag times between human actions and environmental results.

4.1.10 Economic instruments

Waikato Regional Council will investigate and implement options for using economic instruments in regional council planning documents where appropriate, to assist in the management of natural and physical resources. Options may include:

- a) offsets or financial contributions for adverse effects generated by consented activities;
- b) differential rates and remissions policies for managing land-based activities, particularly where a public good is provided by private interests;
- c) full-cost pricing to ensure negative externalities are borne by those responsible where possible;
- d) occupation charges for the use of public space; and
- e) tradable permits to assist in the efficient management of resources.

4.1.11 Offsite mitigation of adverse effects

Local authorities should consider the following priorities (not listed in order of importance) for restoration or enhancement as possible alternatives to onsite mitigation in situations where it is not appropriate or practical to mitigate the adverse effects of an activity on site:

- a) public access to and along the coastal marine area and land adjacent to the coast and inland water bodies;
- b) health and wellbeing of the Waikato River and its **catchment**;
- c) functioning and stability of natural physical processes (including by retirement of land along the coastal margin, retirement of steep land from production, and enhancement of riparian areas);
- d) indigenous biodiversity (including creation, restoration and enhancement of **wetlands** and corridors);
- e) degraded geothermal features/characteristics; and
- f) **natural character** of the coastal environment, wetlands, and lakes and rivers and their margins.

4.1.12 Other plans and strategies

Local authorities should, where appropriate, seek consistency with the objectives and policies of the Regional Policy Statement in other plans and strategies, including:

- a) asset management plans;
- b) long-term plans;
- c) regional pest management strategies;
- d) regional land transport plans;
- e) navigation safety and other bylaws;
- f) Waikato Regional Council zone management plans;
- g) civil defence and emergency management group plans;
- h) structure plans;
- i) growth strategies; and
- j) reserve management plans.

4.1.13 Incorporating effects of climate change

Local authorities should, and regional and district plans shall, recognise and provide for the projected effects of climate change, having particular regard to:

- a) historic long-term local climate data;
- b) projected increase in rainfall intensity, taking account of the most recent national guidance and assuming a minimum increase in temperature of 2.1°C by 2090 (relative to 1990 levels); and

- c) projected increase in sea level, taking into account the most recent national guidance and assuming a minimum increase in sea level of 0.8m by 2090 (relative to 1990 levels).

4.1.14 Monitoring and information gathering

Waikato Regional Council will:

- a) track changes in use of natural and physical resources to ensure early identification of land use and resource use trends that may result in adverse effects on the environment;
- b) develop and maintain processes and resources to enable the effects of activities, including cumulative effects, to be monitored;
- c) monitor the state of resources and ensure that an appropriate level of understanding is available and maintained to assist policy and management initiatives;
- d) identify relevant **ecosystem services** and assess their role and value to the region;
- e) identify and integrate **mātauranga Māori** indicators and measures as part of the information and monitoring regime;
- f) consider opportunities for communities to be involved in local monitoring programmes; and
- g) investigate the use of integrated spatial planning tools including to explore alternative long-term development options and associated trade-offs.

Explanation

Traditional approaches to resource management have sometimes failed to adequately recognise the inter-related nature of natural resources, and the different values ascribed to them. This policy seeks to address this and, in doing so, to achieve effective and efficient resource management and value for money for those funding different activities. It also seeks that we are not caught unprepared by sudden or cumulative changes either in the environment, or in the pressures and demands on resources.

Local authorities have many different, and sometimes competing, functions, including support for or involvement in the activities of others. There will often be opportunities to design activities so that the positive outcomes are maximised – for example, in providing and managing reserves, authorities can also promote positive indigenous biodiversity and natural character outcomes through the choice of appropriate species for planting. Land managers will often similarly have options to amend their practices to achieve positive environmental outcomes. It has been shown that adopting better environmental practices can often provide economic benefits also. Method 4.1.5 promotes property level management plans that identify area specific best practice and signals that these plans may be used in future regulatory regimes.

Stemming from recognition of the inter-related nature of resources is the recognition that the appropriate scale of management will be different depending on the resource or issue being managed. For example, attempting to manage water quality in one stretch of a river without addressing the causes of degradation will have limited success. The coastal environment is specifically identified as a management unit to be recognised. The definition of coastal environment in the Glossary represents a regional scale application of the coastal environment elements defined in the New Zealand Coastal Policy Statement 2010.

To achieve the best outcome for the Waikato region, it is necessary to ensure a level of consistency in resource management approaches. This will be achieved through the amendment of regional and district plans to give effect to this Regional Policy Statement and adoption of consistent approaches and bottom-lines, such as contained in Methods 4.1.9 and 4.1.13. Method 4.1.2 recognises that generally as the scale of

land use change or land use intensification increases, so does the potential for significant environmental effects. Such changes can be rapid and relatively localised, such as conversion of an area of forest to a pastoral farm, or they can be slower and cumulative, such as increasing use of fertiliser over time for farming generally or spreading rural-residential development. Method 4.1.2 is not intended to capture crop and harvest cycles or other seasonal or rotational farming practices.

Some activities will be deemed acceptable despite the fact that they will actually or potentially create adverse effects. This will usually occur when the positive effects the activity will generate are considered to outweigh the adverse effects. Methods 4.1.10 and 4.1.11 set out mechanisms by which adverse effects can be remedied or mitigated, including through offsite mitigation where this will result in a better outcome.

Policy 4.2 Collaborative approach

Waikato Regional Council will:

- a) recognise and provide for the unique role that territorial authorities have in the implementation of the provisions of the Waikato Regional Policy Statement; and
- b) encourage collaboration, participation and information sharing between resource management agencies, tāngata whenua and relevant stakeholders, particularly where there are shared or overlapping responsibilities or functions for issues or resources, and including when resources or issues cross boundaries.

Implementation methods

4.2.1 Co-ordinated approaches to resource management

Waikato Regional Council will collaborate with territorial authorities, tāngata whenua and other agencies with resource management responsibilities to ensure consistent and co-ordinated approaches to resource management planning, including by:

- a) working proactively with tāngata whenua and territorial authorities in the early stages of preparing resource management plans and strategies;
- b) providing advice on the intended implementation of regional council policy;
- c) facilitating regular liaison with tāngata whenua and other local authorities on resource management issues; and
- d) avoiding duplication in consent requirements.

4.2.2 Local authority implementation agreements

Waikato Regional Council and territorial authorities shall develop and agree implementation agreements that provide further detail as to how the local authorities will collaborate to effectively and efficiently implement the Waikato Regional Policy Statement. The agreement shall address at least the following:

- a) the timing of implementation;
- b) the sharing of resources to implement the Regional Policy Statement;

The relevant objectives are:

- 3.1 Integrated management
- 3.2 Resource use and development
- 3.3 Decision making
- 3.4 Health and wellbeing of the Waikato River
- 3.5 Energy
- 3.6 Adapting to climate change
- 3.7 Coastal environment
- 3.8 Ecosystem services
- 3.9 Relationship of tāngata whenua with the environment
- 3.10 Sustainable and efficient use of resources
- 3.11 Air quality
- 3.12 Built environment
- 3.13 Mauri and health of marine waters
- 3.14 Mauri and values of fresh water bodies
- 3.15 Allocation and use of fresh water
- 3.16 Riparian areas and wetlands
- 3.17 Geothermal
- 3.18 Historic and cultural heritage
- 3.19 Ecological integrity and indigenous biodiversity
- 3.20 Outstanding natural features and landscapes
- 3.21 Amenity
- 3.22 Natural character
- 3.23 Public access
- 3.24 Natural hazards
- 3.25 Values of soil
- 3.26 High class soils

- c) respective implementation priorities; and
- d) the integration of functions and approaches in order to maximise efficiency to avoid duplication.

4.2.3 Recognition of interests

Local authorities should:

- a) ensure appropriate processes and opportunities are established and maintained to inform relevant agencies, including neighbouring local authorities, relevant **infrastructure** providers, tāngata whenua and other relevant stakeholders of any anticipated regional or district plan changes or reviews, growth strategies, structure plans, and land use or subdivision consent processes which may have an effect on the interests of these parties; and
- b) provide opportunities for meaningful involvement in such processes.

4.2.4 Consistent information systems

Local authorities should:

- a) ensure that, as far as practicable, information is collected, analysed and stored using methods and technologies that are consistent and compatible to enable easy sharing of such information;
- b) develop protocols as to how and when information will be shared; and
- c) consider developing shared information services.

4.2.5 Joint planning

Waikato Regional Council will investigate opportunities for joint initiatives (including across regional boundaries) particularly in relation to managing:

- a) the coastal environment;
- b) the Waikato River and its catchment;
- c) the Hauraki Gulf;
- d) geothermal resources;
- e) Lake Rotorua and its catchment;
- f) Kaimai-Mamaku catchments; and
- g) groundwater resources.

4.2.6 General cross-boundary issues

Waikato Regional Council will work with adjoining local authorities, tāngata whenua and other agencies, including central government to identify resource management issues that cross boundaries and to reach agreements and put in place mechanisms for managing issues that are identified.

4.2.7 Cross-boundary issues specific to Bay of Plenty Regional Council

Waikato Regional Council will liaise with the Bay of Plenty Regional Council to ensure:

- a) any regional plans for that part of the Rotorua Lake catchment within the Waikato region are consistent with the objectives set for the lake, particularly in relation to managing land use and nutrient discharge levels;
- b) consistent management across jurisdictional boundaries of the Kaimai-Mamuku Ranges and the geothermal resource in the Taupō volcanic zone, including through means such as memoranda of understanding; and
- c) integrated management and strategic planning of inter-regional transport networks and infrastructure.

4.2.8 Hauraki Gulf Forum

Waikato Regional Council will:

- a) actively participate in and contribute to the Hauraki Gulf Forum;

- b) advocate for the Hauraki Gulf Forum to play an active role in management, research, advocacy and education in relation to the Hauraki Gulf and its catchments; and
- c) liaise with relevant Forum partners and other stakeholders to investigate preparation of a spatial plan for the Hauraki Gulf.

4.2.9 Hazardous substances

Regional and district plans shall recognise and provide for the following division of responsibilities when developing provisions for the control of the use of land for the prevention or mitigation of any adverse effects of the storage, use, disposal or transportation of **hazardous substances**:

- a) Waikato Regional Council shall be responsible for developing objectives, policies, rules and other methods for land in the coastal marine area and the beds of lakes and rivers; and
- b) territorial authorities shall be responsible for developing objectives, policies, rules and other methods for all other land.

4.2.10 Natural hazards

For the purposes of avoiding or mitigating **natural hazards**, territorial authorities shall be responsible for the control of the use of land except for the following, which shall be the responsibility of the Waikato Regional Council:

- a) the control of the use of land in the coastal marine area and the beds of lakes and rivers; and
- b) the control of **structures** in primary hazard zones.

4.2.11 Indigenous biodiversity

In carrying out their resource management functions, local authorities shall maintain or enhance indigenous biodiversity. Territorial authorities shall be responsible for the control of the use of land to maintain indigenous biodiversity, excluding land in the coastal marine area and the beds of lakes and rivers, which shall be the responsibility of the Waikato Regional Council.

Explanation

Integrated resource management requires a holistic view that looks beyond organisational, spatial or administrative boundaries. For integrated management to be effective and efficient it requires a coherent and consistent approach and that agencies or organisations involved in resource management work together in a collaborative manner. This is because there is overlap in the functions of local authorities and also resources and issues that cross jurisdictional boundaries. Methods 4.2.1-5 set out principles and processes to guide collaboration between agencies. The process for managing environmental effects that cross boundaries is set out in Methods 4.2.6 and 4.2.7 as required by the Resource Management Act. Method 4.2.8 also addresses a particular resource (the Hauraki Gulf) that crosses jurisdictional boundaries.

Methods 4.2.9, 4.2.10 and 4.2.11 allocate the respective management responsibilities for hazardous substances, natural hazards and indigenous biodiversity as required by the Resource Management Act. Both regional and territorial authorities have functions under the Act in respect of these matters so clear delineation of responsibilities is necessary to avoid duplication and inconsistencies.

Policy 4.3 Tāngata whenua

Tāngata whenua are provided appropriate opportunities to express, maintain and enhance the relationship with their **rohe** through resource management and other local authority processes.

Implementation methods

4.3.1 Strategic partnerships with iwi authorities

Waikato Regional Council will seek to develop strategic and formal partnerships with **iwi authorities** which should include addressing the following:

- a) involvement in regional plan development and review;
- b) involvement in resource consent processes; and
- c) protocols for information sharing and transfer.

4.3.2 Tāngata whenua involvement

Local authorities should ensure that tāngata whenua have appropriate opportunities to be involved in relevant resource management processes, including:

- a) developing and implementing plans and strategies;
- b) developing and implementing monitoring and enhancement programmes;
- c) decision making; and
- d) by establishing formal arrangements such as joint management agreements or memoranda of understanding or co-management.

4.3.3 Kaitiakitanga

Local authorities should work with tāngata whenua to develop:

- a) an understanding of the application of **kaitiakitanga**;
- b) processes and protocols for providing for the practical expression of kaitiakitanga, which may include:
 - i) agreeing who should be consulted, when and how;
 - ii) establishing formal arrangements such as joint management agreements or memoranda of understanding;
 - iii) tāngata whenua representation on hearings and other council committees;
 - iv) support for preparation, implementation and review of **iwi** and **hapū** planning documents;
 - v) establishing an inventory of matters raised by tāngata whenua and best practice responses to reduce duplication of effort; and
- c) protocols for information sharing and transfer including of mātauranga Māori.

4.3.4 Use and enjoyment of resources

In developing relevant resource management processes, including regional and district plans, local authorities should provide for the wellbeing of tāngata whenua by enabling appropriate access to and use and enjoyment of their resources.

The relevant objectives are:

- 3.1 *Integrated management*
- 3.2 *Resource use and development*
- 3.3 *Decision making*
- 3.4 *Health and wellbeing of the Waikato River*
- 3.5 *Energy*
- 3.6 *Adapting to climate change*
- 3.7 *Coastal environment*
- 3.8 *Ecosystem services*
- 3.9 *Relationship of tāngata whenua with the environment*
- 3.10 *Sustainable and efficient use of resources*
- 3.11 *Air quality*
- 3.12 *Built environment*
- 3.13 *Mauri and health of marine waters*
- 3.14 *Mauri and values of fresh water bodies*
- 3.15 *Allocation and use of fresh water*
- 3.16 *Riparian areas and wetlands*
- 3.17 *Geothermal*
- 3.18 *Historic and cultural heritage*
- 3.19 *Ecological integrity and indigenous biodiversity*
- 3.20 *Outstanding natural features and landscapes*
- 3.21 *Amenity*
- 3.22 *Natural character*
- 3.23 *Public access*
- 3.24 *Natural hazards*
- 3.25 *Values of soil*
- 3.26 *High class soils*

Explanation

Recognising and providing for the relationship of Māori and their culture and traditions with their ancestral land, water, sites, **wāhi tapu** and other **taonga** is a matter of national importance under the Resource Management Act. Ways of acknowledging and providing for this relationship are set out in Methods 4.3.1-3. Method 4.3.1 signals Waikato Regional Council's intent to continue to develop strategic partnerships with the iwi authorities of the region.

An important element of this relationship is the **kaitiaki** responsibilities of tāngata whenua. Section 7 of the Resource Management Act requires local authorities to have particular regard to kaitiakitanga. However, it is also important to be aware that tāngata whenua within the region will differ in how they want their kaitiaki role to be recognised. Method 4.3.3 provides for these differences.

Use and enjoyment of resources is integral to the principle of kaitiakitanga and the relationship tāngata whenua have with their resources. **Marae** and **papakāinga** are one form of development that may be sought on Māori land – this is addressed within Chapter 6.

Policy 4.4 Regionally significant industry and primary production

The management of natural and physical resources provides for the continued operation and development of **regionally significant industry** and **primary production** activities by:

- a) recognising the value and long term benefits of regionally significant industry to economic, social and cultural wellbeing;
- b) recognising the value and long term benefits of primary production activities which support regionally significant industry;
- c) ensuring the adverse effects of regionally significant industry and primary production are avoided, remedied or mitigated;
- d) co-ordinating infrastructure and service provision at a scale appropriate to the activities likely to be undertaken;
- e) maintaining and where appropriate enhancing access to natural and physical resources, while balancing the competing demand for these resources;
- f) avoiding or minimising the potential for reverse sensitivity; and
- g) promoting positive environmental outcomes.

The relevant objectives are:

- 3.1 Integrated management
- 3.2 Resource use and development
- 3.3 Decision making
- 3.5 Energy
- 3.7 Coastal environment
- 3.8 Ecosystem services
- 3.9 Relationship of tāngata whenua with the environment
- 3.10 Sustainable and efficient use of resources
- 3.12 Built environment
- 3.13 Mauri and health of marine waters
- 3.14 Mauri and values of fresh water bodies
- 3.15 Allocation and use of fresh water
- 3.17 Geothermal
- 3.25 Values of soil
- 3.26 High class soils

Implementation methods

4.4.1 Plan provisions

District and regional plans should provide for regionally significant industry and primary production by:

- a) identifying appropriate provisions, including zones, to enable the operation and development of regionally significant industry, which for new development is consistent with Policy 6.14 and Table 6-2;
- b) maintaining the life supporting capacity of soil to support primary production;
- c) maintaining and where appropriate enhancing access to natural and physical resources for regionally significant industry and primary production, while balancing the competing demand for these resources;

- d) recognising the potential for regionally significant industry and primary production activities to have adverse effects beyond its boundaries and the need to avoid or minimise the potential for **reverse sensitivity** effects;
- e) recognising the need to ensure regionally significant industry is supported by infrastructure networks of appropriate capacity;
- f) recognising the benefits of enabling the co-location of regionally significant industry to support efficient use of infrastructure, and minimise transportation requirements;
- g) recognising and balancing the competing demands for resources between regionally significant industry, primary production and other activities;
- h) ensuring the adverse effects of regionally significant industry and primary production are avoided, remedied or mitigated; and
- i) promoting positive environmental outcomes.

4.4.2 Collaboration

Local authorities, the NZ Transport Agency, other infrastructure and service providers, and industry organisations should collaborate in respect to the design, co-ordination and provision of infrastructure and services.

Explanation

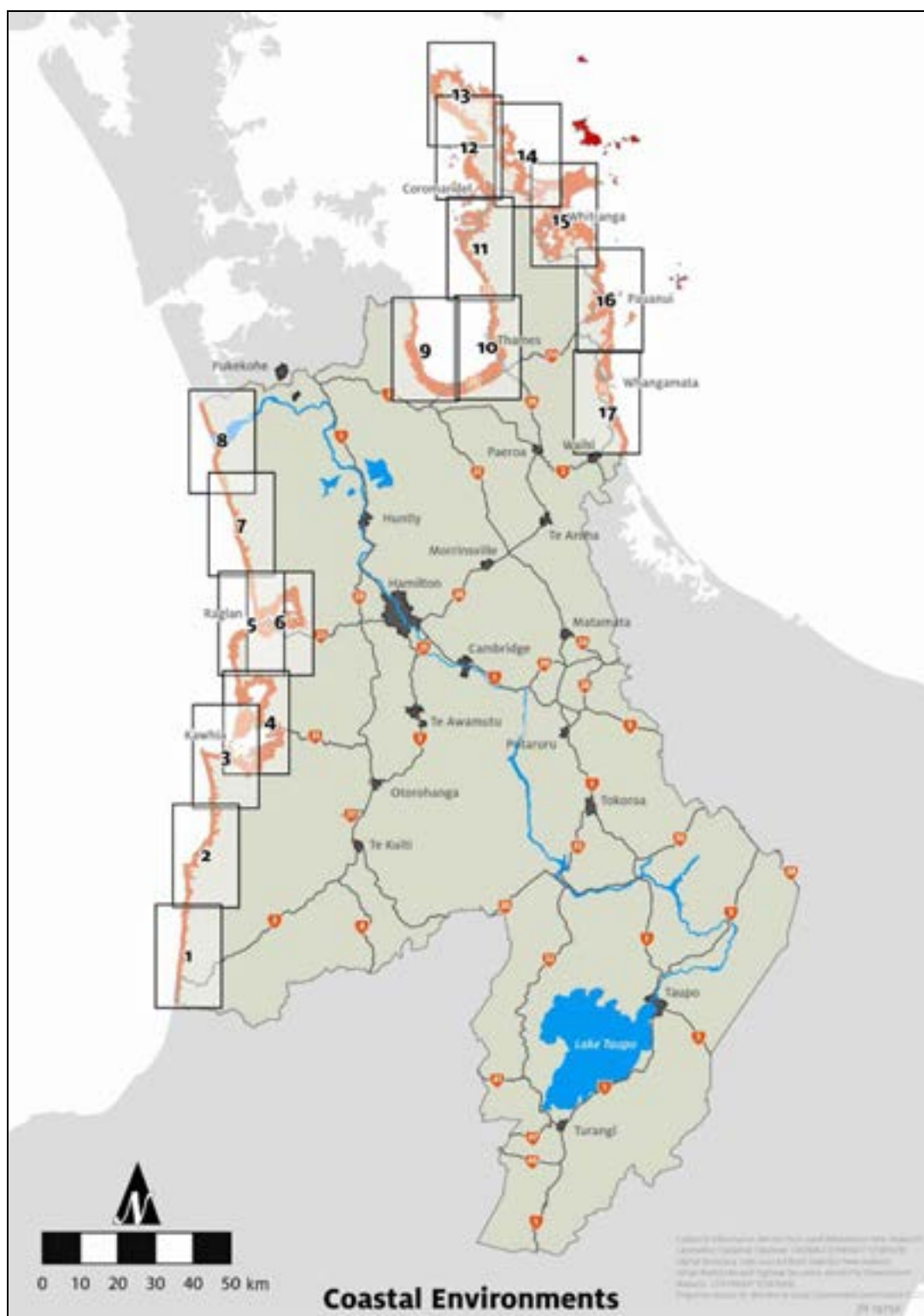
Policy 4.4 recognises the important role that regionally significant industry and primary production plays in contributing to the economic, social and cultural wellbeing of people and communities. Activities such as dairying, forestry and horticulture also have a direct relationship with the management and continued viability of rural activities. Some regionally significant industries also provide an anchor to support other industries and communities within rural and **urban** settings. The economic benefits contribute significantly to the vitality of settlements ranging in size from rural villages to Hamilton City. The policy will provide for an integrated approach to the management of resources such as water, energy and infrastructure which are essential to regionally significant industry and primary production activities. The policy also recognises that there is also the potential for regionally significant industry and primary production to generate adverse effects which need to be managed.

Method 4.4.1 sets out the matters that regional and district plans should have regard to in order to provide for regionally significant industry and primary production activities, while recognising there are competing demands on those resources that need to be balanced. Method 4.4.2 helps ensure that there is a co-ordinated approach to the provision of infrastructure and services for regionally significant industry.

Policy 4.4 and its Methods must be considered in the context of other objectives, policies, and methods in the Regional Policy Statement including those which provide for the protection or allocation of natural resources and the management of the built environment.

4A Indicative coastal environment maps

Maps in this section show the indicative landward extent of the coastal environment which extends seaward from the mapped line out to 12 nautical miles offshore, and includes all offshore islands whether mapped or not.



Map 4-1: Overview of indicative coastal environment maps



Map 4-2: Coastal environment 1



Map 4-3: Coastal environment 2



Map 4-4: Coastal environment 3



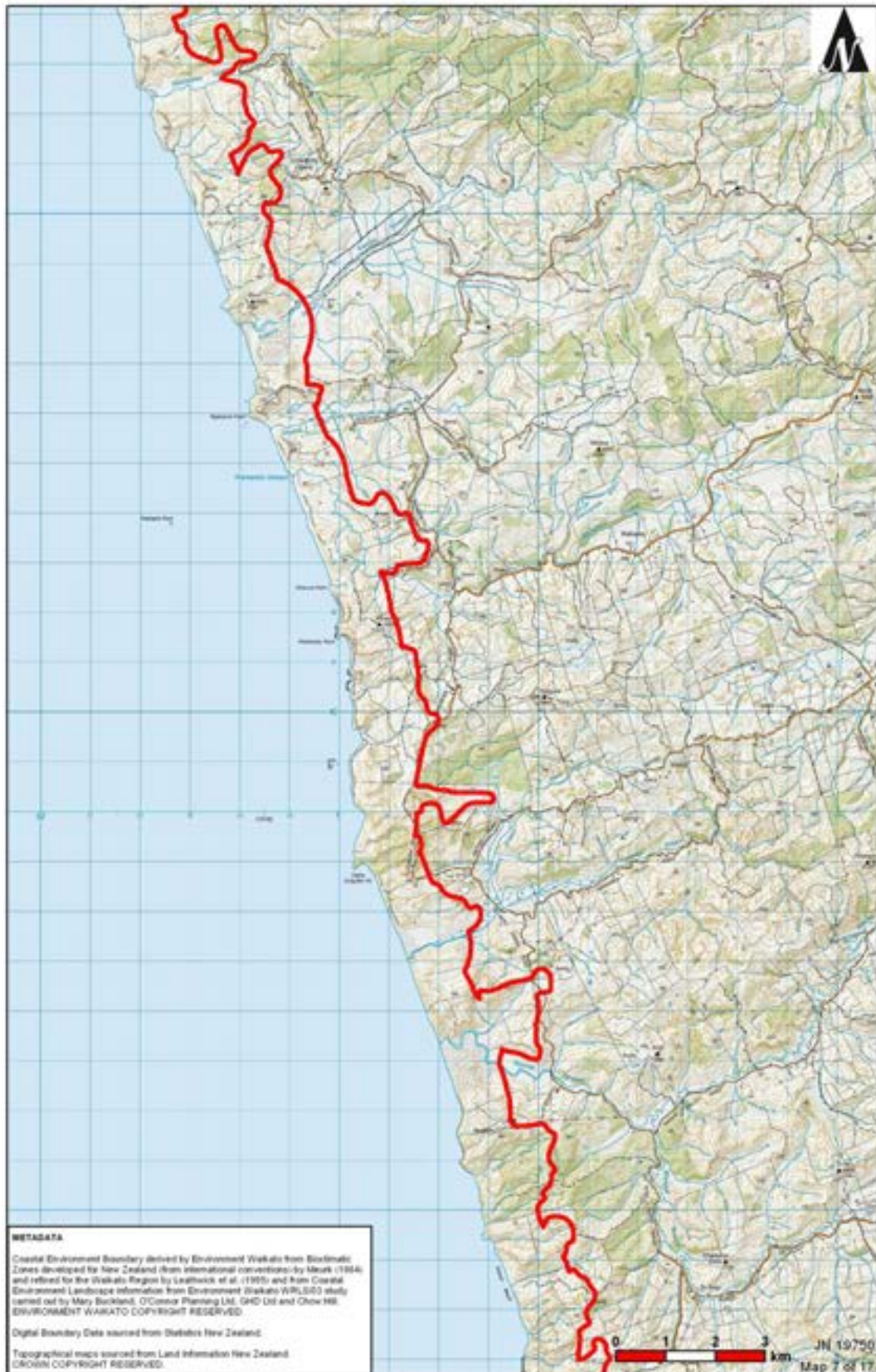
Map 4-5: Coastal environment 4



Map 4-6: Coastal environment 5



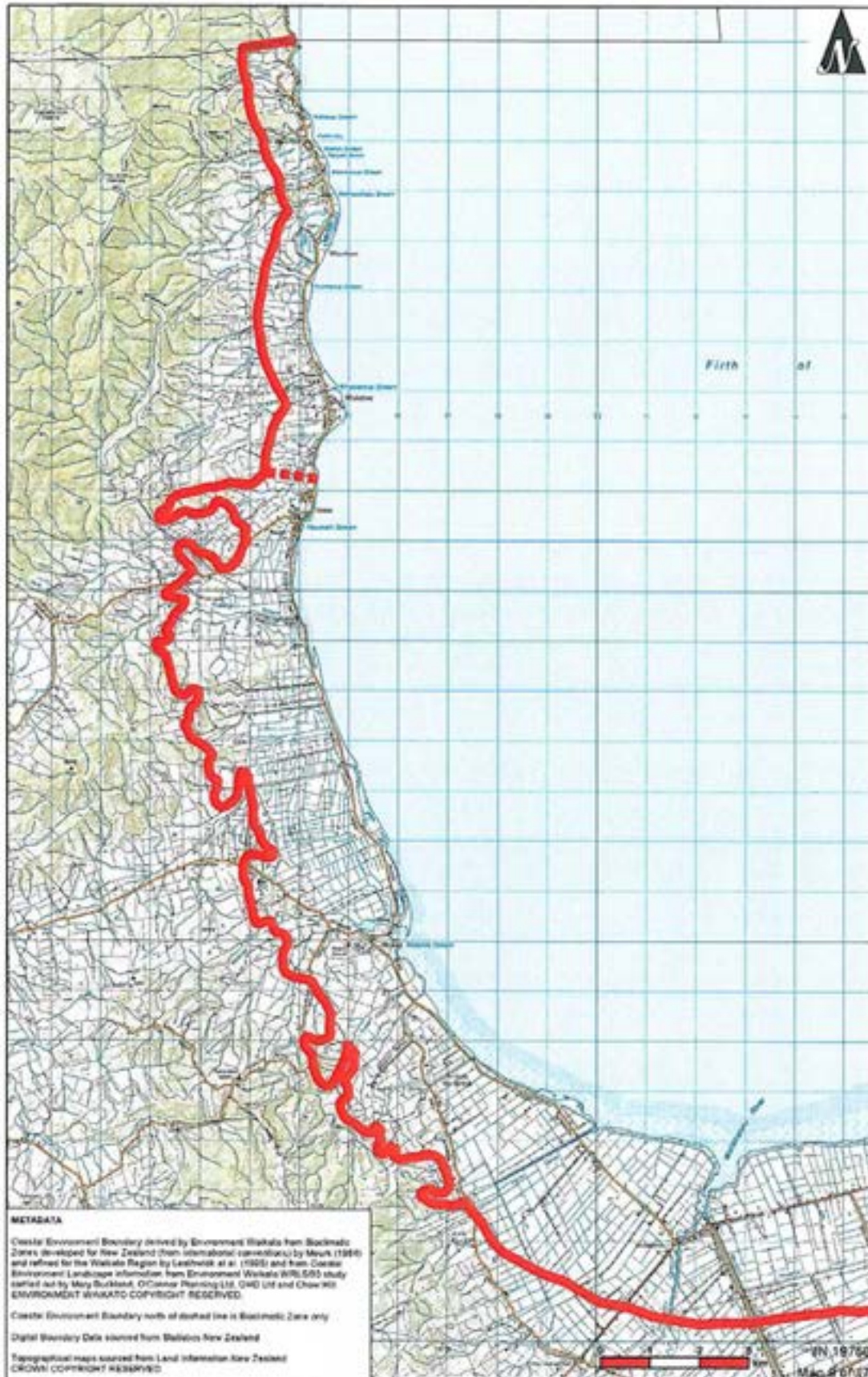
Map 4-7: Coastal environment 6



Map 4-8: Coastal environment 7



Map 4-9: Coastal environment 8



Map 4-10: Coastal environment 9



Map 4-11: Coastal environment 10



Map 4-12: Coastal environment 11



Map 4-13: Coastal environment 12



Map 4-14: Coastal environment 13



Map 4-15: Coastal environment 14



Map 4-16: Coastal environment 15



Map 4-17: Coastal environment 16



Map 4-18: Coastal environment 17

5 Air

Policy 5.1 Improve degraded air quality

Reduce the adverse effects on air quality caused by cumulative, diffuse, broad scale or multiple discharges from home heating appliances and transport, with particular emphasis on:

- a) discharges of **fine particulate matter**; and
- b) areas where there are unacceptable risks to human health and ecosystems.

<i>The relevant objectives are:</i>	
3.5	<i>Energy</i>
3.8	<i>Ecosystem services</i>
3.10	<i>Sustainable and efficient use of resources</i>
3.11	<i>Air quality</i>
3.21	<i>Amenity</i>

Implementation methods

5.1.1 Control discharges

Regional plans shall control discharges to air from **solid fuel home heating appliances** to avoid unacceptable risks to human health or ecosystems.

5.1.2 Determine unacceptable risk

In determining unacceptable risk to human health and ecosystems Waikato Regional Council will have regard to:

- a) National Environmental Standards for Air Quality;
- b) World Health Organisation Air Quality Guidelines;
- c) National Ambient Air Quality Guidelines;
- d) Regional Ambient Air Quality Guidelines; and
- e) other nationally or internationally accepted criteria.

5.1.3 Strategic approach

Waikato Regional Council will maintain an air quality monitoring program to identify air sheds that need improvement and will work with territorial authorities, tāngata whenua and other stakeholders to:

- a) identify potential gaps in how air quality issues are addressed;
- b) prioritise actions for improving air quality where it is degraded;
- c) identify implications for communities of addressing local air quality issues, including health, financial or other implications; and
- d) recognise local community needs and support community action.

5.1.4 Incentives for clean heating appliances and insulation

Waikato Regional Council will work with relevant agencies to deliver incentives to replace solid fuel home heating appliances that do not comply with Regulations 23 and 24 of the Resource Management (National Environmental Standard Relating to Certain Air Pollutants, Dioxins and Other Toxics) Regulations 2004, with clean heating appliances, and to improve housing insulation.

5.1.5 Education and advocacy

Waikato Regional Council will:

- a) use environmental education programmes to increase public awareness and to improve community understanding of:
 - i) the impacts and causes of poor air quality;
 - ii) the benefits of correct operation of solid fuel home heating appliances and the use of good quality (low moisture) wood ;
 - iii) the benefits of appropriate insulation;
 - iv) how to avoid or reduce adverse effects from outdoor open burning;

- v) the benefits of alternative modes of transport (including cycling and walking); and
 - vi) the benefits of low emission vehicles; and
- b) promote the inclusion of initiatives that minimise air emissions from land transport including in:
 - i) the Waikato Regional Land Transport Plan, and
 - ii) urban growth strategies and structure plans.

5.1.6 Quality wood supply

Waikato Regional Council will encourage wood fuel suppliers to provide good quality (low moisture) wood fuel for domestic home heating.

5.1.7 Monitor trends in wood burner installations

Waikato Regional Council will work with territorial authorities to gather information about new wood burner installations and to monitor trends in the number and type of wood burners being installed.

Explanation

Concentrations of **fine particulate matter** are high at times during winter in some **urban** areas of the region. This type of pollution is mainly caused by solid fuel burners and open fires. However, concentrations of fine particulate matter may also be high at times along busy roads. Fine particulate matter can cause serious health problems and the public health risk is greater for sensitive or vulnerable population groups such as the elderly, children, and those who have pre-existing medical conditions.

In order to avoid unacceptable risks to human health and ecosystems from air discharges and ensure that the Waikato region is compliant with the National Environmental Standards for Air Quality it is necessary to reduce the discharge of fine particulate matter, particularly in urban areas. Unacceptable risk is defined by relevant national and international standards and guidelines.

The National Environmental Standards for Air Quality recognises air sheds are the basis for defining areas of degraded air quality and the control of discharges.

A combination of regulatory and non-regulatory methods is intended to be used to achieve the necessary reduction in emissions. Method 5.1.1 provides for the establishment of a control regime through the regional plan while Methods 5.1.3 - 5.1.7 identify non-regulatory mechanisms that are expected to promote changes in behaviour and consequently a reduction in the emissions of fine particulate matter.

Policy 5.2 Manage discharges to air

Manage discharges to air (other than from home heating or transport) to ensure any resulting degradation avoids unacceptable risks to human health, and is as low as reasonably achievable. In determining whether any degradation is as low as reasonably achievable, the following will be taken into account:

The relevant objectives are:

- | | |
|------|--|
| 3.2 | Resource use and development |
| 3.8 | Ecosystem services |
| 3.10 | Sustainable and efficient use of resources |
| 3.11 | Air quality |
| 3.21 | Amenity |

- existing air quality;
- the age of and ability to upgrade existing **infrastructure**;
- any alternative modes/methods of discharge;
- applicable emission control techniques;
- the extent to which it is possible to apply the best practicable option;
- the relative effects on the environment of the options;
- economic and social factors;
- managing discharges to air where there is high or good air quality;
- national environmental standards and guidelines for ambient air; and
- the duration of the discharge and whether the discharge is temporary or short-term.

Implementation methods

5.2.1 Control discharges to air

Regional plans shall control the adverse effects of discharges to air, including from:

- open burning in urban areas;
- the mobilisation of soil or dust;
- industrial and trade premises; and
- agricultural application.

5.2.2 Determine unacceptable risk

In determining unacceptable risk to human health and ecosystems, Waikato Regional Council will have regard to:

- National Environmental Standard for Air Quality;
- World Health Organisation Air Quality Guidelines;
- National Ambient Air Quality Guidelines;
- Regional Ambient Air Quality Guidelines; and
- other nationally or internationally accepted criteria.

Explanation

Any discharge to air results in a level of degradation, therefore it is considered impractical and unreasonable to require that all degradation is avoided. This management approach allows for the continued use of the resource but expects that dischargers will demonstrate that the extent of degradation caused by their discharge is as low as reasonably achievable, and would not cause an unacceptable risk to human health or ecosystems.

Industry best practice may be useful in determining the best practicable option as required in 5.2 e).

While it is recognised that it is unreasonable to avoid all degradation of air quality, it is also not considered acceptable to allow a situation where, in areas of high or good air quality, continued degradation occurs down to the standards prescribed in the National Environmental Standards for Air Quality.

Policy 5.3 Manage adverse effects on amenity

Ensure discharges to air are managed so as to avoid, remedy or mitigate objectionable effects beyond the property boundary.

The relevant objectives are:

3.2 Resource use and development
3.3 Decision making
3.11 Air quality
3.21 Amenity

Implementation Methods

5.3.1 Control discharges

Regional plans shall control discharges to air to avoid, remedy or mitigate objectionable effects beyond the property boundary. In determining whether an objectionable effect has occurred, regard shall be had to the:

- a) frequency, intensity, offensiveness, duration and location of the incident; while
 - i) recognising the amenity usually associated with the area and land uses; and
 - ii) recognising the potential for **reverse sensitivity** effects.

5.3.2 Manage air amenity

Waikato Regional Council will work with territorial authorities to develop a joint process including:

- a) the division of responsibilities for responding to complaints about discharges to air; and
- b) for managing adverse effects on amenity resulting from discharges to air including those discharges to air that are incompatible with the surrounding land uses and character including issues of reverse sensitivity.

Explanation

The **amenity values** of air relate to how clean and fresh it is or is perceived to be. High amenity is associated with good visibility, low levels of dust and with people's ability to enjoy the environment. Amenity can be reduced when **contaminants** affect people's wellbeing, such as when dust or smoke reduces visibility or settles on surfaces, or when odour is considered objectionable.

Activities should not result in objectionable adverse effects beyond a property boundary. However in some circumstances, a lower amenity could be expected as a result of the routine activities associated with industrial or rural areas. Reverse sensitivity effects can also result from the inappropriate location of sensitive or incompatible activities, and the policies and methods in Chapter 6 seek to minimise this.

6 Built environment

Policy 6.1 Planned and co-ordinated subdivision, use and development

Subdivision, use and development of the **built environment**, including transport, occurs in a planned and co-ordinated manner which:

- a) has regard to the principles in section 6A;
- b) recognises and addresses potential cumulative effects of subdivision, use and development;
- c) is based on sufficient information to allow assessment of the potential long-term effects of subdivision, use and development; and
- d) has regard to the existing built environment.

Implementation methods

6.1.1 Regional plans, district plans and development planning mechanisms

Local authorities shall have regard to the principles in section 6A when preparing, reviewing or changing regional plans, district plans and development planning mechanisms such as structure plans, town plans and growth strategies.

The relevant objectives are:

- 3.1 *Integrated management*
- 3.2 *Resource use and development*
- 3.3 *Decision making*
- 3.4 *Health and wellbeing of the Waikato River*
- 3.5 *Energy*
- 3.6 *Adapting to climate change*
- 3.8 *Ecosystem services*
- 3.9 *Relationship of tāngata whenua with the environment*
- 3.10 *Sustainable and efficient use of resources*
- 3.11 *Air quality*
- 3.12 *Built environment*
- 3.14 *Mauri and values of fresh water bodies*
- 3.16 *Riparian areas and wetlands*
- 3.18 *Historic and cultural heritage*
- 3.19 *Ecological integrity and indigenous biodiversity*
- 3.21 *Amenity*
- 3.22 *Natural character*
- 3.23 *Public access*
- 3.24 *Natural hazards*
- 3.25 *Values of soil*
- 3.26 *High class soils*

6.1.2 Reverse sensitivity

Local authorities should have particular regard to the potential for **reverse sensitivity** when assessing resource consent applications, preparing, reviewing or changing district or regional plans and development planning mechanisms such as structure plans and growth strategies. In particular, consideration should be given to discouraging new **sensitive activities**, locating near existing and planned land uses or activities that could be subject to effects including the discharge of substances, odour, smoke, noise, light spill, or dust which could affect the health of people and / or lower the **amenity values** of the surrounding area.

6.1.3 Advocacy

Local authorities should advocate for the principles in section 6A with respect to development (including **infrastructure** development) proposals, private plan change proposals and the development of industry guidelines and manuals.

6.1.4 Development manuals and design codes

Territorial authorities should, as appropriate, ensure development manuals and design codes allow and encourage development which is consistent with the principles in section 6A.

6.1.5 District plan provisions for rural-residential development

Rural-residential development should be directed to areas identified in the district plan for rural-residential development. District plans shall ensure that rural-residential development is directed away from **natural hazard** areas, **regionally significant industry**, **high class soils**, **primary production** activities on those high class soils, electricity transmission, locations identified as likely renewable energy generation sites and from identified **significant mineral resources** (as identified through Method 6.8.1) and their identified access routes.

6.1.6 Growth strategies

In areas where significant growth is occurring or anticipated, territorial authorities should develop and maintain growth strategies which identify a spatial pattern of land use and infrastructure development and staging for at least a 30-year period. The use of integrated spatial planning tools, such as the Waikato Integrated Scenarios Explorer, should be considered to explore future development options and to integrate land use planning with infrastructure.

6.1.7 Urban development planning

Territorial authorities should ensure that before land is rezoned for **urban** development, urban development planning mechanisms such as structure plans and town plans are produced, which facilitate proactive decisions about the future location of urban development and allow the information in Implementation Method 6.1.8 to be considered.

6.1.8 Information to support new urban development and subdivision

District plan zoning for new urban development (and redevelopment where applicable), and subdivision and consent decisions for urban development, shall be supported by information which identifies, as appropriate to the scale and potential effects of development, the following:

- a) the type and location of land uses (including residential, industrial, commercial and recreational land uses, and community facilities where these can be anticipated) that will be permitted or provided for, and the density, staging and trigger requirements;
- b) the location, type, scale, funding and staging of infrastructure required to service the area;
- c) multi-modal transport links and connectivity, both within the area of new urban development, and to neighbouring areas and existing transport infrastructure; and how the safe and efficient functioning of existing and planned transport and other **regionally significant infrastructure** will be protected and enhanced;
- d) how existing values, and valued features of the area (including **amenity**, landscape, **natural character**, ecological and heritage values, **water bodies**, **high class soils** and significant view catchments) will be managed;
- e) potential natural hazards and how the related risks will be managed;
- f) potential issues arising from the storage, use, disposal and transport of **hazardous substances** in the area and any contaminated sites and describes how related risks will be managed;
- g) how stormwater will be managed having regard to a total catchment management approach and low impact design methods;
- h) any significant mineral resources (as identified through Method 6.8.1) in the area and any provisions (such as development staging) to allow their extraction where appropriate;
- i) how the relationship of **tāngata whenua** and their culture and traditions with their ancestral lands, water, sites, **wāhi tapu**, and other **taonga** has been recognised and provided for;
- j) anticipated water requirements necessary to support development and ensure the availability of volumes required, which may include identifying the available sources of water for water supply;
- k) how the design will achieve the efficient use of water;
- l) how any locations identified as likely renewable energy generation sites will be managed;
- m) the location of existing and planned renewable energy generation and consider how these areas and existing and planned urban development will be managed in relation to one another; and
- n) the location of any existing or planned electricity transmission network or national grid corridor and how development will be managed in relation to that network or

corridor, including how **sensitive activities** will be avoided in the national grid corridor.

6.1.9 Other party involvement

Where development planning mechanisms, such as structure plans and town plans, are being produced, territorial authorities, should ensure that Waikato Regional Council, neighbouring regional and territorial authorities, infrastructure providers, health authorities, tāngata whenua, industry organisations and affected land owners are provided the opportunity to have meaningful involvement in development planning.

6.1.10 Economic instruments

Territorial authorities should investigate and implement as appropriate, economic instruments which could help to direct rural-residential development to locations identified in the district plan for rural-residential development.

Explanation

To effectively address Issue 1.4 and to achieve Objective 3.12 it is very important that there is a planned and co-ordinated approach to developing the **built environment** which anticipates and addresses cumulative effects over the long term.

Section 6A includes a set of principles to guide future development of the built environment within the Waikato region. These principles are not absolutes and it is recognised that some developments will be able to support certain principles more than others. In some cases, certain principles may need to be traded off against others. It is important, however, that all principles are appropriately considered when councils are managing the built environment. The principles are supported by Methods 6.1.1, 6.1.2, 6.1.3 and 6.1.4.

Method 6.1.2 provides direction for managing reverse sensitivity. Reverse sensitivity is the vulnerability of a lawfully established activity to a new activity or land use. It arises when an established activity causes potential, actual or perceived adverse environmental effects on the new activity, to a point where action may be taken to restrict the operation or mitigate effects of the established activity.

Method 6.1.5 provides direction for managing rural-residential development. Rural-residential development in some cases has created effects such as reducing options for use of high class soils, increasing pressure on roading systems, increasing potential for natural hazards and creating tensions between existing rural land uses. In some areas, due to the extent of subdivision and the nature of the landscape, these effects are greater than in others. Demand for rural-residential development is particularly high near Hamilton, between Hamilton and Auckland, and many high amenity areas such as coastal areas, river margins and lake margins. There need to be stronger controls on rural-residential development in such areas. Where there is less demand, there are still potential effects of rural-residential development that should be managed, but a more flexible management regime may be appropriate.

Growth strategies are a recognised method to strategically plan for development, particularly in areas of high population growth (Method 6.1.6). They can be used to effectively plan for the integrated management of infrastructure with land use. At a smaller scale, methods such as structure plans and town plans are useful means of planning for urban development (Method 6.1.7).

Whether through such development planning mechanisms or through consent processes, it is important that decisions about new urban development are made on the basis of information that allows an assessment of the full effects of the development (Method 6.1.8). The information requirements will therefore vary greatly for different developments. Other methods under this policy also support a planned and comprehensive approach to development.

It is recognised that it is not appropriate to apply the same definition of 'planned' in all instances. For example, in the case of a specific subdivision proposal, it would be appropriate to apply a restricted definition incorporating only consented or designated infrastructure. However, where district plan changes, growth strategies or structure plans are being considered the term 'planned' covers infrastructure where funding has been allocated to provide for the infrastructure project and where such infrastructure is subject to consenting or designation processes.

Policy 6.2 Planning for development in the coastal environment

Development of the built environment in the **coastal environment** occurs in a way that:

- a) ensures sufficient development setbacks to protect coastal natural character, public access, **indigenous biodiversity**, natural physical processes, amenity and natural hazard mitigation functions of the coast;
- b) protects hydrological processes and natural functions of back dune areas;
- c) avoids the adverse effects of activities on areas with outstanding natural character, and outstanding natural features and landscapes;
- d) ensures that in areas other than those identified in (c) above, activities are appropriate in relation to the level of **natural character** or natural feature and landscape;
- e) has regard to local coastal character;
- f) allows for the potential effects of sea level rise, including allowing for sufficient coastal habitat inland migration opportunities;
- g) protects the valued characteristics of remaining undeveloped, or largely undeveloped coastal environments;
- h) ensures adequate water, stormwater and wastewater services will be provided for the development;
- i) avoids increasing **natural hazard risk** associated with coastal erosion and inundation;
- j) has regard to the potential effects of a tsunami event, and takes appropriate steps to avoid, remedy or mitigate that risk;
- k) avoids ribbon development along coastal margins;
- l) does not compromise the function or operation of existing or planned coastal infrastructure;
- m) provides for safe and efficient connectivity between activities occurring in the **coastal marine area** and associated land-based infrastructure;
- n) manages adverse effects to maintain or enhance water quality; and
- o) maintains and enhances public access.

The relevant objectives are:

- 3.1 Integrated management
- 3.2 Resource use and development
- 3.3 Decision making
- 3.5 Energy
- 3.6 Adapting to climate change
- 3.7 Coastal environment
- 3.8 Ecosystem services
- 3.12 Built environment
- 3.13 Maori and health of marine waters
- 3.16 Riparian areas and wetlands
- 3.19 Ecological integrity and indigenous biodiversity
- 3.21 Amenity
- 3.22 Natural character
- 3.23 Public access
- 3.24 Natural hazards
- 3.25 Values of soil

Implementation methods

6.2.1 Planning for development in the coastal environment

Local authorities shall give effect to this policy through provisions in plans, and should give effect to the policy when developing growth strategies, structure plans and other development planning mechanisms.

6.2.2 Provisions for inland migration of habitats

Waikato Regional Council will collaborate with territorial authorities to:

- a) identify valued coastal habitats that may be affected by sea level rise, and
- b) identify where development controls should be established to allow inland migration of these habitats.

6.2.3 Coastal development setback (new development)

Regional and district plans shall require that, unless there is a functional need for it to be otherwise, new development along the coast be sufficient distance from the coastal edge to allow for the following:

- a) preserving natural character values;
- b) avoiding natural hazards;
- c) protecting the values associated with marine water quality;
- d) maintaining and enhancing public access to public areas;
- e) natural ecosystem functioning; and
- f) natural functioning of physical processes, including the ability of natural features such as **wetlands**, beaches and dunes, to migrate inland, and including the projected effects of climate change.

6.2.4 Coastal development setback (existing development)

Regional plans shall identify the circumstances when it is appropriate to require existing development along the coast to be relocated, and shall include provisions for this relocation, to be sufficient distance from the coastal edge to allow for the following:

- a) preserving natural character values;
- b) avoiding natural hazards;
- c) protecting the values associated with marine water quality;
- d) maintaining and enhancing public access to public areas; and
- e) natural functioning of physical processes, including the ability of natural features such as wetlands, beaches and dunes, to migrate inland, and including the projected effects of climate change.

Explanation

The coastal environment often has a range of values such as landscape, seascape and recreational opportunities that create a particular demand for development. Development can compromise the very values that attract people. The coastal environment often has sensitive and rare indigenous ecosystems. The dynamic and often unstable nature of the coastal margins creates a range of hazards to development, and coastal erosion and flooding risks are likely to increase in future with climate change. There can be particular infrastructure demands on coastal margins to link land and sea activities. The risk of effects on coastal values can be particularly high when populations swell during holiday periods. For reasons such as these, there needs to be particular attention to managing the coastal environment as demonstrated in Policy 6.2 and its methods.

As sea level rises, some coastal margin habitats such as salt marshes will cease to exist unless they can 'migrate' inland. Method 6.2.2 recognises that this effect can be minimised by appropriate land use planning.

Methods 6.2.3 and 6.2.4 recognise that setting back development from the coastal margin is a useful approach to managing the matters listed in Policy 6.2. While there will be fewer opportunities for setbacks with respect to existing development, there will be situations, such as during redevelopment, when existing development can be moved back from the coastal margin.

Policy 6.3 Co-ordinating growth and infrastructure

Management of the built environment ensures:

- a) the nature, timing and sequencing of new development is co-ordinated with the development, funding, implementation and operation of transport and other infrastructure, in order to:
 - i) optimise the efficient and affordable provision of both the development and the infrastructure;
 - ii) maintain or enhance the operational effectiveness, viability and safety of existing and planned infrastructure;
 - iii) protect investment in existing infrastructure; and
 - iv) ensure new development does not occur until provision for appropriate infrastructure necessary to service the development is in place;
- b) the spatial pattern of land use development, as it is likely to develop over at least a 30-year period, is understood sufficiently to inform reviews of the Regional Land Transport Plan. As a minimum, this will require the development and maintenance of growth strategies where strong population growth is anticipated;
- c) the efficient and effective functioning of infrastructure, including transport corridors, is maintained, and the ability to maintain and upgrade that infrastructure is retained; and
- d) a co-ordinated and integrated approach across regional and district boundaries and between agencies; and
- e) that where new infrastructure is provided by the private sector, it does not compromise the function of existing, or the planned provision of, infrastructure provided by central, regional and local government agencies.

The relevant objectives are:

- 3.2 Resource use and development
- 3.3 Decision making
- 3.5 Energy
- 3.7 Coastal environment
- 3.10 Sustainable and efficient use of resources
- 3.12 Built environment

Implementation methods

6.3.1 Plan provisions

Regional and district plans shall include provisions that provide for a long-term strategic approach to the integration of land use and infrastructure and that give effect to Policy 6.3, including by ensuring as appropriate that:

- a) roading patterns and design support the use of public transport;
- b) walking and cycling facilities are integrated with developments;
- c) the different transport modes are well connected;
- d) industry is located where there is good access to strategic transport networks and road, rail or freight hubs;
- e) development maintains and enhances the safe, efficient and effective use of existing infrastructure and can be integrated with future infrastructure needs where these can be determined;
- f) development does not add to existing road safety risks and where possible should reduce such risks;
- g) development does not unnecessarily prevent likely future network infrastructure improvements and upgrades;
- h) development patterns support the use of rail or sea for freight movement;
- i) provisions support the travel demand management components of the Regional Land Transport Plan; and
- j) development recognises the transport hierarchy and manages effects on the function of transport infrastructure.

6.3.2 Aligning infrastructure and land use planning

Territorial authorities should, in association with Waikato Regional Council, the NZ Transport Agency and other infrastructure providers, ensure infrastructure planning and land use planning initiatives are aligned, and should co-ordinate the provision of appropriate infrastructure and services for new development prior to development occurring.

6.3.3 Urban growth outside of growth strategy areas

District plans shall ensure that in areas not subject to a growth strategy, urban **development** is predominantly directed to existing urban areas and is contiguous with, and well connected to them.

6.3.4 Planning for land use and transport

Local authorities should ensure as appropriate, that growth strategies, structure plans, regional land transport plans and development manuals and design codes are consistent with the directions in Policy 6.3.

6.3.5 Transport planning

Waikato Regional Council will promote the integrated management of land use and transport through involvement with the management of national, regional, sub-regional and district transportation policies, actions and funding.

6.3.6 Future infrastructure changes and upgrades

Waikato Regional Council will work with territorial authorities, the NZ Transport Agency, other infrastructure providers and relevant developers to ensure that development does not unnecessarily prevent likely future infrastructure changes and upgrades.

6.3.7 Working with neighbouring regions

Local authorities should work with other local authorities in neighbouring regions to ensure the management of the built environment is co-ordinated and integrated through development of regional policy statements, regional and district plans, regional land transport plans, regional land transport programmes and relevant growth strategies.

6.3.8 Integrated Transport Assessments

Territorial authorities should ensure an **Integrated Transport Assessment** is prepared to support a structure plan, plan change or resource consent application where the development may result in additional major trip-generating activities.

6.3.9 Strategic planning for infrastructure within the coastal marine area and connections with land

To ensure integrated management of infrastructure in the coastal marine area, Waikato Regional Council will collaborate with territorial authorities, the NZ Transport Agency and other relevant stakeholders to investigate:

- a) establishing a strategic framework for the provision of infrastructure, including marinas, moorings, aquaculture, energy generation and transport routes within the coastal marine area with particular consideration to the connectivity with the necessary supporting land-based infrastructure; and
- b) identifying and protecting through regional and district plans any regionally significant routes and infrastructure in the coastal marine area, and necessary linkages with land-based infrastructure.

Explanation

Policy 6.3 is to ensure co-ordination between land use and infrastructure planning and development so that development can be appropriately serviced by infrastructure in a cost-effective manner, and so that land use change does not result in unplanned

effects on the functioning of it. The way in which the term 'planned' is to be applied is explained in the explanation to Policy 6.1.

The policy and its methods aim to ensure that the future spatial land use pattern is understood sufficiently to inform future investment in transport infrastructure. To do this, growth strategies will be needed in areas of strong population growth. Where there is no growth strategy (where population growth is not so strong), urban development should be directed to existing urban areas so that there is reasonable certainty that the settlement pattern will not significantly change over the 30-year period (Method 6.3.3).

The requirement in Method 6.3.1 for a long-term strategic approach recognises that councils need to think ahead and plan proactively for future land use change and infrastructure requirements. The method also identifies transport related outcomes that will help to ensure good integration between transport and development.

A range of other methods are identified for implementing the policy. The methods recognise that there are a range of planning mechanisms that can help to integrate land use with infrastructure (Methods 6.3.4 and 6.3.8). Methods 6.3.2, 6.3.5, 6.3.6 and 6.3.7 recognise that a range of agencies across different jurisdictions need to be involved to ensure integration.

Just as structure planning is needed for intensive development on land, there is a growing need for better planning and management of infrastructure in the coastal marine area. While territorial authorities develop land-based structure plans, Waikato Regional Council is responsible for the integrated management of infrastructure in the coastal marine area as signalled in Method 6.3.9.

Policy 6.4 Marae and papakāinga

To recognise the historical, cultural and social importance of **marae** and **papakāinga** and to provide for their ongoing use and development.

The relevant objectives are:
 3.2 *Resource use and development*
 3.9 *Relationship of tāngata whenua with the environment*
 3.12 *Built environment*

Implementation methods

6.4.1 Provision for marae and papakāinga

District plans shall make appropriate provision for development of marae and papakāinga.

6.4.2 Sustainability of marae and papakāinga

Territorial authorities should support the sustainable development, restoration or enhancement of marae and papakāinga, including by taking into account the need to address the following when preparing district plans:

- a) infrastructure and utilities requirements;
- b) social services, such as **kōhanga**, **kura** and **wānanga**, **urupā** and health services;
- c) associated customary activities; and
- d) the relationship of marae and papakāinga to the wider environment, **wāhi tapu** and sites of significance to Māori, including by management of important view shafts.

Explanation

Enabling people and communities to provide for their social, economic and cultural wellbeing is part of the purpose of the Resource Management Act; and recognising and providing for the relationship of Māori and their culture and traditions with their ancestral lands, water, sites, wāhi tapu and other **taonga** is a matter of national

importance. Marae are integral to Māori culture and traditions, as are papakāinga and other associated facilities. Tāngata whenua expect demand on marae and papakāinga around the region to increase as, for example, people increasingly look to return to their roots.

Marae can also provide services to the wider, non-Māori, community, for example as meeting places or civil defence bases. They are characteristic of the Waikato region, which is a reflection of historic settlement patterns and the significance of the region to Māori. Papakāinga need not be contiguous with the marae it supports and may be located on general land title.

It is important to the wellbeing of tāngata whenua to ensure the long-term sustainability of marae. This can be achieved by ensuring marae are supported by the necessary physical, social, cultural and environmental services.

Policy 6.5 Energy demand management

Development should minimise transport, energy demand and waste production, encourage beneficial re-use of waste materials, and promote the efficient use of energy.

The relevant objectives are:

3.2	Resource use and development
3.5	Energy
3.10	Sustainable and efficient use of resources
3.12	Built environment
3.15	Allocation and use of fresh water

Implementation methods

6.5.1 District plan provisions

District plans should:

- a) encourage energy-efficient urban development, such as through promotion of energy-efficient urban form and design, energy-efficient buildings, innovative energy technologies and provision for multi-modal transport systems; and
- b) encourage the use of on-site and community-based renewable energy technologies.

6.5.2 Advocacy and education

Local authorities should advocate the directions of Policy 6.5 with respect to development proposals.

6.5.3 Development manuals and design codes

Territorial authorities should, as appropriate, ensure development manuals and design codes allow and encourage development which is consistent with Policy 6.5.

6.5.4 Managing travel demand

Waikato Regional Council will investigate a range of methods to reduce the demand for transport through its Regional Land Transport Plan.

6.5.5 Local transport strategies

Territorial authorities should consider developing local transport strategies for encouraging walking, cycling, use of public transport in urban areas and other demand management initiatives.

6.5.6 Public transport services

Waikato Regional Council will, through its Regional Public Transport Plan and Regional Land Transport Plan:

- a) investigate opportunities including through strategic planning for passenger transport corridors, to improve public transport services for established urban and rural-residential centres; and
- b) promote the benefits and uptake of public transport.

6.5.7 Waste minimisation

Waikato Regional Council will:

- a) work with territorial authorities, industry and community groups to facilitate and encourage initiatives for the minimisation and reuse of waste; and
- b) facilitate the collation and dissemination of regional waste data to support the identification of waste management priorities and trends.

Explanation

Policy 6.5 recognises that demand for energy is rising and that oil-based energy is becoming more expensive. There is likely to be an increasing need for development of new energy sources and new electricity transmission infrastructure. This will place more pressure on the resources of the region. Minimising energy demand and making more efficient use of the existing energy supplies is likely to be better for the environment and more cost effective than developing new supplies. Minimisation of waste production and re-use of waste materials is included in this policy as ways of reducing the energy used to produce goods.

The methods encourage local authorities to reduce energy demand through managing the built environment and transport systems, through sustainable waste management and through promoting efficient use of energy generally. Local authorities are also encouraged to promote local renewable energy technologies which can reduce our dependence on oil-based energy and reduce the need for new energy developments.

Policy 6.6 Significant infrastructure and energy resources

Management of the built environment ensures particular regard is given to:

- a) that the effectiveness and efficiency of existing and planned regionally significant infrastructure is protected;
- b) the benefits that can be gained from the development and use of regionally significant infrastructure and energy resources, recognising and providing for the particular benefits of **renewable electricity generation**, electricity transmission, and municipal water supply; and
- c) the locational and technical practicalities associated with renewable electricity generation and the technical and operational requirements of the electricity transmission network.

The relevant objectives are:

- 3.2 Resource use and development
- 3.3 Decision making
- 3.5 Energy
- 3.10 Sustainable and efficient use of resources
- 3.12 Built environment
- 3.14 Mauri and values of fresh water bodies
- 3.15 Allocation and use of fresh water
- 3.17 Geothermal

Implementation methods

6.6.1 Plan provisions

Regional and district plans shall include provisions that give effect to Policy 6.6, and in particular, that management of the built environment:

- a) avoids, as far as practicable, adverse effects on the function of significant transport corridors as defined in Maps 6.1 and 6.1A (section 6B), and otherwise remedies or mitigates any adverse effects that cannot be practicably be avoided;
- b) avoids, as far as practicable, the adverse effects of ribbon development along the defined significant transport corridors, and otherwise remedies or mitigates any adverse effects that cannot practicably be avoided;
- c) avoids as far as practicable, the need for additional access points onto the defined significant transport corridors, and otherwise remedies or mitigates the

- adverse effects of any additional access points that cannot practicably be avoided;
- d) avoids as far as is practicable, the exacerbation of community severance caused by defined significant transport corridors, and otherwise remedies or mitigates the adverse effects of any exacerbated community severance that cannot practicably be avoided;
 - e) provides for renewable energy by having particular regard to:
 - i) the increasing requirement for electricity generation from renewable sources such as geothermal, **fresh water**, wind, solar, biomass and marine, and the need to maintain generation from existing renewable electricity generation activities;
 - ii) the need for electricity generation to locate where energy sources exist, and transmission infrastructure to connect these generation sites to the national grid or local distribution network;
 - iii) the logistical or technical practicalities associated with developing, upgrading, operating or maintaining renewable electricity generation, or electricity transmission activities;
 - iv) any residual environmental effects of renewable electricity generation activities which cannot be avoided, remedied or mitigated can be offset or compensated to benefit the affected community or the region; and
 - v) the benefits of renewable electricity generation activities including maintaining or increasing security of electricity supply.
 - f) provides for infrastructure in a manner that:
 - i) recognises that infrastructure development can adversely affect people and communities;
 - ii) enables the ongoing operation, maintenance, upgrading and development of municipal water supply infrastructure so as to provide for the justified and reasonably foreseeable needs of current and future generations; and
 - iii) does not result in land uses that adversely affect the effective and efficient operation of existing and planned regionally significant infrastructure.
 - g) considers how existing and planned renewable electricity generation activities and existing and planned urban development will be managed in relation to one another.

6.6.2 Transmission corridor management approach

Waikato Regional Council will work with territorial authorities and energy companies and in consultation with other relevant industry organisations, to develop a transmission corridor management approach which:

- a) recognises the benefits of the national electricity grid;
- b) identifies key transmission corridors in district plans, and:
 - i) protects the corridor and electricity transmission network from inappropriate activities (including “sensitive activities”, as defined in the National Policy Statement on Electricity Transmission); and
 - ii) manages the adverse effects (including reverse sensitivity effects) of subdivision, use and development on the operation, maintenance, upgrading and development of the electricity transmission network.
- c) identifies and addresses potential effects on people and communities and **natural and physical resources** from new transmission infrastructure;
- d) seeks opportunities for alignment with other infrastructure corridors;
- e) recognises that energy companies may be affected parties with respect to land use change, including subdivision and development; and
- f) seeks to manage the effects of third parties on the safe and efficient operation of the transmission network.

6.6.3 Collaboration

Waikato Regional Council will seek to collaborate with territorial authorities, KiwiRail and the NZ Transport Agency to ensure development protects the function of significant transport corridors as defined in Maps 6.1 and 6.1A in section 6B.

6.6.4 Regional Land Transport Plan

Waikato Regional Council will ensure the Regional Land Transport Plan includes provisions to support the protection of the function of significant transport corridors including through the development of a regional transport hierarchy which gives a consistent approach to be used by territorial authorities in their district plans.

6.6.5 Measures to avoid adverse effects

Local authorities should ensure that appropriate measures are implemented to avoid adverse effects of development of the built environment on the safe, efficient and effective operation of regionally significant infrastructure. With respect to electricity transmission corridors, development of the built environment should also take into account National Policy Statements, National Environmental Standards and Transmission Corridor Guidelines as relevant to the circumstances.

6.6.6 Resilience of regionally significant infrastructure

Infrastructure providers should develop ways to maintain and improve the resilience of regionally significant infrastructure, such as through back-up systems and protection from the risk of natural hazards.

Explanation

Regionally significant infrastructure and energy resources support the wellbeing of the regional community. Much of this infrastructure and energy is also very important for New Zealand as a whole, such as energy and transport infrastructure that connects areas to the north, east and south of the Waikato Region. It is therefore very important that development of the built environment does not compromise the functioning of this infrastructure. Methods 6.6.1, 6.6.3, 6.6.4 and 6.6.5 are provided for this purpose. Policy 6.6(a) is intended to ensure the ongoing efficiency and effectiveness of regionally significant infrastructure, but does not imply that all adverse effects on that infrastructure must be avoided in all cases. If the adverse effects of a built environment proposal cannot practicably be avoided, then Methods 6.6.1(a), (b), (c) and (d) do not imply that the selected site should always be considered unsuitable as it may be possible to remedy or mitigate the adverse effects of concern. Method 6.6.6 also seeks to protect regionally significant infrastructure from natural hazards.

The way in which the term 'planned' is to be applied is explained in the explanation to Policy 6.1.

The significant transport corridors identified in Maps 6.1 and 6.1A reflect the strategic corridors identified in the operative Regional Land Transport Plan 2015-2045, which classifies them as nationally, regionally and sub-regionally significant. Significant transport corridors are equivalent to national, regional and sub-regional significant transport corridors in the Regional Land Transport Plan.

New Zealand and the region will benefit from further development of infrastructure and energy resources. Methods are provided to support such development in a way that appropriately manages potential adverse effects. Many effects of new electricity transmission, for example, could be avoided by appropriate siting of this infrastructure. This can be achieved through developing a transmission corridor management approach as described in Method 6.6.2.

There is an increasing need for renewable energy, and renewable energy developments such as hydro-electric dams can be regionally significant. The potential

for development of renewable energy resources can be reduced due to development of the built environment. The methods ensure this is recognised in district and regional plans. Decisions about the future location of some developments (such as rural-residential development) should take into account the potential for locations to be used for future renewable energy developments.

Policy 6.7 Mangatawhiri and Mangatangi municipal water supply bodies

Protect the Mangatawhiri and Mangatangi municipal water supply bodies and associated infrastructure by:

- a) ensuring that any adverse effects on municipal water supply bodies from land uses and land management activities are avoided, remedied, or mitigated;
- b) recognising the primary purpose of the Mangatawhiri and Mangatangi municipal water supply bodies is for the supply of water for municipal needs; and
- c) providing for the ongoing operation, maintenance, upgrading and development of municipal water supply infrastructure so as to provide for the justified and reasonably foreseeable needs of current and future generations.

Implementation methods

6.7.1 Regional and district plans

Regional and district plans shall include provisions that give effect to Policy 6.7, through identification of the Mangatawhiri and Mangatangi water bodies as municipal supply water bodies, and through the development of appropriate planning frameworks to:

- a) control any **point source discharge** of **contaminants** into these water bodies;
- b) manage the adverse effects of land use activities on Mangatawhiri and Mangatangi municipal water supply bodies;
- c) control changes in land use, including the intensification of existing land uses, that may adversely affect the quality of the fresh water held in the **water body**; and
- d) recognise Mangatawhiri and Mangatangi municipal water supply bodies as regionally significant infrastructure.

Policy 6.8 Access to minerals

Management of development of the built environment appropriately recognises:

- a) the potential for impacts of subdivision, use and development on access to **mineral** resources;
- b) the need for mineral resources to be available for infrastructure and building developments;
- c) the potential benefits of further development of the region's minerals and providing for the continued operation of existing lawfully established mineral extraction activities;
- d) the need to manage the adverse effects of extraction, which may include avoiding mineral extraction, or certain types of mineral extraction, in some areas;
- e) the potential for land use development that is inconsistent with nearby mineral extraction activities; and
- f) that some mineral resources are considered taonga or traditional resources by tāngata whenua.

The relevant objectives are:

- 3.2 *Resource use and development*
- 3.3 *Decision making*
- 3.5 *Energy*
- 3.9 *Relationship of tāngata whenua with the environment*
- 3.10 *Sustainable and efficient use of resources*
- 3.12 *Built environment*

Implementation methods

6.8.1 Identification of mineral resources

Waikato Regional Council will work with territorial authorities, **iwi authorities**, relevant industry and other agencies to collate the identification and mapping of the location of significant mineral resources. This mapping will be made available to territorial authorities. In determining significance, regard will be had to at least the following:

- a) relative scarcity;
- b) contribution or potential contribution to national and regional economy;
- c) current and potential demand, and location with respect to demand;
- d) constraints on extraction including existing or planned settlement;
- e) quality and size of deposit;
- f) importance of the mineral resource to tāngata whenua; and
- g) importance to infrastructure development.

Until such time as significant mineral resources are identified in accordance with Method 6.8.1 the criteria set out above shall be used to determine the significance of any mineral resource at a specific location.

6.8.2 Plan provisions

District plans and regional plans:

- a) shall include provisions to protect, as appropriate, access to significant mineral resources identified pursuant to Implementation Method 6.8.1; and
- b) may identify areas where new mineral extraction activities are appropriate and areas where new mineral extraction activities should be avoided.

6.8.3 Managing effects of development on mineral resources

Regional and district plans shall manage the reverse sensitivity effects of development on identified significant mineral resources and mineral extraction activities by discouraging new sensitive activities from locating near identified significant mineral resources and mineral extraction activities.

6.8.4 Mineral haulage

Local authorities should work with the minerals industry and the NZ Transport Agency to identify suitable routes (road, rail or sea) for mineral movement, and to determine methods to manage development which may conflict with mineral haulage.

Explanation

Access to minerals means the ability to extract, process and transport existing and potential identified significant mineral resources. Policy 6.8 recognises the value of the region's mineral resources. Development can reduce the ability to access such resources. This can occur if areas where minerals are located are built over or, in some cases, where development occurs near potential extraction sites. It will not always be possible to keep all effects of extraction to within the property boundaries. Subdivision, use and development and extraction of mineral resources should be managed to avoid potential adverse effects.

Policy 6.8 and its Implementation Methods are not intended to imply that identified mineral resources should or will be extracted, but that the ability to do so should not be hampered by development that prevents reasonable and efficient access to those mineral resources either now or in the future. The suitability or otherwise of mineral extraction will also need to be considered in relation to other relevant provisions of the Regional Policy Statement.

Large areas of the region can contain minerals such as sand, aggregate and coal. It will not be possible to protect access to all of the region's minerals. The methods seek to identify the location of significant mineral resources in the region and then to protect

access to them as appropriate through district plan mechanisms (Methods 6.8.1 and 6.8.2). Method 6.8.4 recognises that access includes the ability to transport the mineral once it is extracted.

Policy 6.9 Information collection

The relevant objectives are:
 3.3 Decision making
 3.12 Built environment

Information will be collected on development and infrastructure trends and pressures in the Waikato region, so that these trends and pressures can be responded to appropriately and in a timely manner, through management of the built environment.

Implementation methods

6.9.1 Keeping records

Local authorities should keep records that will help to track and explain development and infrastructure trends. As a minimum, territorial authorities should keep, and make available to Waikato Regional Council, records on:

- a) locations, lot numbers and lot sizes of subdivision consents granted, categorised according to district plan zones;
- b) locations of building consents granted, categorised as residential and non-residential, and categorised according to district plan zones;
- c) locations of vacant residential (including rural-residential) and industrial allotments; and
- d) major infrastructure changes and upgrades, including with respect to water supply, wastewater and local roading.

6.9.2 Reporting on development and infrastructure trends

During its five-yearly policy effectiveness reporting (Section 35 Resource Management Act), Waikato Regional Council will, in consultation with territorial authorities, infrastructure providers and tāngata whenua, report on development and infrastructure trends and pressures (including ecological footprint, urban water use, energy use, waste generation).

6.9.3 Report on the Regional Land Transport Plan

During its three-yearly monitoring of the Regional Land Transport Plan, Waikato Regional Council will report on the strategic integration of transport and land use.

Explanation

Policy 6.9 recognises the importance of collecting relevant information on development and infrastructure trends and pressures. Such information is needed to ensure early notice of trends that may require a different policy response, to help forecast infrastructure needs, to support planning for growth and development and to understand the way policies and plans are working. Territorial authorities already collect useful information about development. To maintain a regional understanding of trends and pressures, the regional council needs to collate and regularly analyse this information. The methods ensure such information is collected and reported on in a way that helps to inform management of the built environment and the regional integration of land use and infrastructure.

Policy 6.10 Implementing the Coromandel Peninsula Blueprint

Growth in the Thames-Coromandel District should be managed in a way that:

- a) recognises that the Coromandel Peninsula Blueprint Framework for our Future (2009) provides for the management of future development in the Thames-Coromandel District. This should:
 - i) ensure that development:
 - ii) is in keeping with the landscape, indigenous biodiversity, natural character and heritage values of the Coromandel Peninsula;
 - iii) supports the efficient and effective use of infrastructure; and
 - iv) does not increase the risk from natural hazards; concentrated development through intensification and consolidation in these centres; and
 - v) focus future urban development (beyond the existing zoning and infrastructure provision) on the three identified main centres of Thames, Whitianga and Whangamata; and encourage
- b) recognises that future development including appropriately scaled development for other settlements/villages which is not provided for in the Coromandel Peninsula Blueprint, will be planned for and managed through a district plan review or plan change process.

The relevant objectives are:

- 3.1 Integrated management
- 3.2 Resource use and development
- 3.3 Decision making
- 3.6 Adapting to climate change
- 3.7 Coastal environment
- 3.12 Built environment
- 3.18 Historic and cultural heritage
- 3.19 Ecological integrity and indigenous biodiversity
- 3.21 Amenity
- 3.22 Natural character
- 3.24 Natural hazards

Implementation methods

6.10.1 District plan provisions

Thames-Coromandel District Council should

- a) include provisions in the Thames-Coromandel District Plan that give effect to Policy 6.10; and
- b) consider the inclusion of provisions in the Thames-Coromandel District Plan that provide for appropriately scaled development for settlements to cater for future growth and demand.

6.10.2 Spatial planning maps of district plan and regional plans

Thames-Coromandel District Council and Waikato Regional Council should provide spatial planning maps in their district plan and regional plans that give effect to Policy 6.10.

Explanation

The Coromandel Peninsula Blueprint Framework for our Future (Blueprint) is an important strategy for managing growth and development in the Thames-Coromandel District. It supports many of the objectives of the Regional Policy Statement. Key elements are referred to in the policy to provide a more robust legal framework for its implementation. Method 6.10.1 recognises that the Thames-Coromandel District Plan is the primary instrument for managing the effects of activities and planning for growth within the Thames-Coromandel district. The District Plan is also the primary instrument for implementing the Coromandel Peninsula Blueprint. In order to provide for future demand, alternative settlement patterns may need to be assessed and tested with the community. The Schedule 1 process of the RMA will be used. The District Plan or plan change process will enable further community consultation on the implementation of future settlement patterns. The Thames-Coromandel District Plan will then provide direction for the preparation and processing of resource consent applications.

Policy 6.11 Implementing Taupo District 2050

Growth in the Taupo District will be managed in a way that:

- a) recognises that Taupo District 2050 provides for the management of future growth, including by:
 - i) recognising the appropriateness of the urban growth areas as an important resource for providing for new urban land development and as the focus for future urban growth;
 - ii) ensuring patterns of future urban development are consistent with the strategic directions of Taupo District 2050, the identified urban growth areas, and any subsequently adopted structure plans;
 - iii) avoiding urban development in the rural environment outside of the identified urban growth areas to prevent a dispersed pattern of settlement and the resulting inefficiencies in managing resources;
 - iv) avoiding the cumulative effect that subdivision and consequent fragmented land ownership can have on the role of the urban growth areas in providing the supply of land for urban development;
 - v) ensuring that staging of development in the urban growth areas is efficient, consistent with and supported by adequate infrastructure; and
- b) ensures that urban development of an identified urban growth area occurs by way of a Taupo District 2050 structure plan process and associated plan change process.
- c) acknowledges that changes to the Taupo District Plan intended to implement Taupo District 2050 must be considered on their merits under the RMA.

The relevant objectives are:

- 3.1 *Integrated management*
- 3.2 *Resource use and development*
- 3.3 *Decision making*
- 3.10 *Sustainable and efficient use of resources*
- 3.12 *Built environment*

Implementation methods

6.11.1 District plan provisions

Taupo District Council shall seek to include provisions in the Taupo District Plan that give effect to Taupo District 2050.

6.11.2 Structure planning

Taupo District Council should develop structure plans to implement the Taupo District 2050 identified urban growth areas.

6.11.3 Co-ordinated approach

Waikato Regional Council will look for opportunities to align its own activities, including the provision of works and services, regulation, education programmes and environmental initiatives, with Taupo District 2050.

Explanation

Taupo District 2050 is an important strategy for managing the built environment in the Taupo District. It supports many of the objectives of the Regional Policy Statement. Policy 6.11 indicates support for the strategic directions set out in Taupo District 2050 while acknowledging that changes to the Taupo District Plan which seek to implement it are subject to their own RMA considerations. The supporting methods ensure that the Taupo District Plan, structure plans and Waikato Regional Council's own activities within Taupo District are aligned with the strategy.

Policy 6.12 Implementing Franklin District Growth Strategy

The relevant objectives are:
 3.1 Integrated management
 3.2 Resource use and development
 3.3 Decision making
 3.12 Built environment

The Franklin District Growth Strategy (2007) provides for the management of growth in the part of the Waikato and Hauraki Districts that was the former Franklin District. Growth should be managed in accordance with this Strategy. In particular:

- a) management of the built environment should be in accordance with the general visions and development directions described for the relevant towns and rural character areas in Sections 7 and 8, and Map 1.0 of the Franklin District Growth Strategy; and
- b) new industrial development should predominantly be located in the strategic industrial nodes in Table 6-3.

The Franklin District Growth Strategy applies until the Future Proof Growth Strategy and relevant district plans are amended.

Implementation methods

6.12.1 Managing growth

Waikato District Council and Hauraki District Council should ensure that growth in the part of their respective districts that was the Franklin District is managed in accordance with Policy 6.12.

6.12.2 Industrial land development

Within the former Franklin District area that is now part of Waikato District, new industrial development should predominantly be located in the strategic industrial nodes in Table 6-3.

6.12.3 Future growth strategy

Waikato Regional Council, Hamilton City Council, Waipa District Council and Waikato District Council should, in association with Future Proof, **iwi** representatives and the New Zealand Transport Agency, as soon as practicable and using a community and industry organisation consultation process, expand the Future Proof Growth Strategy to include the part of Waikato District that was the Franklin District.

Explanation

The Franklin District Growth Strategy was developed by the Franklin District Council in response to growth pressures in the district and provides guidance for managing growth. The Strategy represents a considerable investment for the community and is a well-considered and planned approach to growth that would support many of the development principles in this Regional Policy Statement. It is therefore important that the Strategy continues to guide development until it is replaced by a subsequent growth strategy.

Policy 6.13 Governance collaboration in the Future Proof area

The relevant objectives are:
 3.1 Integrated management
 3.2 Resource use and development
 3.3 Decision making
 3.12 Built environment

Waikato Regional Council, Hamilton City Council, Waipa District Council and Waikato District Council will work collaboratively with respect to growth management in the **Future Proof area**.

Implementation methods

6.13.1 Resourcing implementation

Waikato Regional Council, Hamilton City Council, Waipa District Council and Waikato District Council should ensure governance structures are in place, and adequate resources provided, to facilitate the implementation of the actions in the Future Proof Growth Strategy (2009).

6.13.2 Consultation

Consultation should occur between Waikato Regional Council, Hamilton City Council, Waipa District Council, Waikato District Council, tāngata whenua, the NZ Transport Agency and other infrastructure providers, with respect to initiatives that could affect the interests of these parties.

6.13.3 Implementation protocols

Waikato Regional Council, Hamilton City Council, Waipa District Council, Waikato District Council and tāngata whenua should agree to protocols which document how the Future Proof Growth Strategy (2009) is to be implemented.

Explanation

Policy 6.13 recognises that there needs to be a continued collaborative effort by the Future Proof partners (partner councils and tāngata whenua) in order to implement the Future Proof Strategy. The Strategy lists a range of implementation actions. These need to be supported by appropriate resources such as staff and financial allocations, and appropriate structures such as governance arrangements.

Method 6.13.1 is to ensure these matters are provided for. Method 6.13.2 anticipates that the partner councils may become involved in specific growth management matters which could affect the interests of one or more of the partners. In this case, consultation with the partners would seek to ensure partner interests are taken into account. Method 6.13.3 recognises that from time to time agreements between the partners may be appropriate to ensure growth management is consistent with the intentions of the Future Proof strategy.

Policy 6.14 Adopting Future Proof land use pattern

The relevant objectives are:
 3.2 Resource use and development
 3.3 Decision making
 3.12 Built environment

Within the Future Proof area:

- a) new urban development within Hamilton City, Cambridge, Te Awamutu/Kihikihi, Pirongia, Huntly, Ngaruawahia, Raglan, Te Kauwhata, Meremere, Taupiri, Horotiu, Matangi, Gordonton, Rukuhia, Te Kowhai and Whatawhata shall occur within the Urban Limits indicated on Map 6.2 (section 6C);
- b) new residential (including rural-residential) development shall be managed in accordance with the timing and population for growth areas in Table 6-1 (section 6D);
- c) new industrial development should predominantly be located in the strategic industrial nodes in Table 6-2 (section 6D) and in accordance with the indicative timings in that table except where alternative land release and timing is demonstrated to meet the criteria in Method 6.14.3;
- d) other industrial development should only occur within the Urban Limits indicated on Map 6.2 (section 6C), unless there is a need for the industry to locate in the rural area in close proximity to the primary product source. Industrial development in urban areas other than the strategic industrial nodes in Table 6-2 (section 6D) shall be provided for as appropriate in district plans;
- e) new industrial development outside the strategic industrial nodes or outside the allocation limits set out in Table 6-2 shall not be of a scale or location where the development undermines the role of any strategic industrial node as set out in Table 6-2;
- f) new industrial development outside the strategic industrial nodes must avoid, remedy or mitigate adverse effects on the arterial function of the road network, and on other infrastructure;
- g) where alternative industrial and residential land release patterns are promoted through district plan and structure plan processes, justification shall be provided to demonstrate consistency with the principles of the Future Proof land use pattern; and
- h) where land is required for activities that require direct access to Hamilton Airport runways and where these activities cannot be accommodated within the industrial land allocation in Table 6-2, such activities may be provided for within other land adjacent to the runways, providing adverse effects on the arterial road network and other infrastructure are avoided, remedied or mitigated.

Implementation methods

6.14.1 District plan provisions

Hamilton City Council, Waipa District Council and Waikato District Council shall, in consultation with Waikato Regional Council, tāngata whenua and the NZ Transport Agency, review or prepare changes to their district plans and structure plans to identify locations and limits for future urban development, including future areas of major commercial and industrial development. The district plans shall ensure that urban development is located and managed in accordance with Policy 6.14.

6.14.2 Land release

Hamilton City Council, Waipa District Council and Waikato District Council shall ensure land is zoned and appropriately serviced in accordance with Policy 6.14, Tables 6-1, 6-2 and 6-3 in section 6D.

In relation to Table 6-1, where it is impractical to develop a particular **greenfield** area or part of a greenfield area, the equivalent population allocation in Table 6-1 may be

transferred to another greenfield area within urban limits, where it is demonstrated that the criteria in Method 6.14.3 can be met.

In relation to Table 6-2, the land area allocated in a particular stage for a Strategic Industrial Node may be increased by bringing forward a future allocation from a later stage in that node where it is demonstrated that the criteria in Method 6.14.3 can be met. The total allocation for any one node, across all stages, may also be increased where it is demonstrated that the criteria in Method 6.14.3 can be met.

6.14.3 Criteria for alternative land release

District plans and structure plans can only consider an alternative residential or industrial land release, or an alternative timing of that land release, than that indicated in Tables 6-1 and 6-2 in section 6D provided that:

- a) to do so will maintain or enhance the safe and efficient function of existing or planned infrastructure when compared to the release provided for within Tables 6-1 and 6-2;
- b) the total allocation identified in Table 6-2 for any one strategic industrial node should generally not be exceeded or an alternative timing of industrial land release allowed, unless justified through robust and comprehensive evidence (including but not limited to, planning, economic and infrastructural/servicing evidence);
- c) sufficient zoned land within the greenfield area or industrial node is available or could be made available in a timely and affordable manner; and making the land available will maintain the benefits of regionally significant committed infrastructure investments made to support other greenfield areas or industrial nodes; and
- d) the effects of the change are consistent with the development principles set out in Section 6A.

Explanation

Policy 6.14 limits urban development to the land use pattern and sequencing that has been established through the Future Proof process. New urban development can occur in centres that do not have urban limits (areas not listed in Policy 6.14a)), as long as it is consistent with Tables 6-1 and 6-2. Parts c) to h), along with Table 6-2, provide clear guidance on where industrial development should occur in the Future Proof area. This is very important to ensure integrated planning of industrial land use and infrastructure. Future industrial development should focus on the support and protection of identified industrial nodes.

Method 6.14.1 recognises that although the Strategy has determined a settlement pattern for the Future Proof area, the detail of urban limit lines and future commercial and industrial development locations down to property level need to be determined through district plan processes. The method also recognises that district plan provisions, such as rules, need to ensure development is managed in accordance with Policy 6.14.

Method 6.14.2 recognises that to achieve the Future Proof land use pattern, sufficient land needs to be zoned for development and that appropriate provisions need to be made for servicing this development.

Method 6.14.3 provides for some flexibility in the staged release of residential and industrial land while ensuring that the relevant growth management principles established in the Future Proof growth strategy are not compromised. The method provides an opportunity for district plans and structure plans to refine Table 6-2. The importance of Table 6-2 to the efficient integration of land use and infrastructure in the Future Proof sub-region is such that alternative land release is only expected to occur where comprehensive and robust evidence has been provided to satisfy the criteria in Method 6.14.3.

Map 6.2 provides an overview of urban limits in order to guide implementation of the settlement pattern at a district level. It is expected that district level planning mechanisms such as structure planning and district plan zoning will establish the urban limits at a property scale.

Policy 6.15 Density targets for Future Proof area

Hamilton City Council, Waipa District Council and Waikato District Council shall seek to achieve compact urban environments that support existing commercial centres, multi-modal transport options, and allow people to live, work and play within their local area. In doing so, development provisions shall seek to achieve over time the following average gross density targets:

The relevant objectives are:

- 3.2 Resource use and development
- 3.3 Decision making
- 3.10 Sustainable efficient use of resources
- 3.12 Built environment

Development type and location	Average gross density target
Hamilton Central Business District	50 households per hectare
Hamilton Intensification Areas	30 households per hectare
Hamilton Greenfield (Rototuna, Rotokauri, Ruakura Peacocke)	16 households per hectare
Greenfield development in Cambridge, Te Awamutu/Kihikihi, Huntly, Ngaruawahia, Raglan/Whaingaroa and Te Kauwhata	12 – 15 households per hectare
Greenfield development in Waikato District rural villages where sewerage is reticulated	8 – 10 households per hectare

Implementation methods

6.15.1 District plan provisions and other mechanisms

Hamilton City Council, Waipa District Council and Waikato District Council shall include provisions in their district plans and other mechanisms that seek to implement Policy 6.15.

6.15.2 Advocacy

Waikato Regional Council, Hamilton City Council, Waipa District Council and Waikato District Council should advocate for the matters in Policy 6.15 with respect to development proposals in the Future Proof area.

6.15.3 Hamilton infill target

Hamilton City Council should aim for at least 50 per cent of growth to be through infill and intensification of existing urban areas.

Explanation

Policy 6.15 seeks to ensure that over time, urban development will become more compact through the promotion of development density targets. This is to improve viability of public transport, walking and cycling, thereby reducing energy demand and reducing the need for future transport infrastructure development. Other benefits of this approach include reducing transport impacts on air quality, reducing carbon emissions, improving efficient use of water infrastructure, reducing urban sprawl onto high quality farm land and reducing other adverse effects of urban development, such as reverse sensitivity impacts on existing land uses and limitations on access to mineral resources. The methods are to ensure this policy is implemented through provisions in district plans and through advocacy with respect to development proposals.

Policy 6.16 Commercial development in the Future Proof area

Management of the built environment in the **Future Proof area** shall provide for varying levels of **commercial development** to meet the wider

community's social and economic needs, primarily through the encouragement and consolidation of such activities in existing commercial centres, and predominantly in those centres identified in Table 6-4 (section 6D). Commercial development is to be managed to:

The relevant objectives are:

- 3.2 Resource use and development
- 3.3 Decision making
- 3.10 Sustainable efficient use of resources
- 3.12 Built environment

- a) support and sustain the vitality and viability of existing commercial centres identified in Table 6-4 (section 6D);
- b) support and sustain existing physical resources, and ensure the continuing ability to make efficient use of, and undertake long-term planning and management for the transport network, and other public and private infrastructure resources including community facilities;
- c) recognise, maintain and enhance the Hamilton Central Business District as the primary commercial, civic and social centre of the Future Proof area, by:
 - i) encouraging the greatest diversity, scale and intensity of activities in the Hamilton Central Business District;
 - ii) managing development within areas outside the Central Business District to avoid adverse effects on the function, vitality or amenity of the Central Business District beyond those effects ordinarily associated with trade competition on trade competitors; and
 - iii) encouraging and supporting the enhancement of amenity values, particularly in areas where pedestrian activity is concentrated.
- d) recognise that in addition to retail activity, the Hamilton Central Business District and town centres outside Hamilton are also centres of administration, office and civic activity. These activities will not occur to any significant extent in Hamilton outside the Central Business District in order to maintain and enhance the Hamilton Central Business District as the primary commercial, civic and social centre;
- e) recognise, maintain and enhance the function of sub-regional commercial centres by:
 - i) maintaining and enhancing their role as centres primarily for retail activity; and
 - ii) recognising that the sub-regional centres have limited non-retail economic and social activities;
- f) maintain industrially zoned land for industrial activities unless it is ancillary to those industrial activities, while also recognising that specific types of commercial development may be appropriately located in industrially zoned land; and
- g) ensure new commercial centres are only developed where they are consistent with a) to f) of this policy. New centres will avoid adverse effects, both individually and cumulatively on:
 - i) the distribution, function and infrastructure associated with those centres identified in Table 6-4 (section 6D);
 - ii) people and communities who rely on those centres identified in Table 6-4 (section 6D) for their social and economic wellbeing, and require ease of access to such centres by a variety of transport modes;
 - iii) the efficiency, safety and function of the transportation network; and
 - iv) the extent and character of industrial land and associated physical resources, including through the avoidance of reverse sensitivity effects.

Implementation methods

6.16.1 District plan provisions

Hamilton City Council, Waipa District Council and Waikato District Council district plans shall manage new commercial development in accordance with Policy 6.16.

6.16.2 Advocacy

Waikato Regional Council, Hamilton City Council, Waipa District Council and Waikato District Council should advocate for the directions in Policy 6.16 with respect to development proposals in the Future Proof area.

Explanation

The Future Proof growth strategy contains a number of principles that are relevant in terms of future commercial development, such as:

- support for existing commercial centres,
- encouragement of development to support existing infrastructure, and
- ensuring thriving town centres where people can “live, work, play and visit”.

Policy 6.16 supports these principles and assists with ensuring integrated planning of commercial land use and infrastructure for the sub-region. It is important that commercial development does not occur in locations where it will have unacceptable impacts on transport systems, on the functioning of existing commercial centres, and on areas specifically provided for industrial development. The policy supports the location of commercial development where it will be needed to service anticipated future population growth. The methods are to ensure the directions of Policy 6.16 are supported through district plans and advocacy.

Table 6.4 describes a commercial hierarchy for the Future Proof area. It identifies key centres where future commercial development is to be focused. The Hamilton Central Business District, sub-regional centres and town centres generally provide a focus for community activity and social interaction, enabling convenient access to a range of goods and services by a variety of transport modes. The city centre and towns are also centres of administration, office and civic activity and it is intended that they will remain so rather than having those activities dispersed. Accordingly, these activities will not occur to any significant extent in the sub-regional centres as these centres are to remain predominantly as retail centres.

Policy 6.16 requires the region's district and city councils to determine an appropriate range, location and scale of commercial development within their district in order to maintain and enhance the vitality and viability of relevant centres including the role of the Hamilton Central Business District as the primary commercial, civic and social centre of the Future Proof area. In doing so, councils will need to consider the potential for new development to result in adverse effects on the function, vitality and amenity of the Hamilton Central Business District.

Policy 6.17 Rural-residential development in Future Proof area

The relevant objectives are:

- 3.2 Resource use and development
- 3.3 Decision making
- 3.12 Built environment

Management of rural-residential development in the Future Proof area will recognise the particular pressure from, and address the adverse effects of, rural-residential development in parts of the sub-region, and particularly in areas within easy commuting distance of Hamilton and:

- a) the potential adverse effects (including cumulative effects) from the high demand for rural-residential development;

- b) the high potential for conflicts between rural-residential development and existing and planned infrastructure and land use activities;
- c) the additional demand for servicing and infrastructure created by rural-residential development;
- d) the potential for cross-territorial boundary effects with respect to rural-residential development; and
- e) has regard to the principles in section 6A.

Implementation methods

6.17.1 District plan provisions and growth strategies

Waipa District Council and Waikato District Council shall include provisions in district plans and growth strategies to give effect to Policy 6.17. This will include strictly limiting rural-residential development in the vicinity of Hamilton City.

6.17.2 Rural-residential development around Hamilton

Waipa District Council and Waikato District Council shall work with Hamilton City Council, and in association with Waikato Regional Council, tāngata whenua, the NZ Transport Agency and other infrastructure providers, to develop agreements about the nature of rural-residential development in the vicinity of Hamilton City, and ways to prevent adverse impacts on infrastructure that services Hamilton City and future city development.

6.17.3 Directing development to rural-residential zones

Waipa District Council and Waikato District Council should investigate, and shall consider adopting through district plans, provisions such as transferable development rights which will allow development to be directed to rural-residential zones identified in district plans.

Explanation

Policy 6.17 establishes a policy framework for managing development in the Waikato region, including the Future Proof area. Policy 6.17 recognises that there are particular pressures for rural-residential development in parts of the Future Proof area, particularly near Hamilton City. Methods 6.17.1 and 6.17.3 recognise that these pressures need to be managed through district plan provisions. Method 6.17.2 recognises that an individual agency's decisions about rural-residential development and infrastructure can impact on the interests of other agencies, and that a collaborative approach is needed to minimise conflicts. Not managing rural-residential development would undermine the objectives of Future Proof.

Policy 6.18 Monitoring development in Future Proof area

<i>The relevant objectives are:</i>	
3.3	<i>Decision making</i>
3.12	<i>Built environment</i>

Information will be collected on development and infrastructure trends and pressures in the Future Proof area, so that these trends and pressures can be responded to appropriately and in a timely manner, to support further reviews of the Future Proof Growth Strategy and to assess the need for changes to Policy 6.14.

Implementation methods

6.18.1 Reporting

Waikato Regional Council, Hamilton City Council, Waipa District Council and Waikato District Council should, in association with tāngata whenua and the NZ Transport Agency, prepare a report at least at five-yearly intervals, which:

- a) summarises monitoring results in accordance with Policy 6.9;

- b) assesses development (residential, industrial, commercial) pressures and trends, including population, household and business growth rates and property market behaviour, both within and external to the Future Proof area;
- c) reviews the densities of new development in relation to the targets in Policy 6.15;
- d) summarises transport trends including with respect to private transport, public transport, walking and cycling, and freight movement;
- e) assesses settlement patterns, pressures and trends; and
- f) makes recommendations with respect to Policy 6.19.

Explanation

Policy 6.9 establishes the need to collect and report information on development trends and pressures, which also applies to the Future Proof area. Policy 6.18 and Method 6.18.1 state further information requirements for the Future Proof area that are needed to help inform future revisions of the Future Proof Strategy and to provide information to support Policy 6.19.

Policy 6.19 Review of Future Proof map and tables

The relevant objectives are:

- 3.2 Resource use and development
- 3.3 Decision making
- 3.12 Built environment

Waikato Regional Council will consider the need to review Policy 6.14, including the extent, location and release of land for development as identified in the map and tables in section 6C and 6D, in consultation with Hamilton City Council, Waipa District Council and Waikato District Council, tāngata whenua and the NZ Transport Agency, if any of the following situations occur:

- a) the reporting required by Policy 6.18 and Method 6.18.1 recommends that a review is needed;
- b) household and population growth varies by more than 10% over 5 consecutive years from the household and population predictions in the Future Proof Growth Strategy;
- c) the Future Proof partners agree that insufficient land exists within the Urban Limits shown in Map 6.2 to cater for the growth anticipated within 10 years of the analysis; or
- d) the Future Proof partners agree that exceptional circumstances have arisen such that a review is necessary to achieve Objective 3.12 in the Future Proof area.

Implementation methods

6.19.1 Review of provisions

Waikato Regional Council, in conjunction with Hamilton City Council, Waipa District Council and Waikato District Council, and in consultation with tāngata whenua and the NZ Transport Agency, will assess the need for a review of Policy 6.14 at a minimum of five-yearly intervals.

Explanation

The map and tables in section 6C and 6D are based on certain assumptions about likely future development trends and requirements in the Future Proof area. Policy 6.19 and its method recognise that conditions could change such that the matters in Policy 6.14 need to be reviewed in order to ensure ongoing management of development in the Future Proof area remains appropriate.

6A Development principles

General development principles

New development should:

- a) support existing urban areas in preference to creating new ones;
- b) occur in a manner that provides clear delineation between urban areas and rural areas;
- c) make use of opportunities for urban intensification and redevelopment to minimise the need for urban development in greenfield areas;
- d) not compromise the safe, efficient and effective operation and use of existing and planned infrastructure, including transport infrastructure, and should allow for future infrastructure needs, including maintenance and upgrading, where these can be anticipated;
- e) connect well with existing and planned development and infrastructure;
- f) identify water requirements necessary to support development and ensure the availability of the volumes required;
- g) be planned and designed to achieve the efficient use of water;
- h) be directed away from identified significant mineral resources and their access routes, natural hazard areas, energy and transmission corridors, locations identified as likely renewable energy generation sites and their associated energy resources, **regionally significant industry**, high class soils, and primary production activities on those high class soils;
- i) promote compact urban form, design and location to:
 - i) minimise energy and carbon use;
 - ii) minimise the need for private motor vehicle use;
 - iii) maximise opportunities to support and take advantage of public transport in particular by encouraging employment activities in locations that are or can in the future be served efficiently by public transport;
 - iv) encourage walking, cycling and multi-modal transport connections; and
 - v) maximise opportunities for people to live, work and play within their local area;
- j) maintain or enhance landscape values and provide for the protection of historic and cultural heritage;
- k) promote positive indigenous biodiversity outcomes and protect significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitats of indigenous fauna. Development which can enhance ecological integrity, such as by improving the maintenance, enhancement or development of ecological corridors, should be encouraged;
- l) maintain and enhance public access to and along the coastal marine area, lakes, and rivers;
- m) avoid as far as practicable adverse effects on natural hydrological characteristics and processes (including aquifer recharge and flooding patterns), soil stability, water quality and aquatic ecosystems including through methods such as low impact urban design and development (LIUDD);
- n) adopt sustainable design technologies, such as the incorporation of energy-efficient (including passive solar) design, low-energy street lighting, rain gardens, renewable energy technologies, rainwater harvesting and grey water recycling techniques where appropriate;
- o) not result in incompatible adjacent land uses (including those that may result in reverse sensitivity effects), such as industry, rural activities and existing or planned infrastructure;
- p) be appropriate with respect to projected effects of climate change and be designed to allow adaptation to these changes;

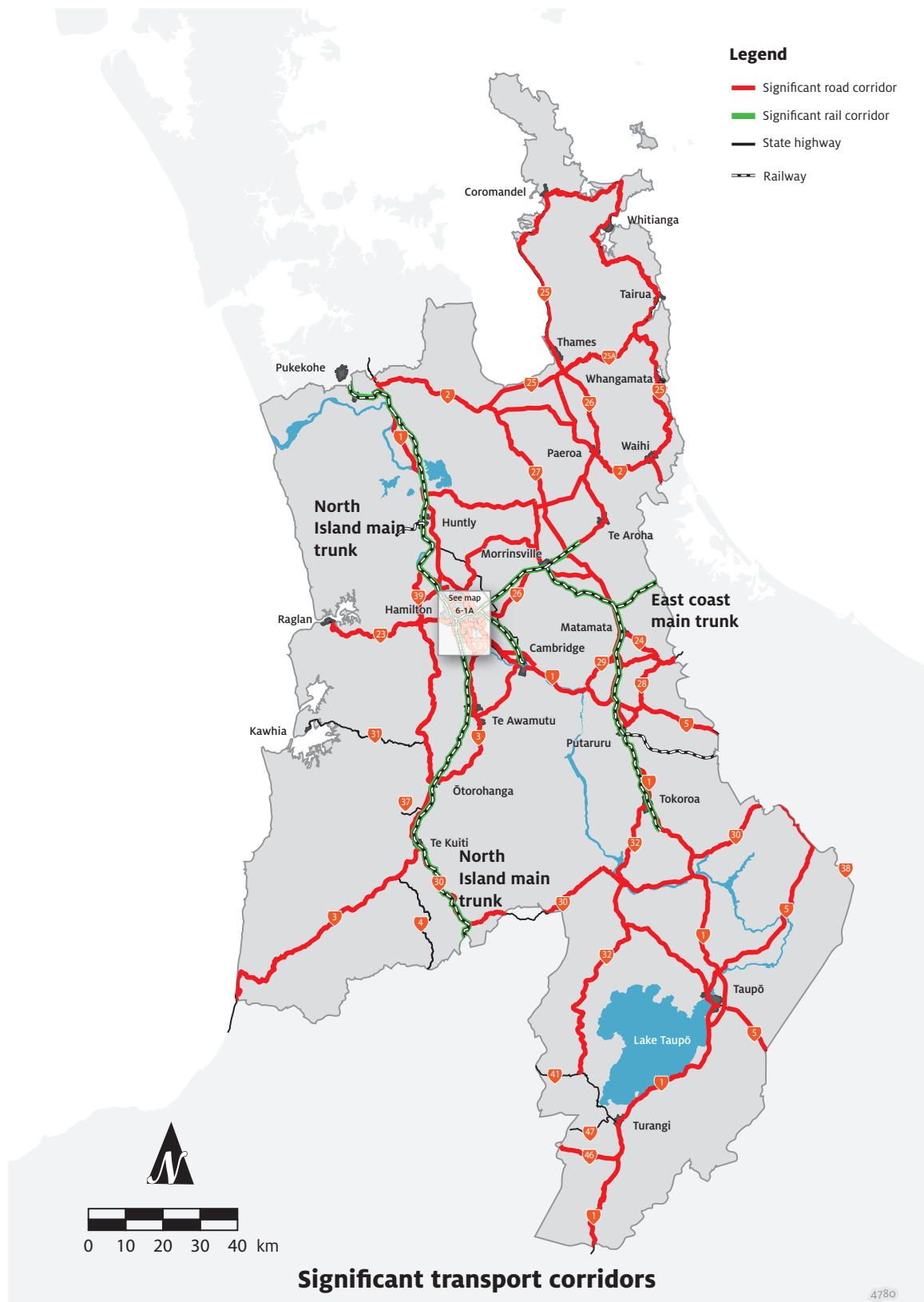
- q) consider effects on the unique tāngata whenua relationships, values, aspirations, roles and responsibilities with respect to an area. Where appropriate, opportunities to visually recognise tāngata whenua connections within an area should be considered;
- r) support the Vision and Strategy for the Waikato River in the Waikato River catchment;
- s) encourage waste minimisation and efficient use of resources (such as through resource-efficient design and construction methods); and
- t) recognise and maintain or enhance ecosystem services.

Principles specific to rural-residential development

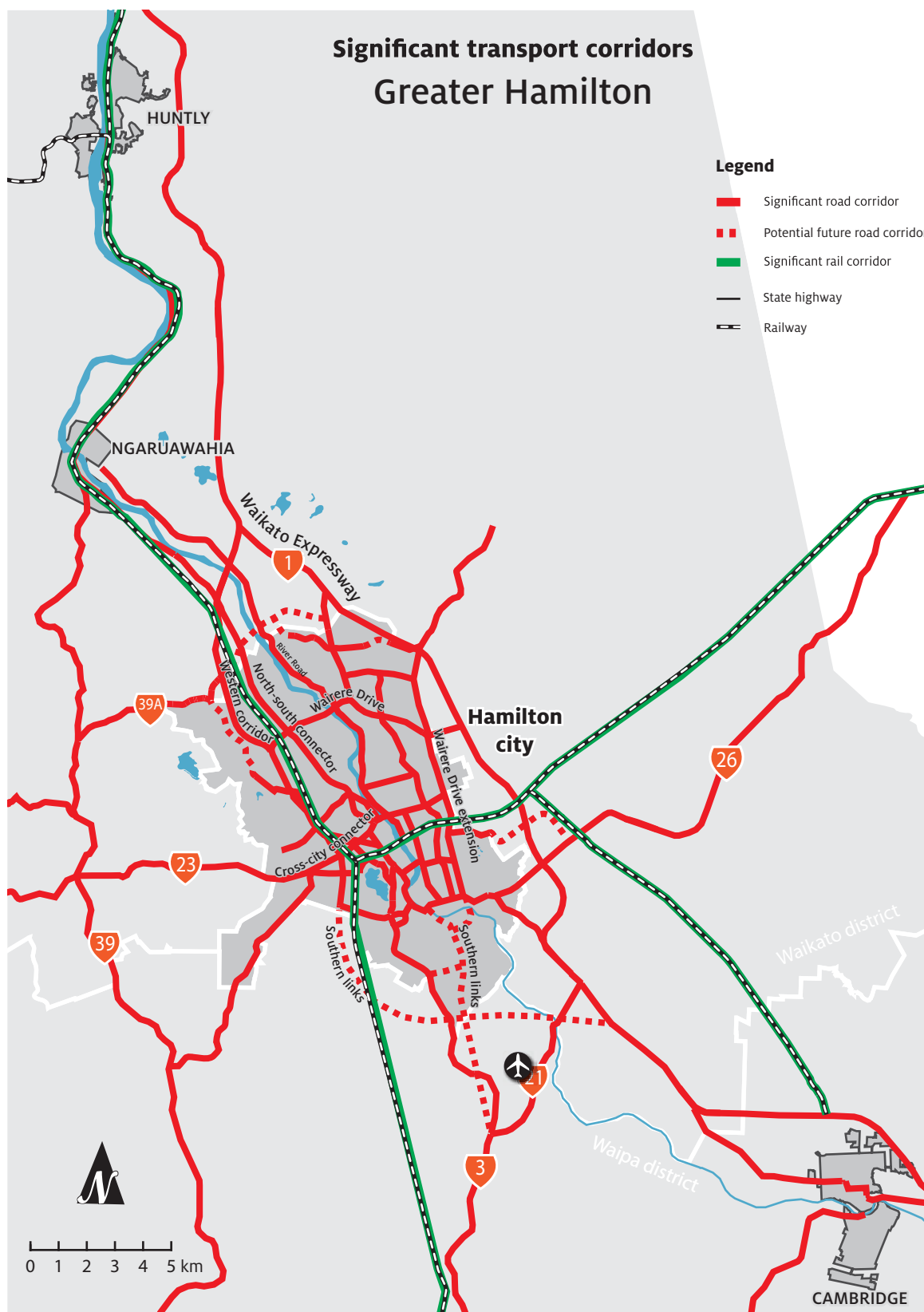
As well as being subject to the general development principles, new rural-residential development should:

- a) be more strongly controlled where demand is high;
- b) not conflict with foreseeable long-term needs for expansion of existing urban centres;
- c) avoid open landscapes largely free of urban and rural-residential development;
- d) avoid ribbon development and, where practicable, the need for additional access points and upgrades, along significant transport corridors and other arterial routes;
- e) recognise the advantages of reducing fuel consumption by locating near employment centres or near current or likely future public transport routes;
- f) minimise visual effects and effects on rural character such as through locating development within appropriate topography and through landscaping;
- g) be capable of being serviced by onsite water and wastewater services unless services are to be reticulated; and
- h) be recognised as a potential method for protecting sensitive areas such as small water bodies, gully-systems and areas of indigenous biodiversity.

6B Significant transport infrastructure maps

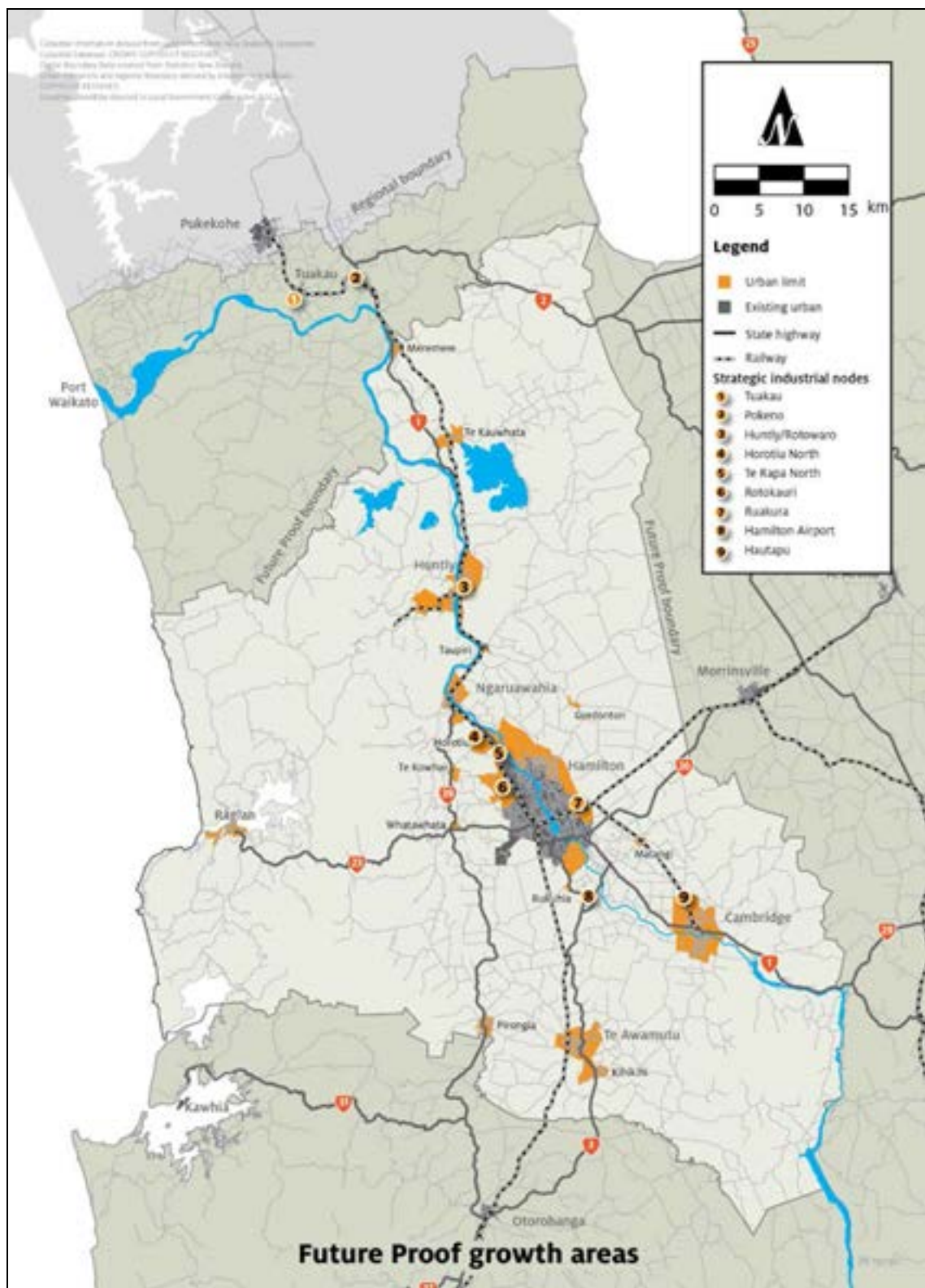


Map 6-1: Significant transport corridors



Map 6-1A: Significant transport corridors (Greater Hamilton)

6C Future Proof map (indicative only)



Map 6-2: Future Proof indicative urban limits

6D Future Proof tables

Table 6-1: Future Proof residential growth allocation and staging 2006-2061

Growth areas	Residential population ¹			
	2006	2021	2041	2061
Hamilton existing urban	119400	136400	161100	187900
Hamilton Greenfield (Rototuna, Rotokauri, Ruakura and Peacockes)	15000	37000	60000	60000
Future Hamilton Greenfield			3000	29700
Hamilton City Total	134400	173400	224100	277600
Cambridge	13225	17500	23200	25145
Te Awamutu / Kihikihi	12625	15900	20100	21565
Huntly	6915	8940	10925	12275
Ngaruawahia	5120	8340	12375	15875
Raglan and Whaingaroa	3220	4340	5025	5200
Te Kauwhata	1020	3430	5825	7675
Waipa Rural Villages	2350	3300	4290	5330
Waikato Rural Villages	6725	9050	12400	15775
Waipa Rural	15500	18800	19410	21460
Waikato Rural	22400	24800	27350	29800
Future Proof sub-regional total	223500	287800	365000	437700
Sub-regional split by settlement type				
City	134400	173400	224100	277600
Towns	42125	58450	77450	87735
Rural Villages	9075	12350	16690	21105
Rural	37900	43600	46760	51260
Sub-regional split – proportion of total population				
City	60%	61%	61%	63%
Towns	19%	20%	21%	20%
Rural Villages	4%	4%	5%	5%
Rural	17%	15%	13%	12%

¹ The above population figures in any given location do not take account of growth associated with marae and papakāinga development. Consequently, actual population figures may exceed the above figures in some areas.

Table 6-2: Future Proof industrial land allocation

Strategic Industrial Nodes located in Central Future Proof area (based on gross developable area) ¹	Industrial land allocation and staging (ha)			Total Allocation
				2010 to 2061 (ha)
	2010 to 2021	2021 to 2041	2041 to 2061	
Rotokauri	85	90	90	265
Ruakura	80	115 ²	210 ²	405
Te Rapa North	14	46	25	85
Horotiu	56	84	10	150
Hamilton Airport	74	50	0	124
Huntly and Rotowaro	8	8	7	23
Hautapu	20	30	46	96
TOTAL HA	337	423	388	1148

¹ Gross Developable Area includes land for building footprint, parking, landscaping, open space, bulk and location requirements and land for infrastructure including roads, stormwater and wastewater facilities.

²Development beyond the 2021 period is subject to completion of the Waikato Expressway.

Explanation

At the time of hearing submissions on the Proposed Waikato Regional Policy Statement, there was approximately 879ha of zoned industrial land that was vacant within the central Future Proof area. The strategic nodes identified in Table 6-2 include a mixture of existing zoned land and land identified as future industrial land, subject to district planning processes.

The land identified in Table 6-2 for the Rotokauri, Horotiu, Huntly and Rotowaro industrial nodes are the vacant gross developable land areas remaining within the zoning of the Proposed Hamilton District Plan (Rotokauri Structure Plan), and Operative Waikato District Plan (Horotiu Industrial Park, Huntly Industrial Zone).

Horotiu

The staging and timing of land associated with Horotiu is consistent with the rules contained within the Operative Waikato District Plan (2011).

Hamilton Airport

The land identified in Table 6-2 for the Airport Node is the land zoned for industrial and mixed industrial/business development in the Proposed Waipa District Plan.

The node is currently affected by infrastructure constraints, particularly in the surrounding transport network. The Southern Links project will address some of the transport capacity issues but is currently a long term solution. Infrastructure solutions which are consistent with, and work towards a long term infrastructure pattern will be required to enable development in advance of the construction of Southern Links.

Te Rapa North

The Te Rapa North Industrial Node includes land that was transferred into the Hamilton City Council boundary in July 2011. Together with the continued operation of the Te Rapa Dairy Factory and its associated infrastructure the Node provides the opportunity to enable the development of a cluster of dairy related industrial activities of at least regional significance. The land allocations for the post 2021 and 2041 period provide the opportunity to reinforce the significance and benefits of these activities by providing additional land to enable their expansion around the Te Rapa Dairy Factory.

Depending upon the rate of uptake, it is possible that the release of the later stages of land might need to occur earlier.

Ruakura

The Ruakura Industrial Node is part of an 820ha parcel of land that has been identified by Hamilton City for future urban growth, known as the R1 growth cell.

The 405ha identified in Table 6-2 comprises the Ruakura inland port and logistics zone (approximately 195ha) and general industrial land (approximately 210ha) to be advanced through a district plan structure planning process and subsequent Resource Management Act First Schedule process. The staging and timing identified in Table 6-2 provides for Stage 1 of the inland port and logistics zone, and up to 30 hectares of general industrial development to 2021. The Ruakura Structure plan is linked to the development of the Hamilton section of the Waikato Expressway. Further development after 2021, beyond the initial 80ha identified for the 2010-2021 period, should not occur until the Hamilton section of the Waikato Expressway is completed and connected to the Ruakura land in a manner that does not undermine the efficient functioning and safety of the transport network, or another infrastructure solution has been demonstrated to satisfy the relevant criteria for alternative land release in Method 6.14.3.

Hautapu

The land identified for the Hautapu Industrial Node is the land specified in the Waipa 2050 Growth Strategy (2009).

Table 6-3: Industrial land allocation in the North Waikato

Strategic Industrial Nodes located in the North Waikato (based on gross developable area) ¹	Industrial land allocation and staging (ha)			Total Allocation 2010 to 2061 (ha)
	2010 to 2021	2021 to 2041	2041 to 2061	
Tuakau	116	0	0	116
Pokeno	92	0	0	92
TOTAL HA	208	0	0	208

¹gross Developable Area includes land for building footprint, parking, landscaping, open space, bulk and location requirements and land for infrastructure including roads, stormwater and wastewater facilities.

Explanation

The land identified in Table 6-3 for the Tuakau and Pokeno Strategic Industrial Nodes represents the zoned and vacant industrial land provided for within the Waikato District Plan at each location.

Table 6-4: Future Proof hierarchy of major commercial centres

Functional type	Location	Function description
Regional and City centre	Hamilton Central Business District	The primary centre in the region for commercial, civic and social activity.
Primary sub-regional centres	Te Rapa North Commercial Centre*	A significant integrated retail centre in the region, with relatively limited provision of non-retail economic and social activity.
Secondary sub-regional centre	Chartwell	An integrated retail centre in the sub-region, with limited provision of non-retail economic and social activity.
Town centres	Cambridge Te Awamutu Huntly Ngaruawahia Raglan Te Kauwhata	Retail, administration, office and civic centres providing most commercial and servicing needs, together with non-retail economic and social activity, to their urban and rural hinterland.

*being the centre focused on and incorporating The Base shopping centre and generally comprising the block bordered by Te Rapa Road, Avalon Drive, Te Kowhai Road East and the Railway.

After 1 November 2010, Waikato District expanded to include other commercial areas from Franklin District including Tuakau and Pokeno. These have not been included in Table 6.4 as it only relates to commercial areas within the Future Proof area, which exclude the former Franklin District.

7 Coastal marine area

Policy 7.1 Interests in the coastal marine area

The **coastal marine area** is recognised as generally being public space and its efficient use is ensured by allocating space to activities in a way that:

- a) recognises the Crown's interest in the coastal marine area;
- b) recognises conflicting uses;
- c) provides for **protected customary rights**; and
- d) provides for ecosystem values as well as people's social, economic and cultural aspirations.

Implementation methods

7.1.1 Allocation of space within the coastal marine area

The regional coastal plan shall establish criteria to determine the appropriateness of different activities within the coastal marine area and where necessary identify areas that are appropriate for different purposes or activities including areas to be protected from development. Particular regard will be had to:

- a) opportunities for recreational access across a range of experiences;
- b) opportunities for electricity generation from renewable sources;
- c) opportunities for the development of aquaculture;
- d) the functional necessity for activities to locate in the coastal marine area;
- e) avoiding the effects of **natural hazards**;
- f) the public benefits of the use of natural resources and from any development in public space;
- g) changes projected as a result of climate change;
- h) avoiding sprawling and sporadic development;
- i) economic, cultural and social uses of the coastal marine area; and
- j) linking activities taking place in the marine area to land-based **infrastructure** necessary for its support; and
- k) avoiding adverse effects, including cumulative effects on:
 - i) areas of significance to **tāngata whenua**;
 - ii) open space and **amenity values**;
 - iii) public access;
 - iv) existing/future marine transport corridors;
 - v) marine water quality;
 - vi) **indigenous biodiversity** values;
 - vii) **natural character** and landscape values; and
 - viii) physical coastal processes (hydrodynamic and sediment dynamics).

The relevant objectives are:

- 3.1 *Integrated management*
- 3.2 *Resource use and development*
- 3.3 *Decision making*
- 3.5 *Energy*
- 3.6 *Adapting to climate change*
- 3.7 *Coastal environment*
- 3.8 *Ecosystem services*
- 3.9 *Relationship of tāngata whenua with the environment*
- 3.10 *Sustainable and efficient use of resources*
- 3.12 *Built environment*
- 3.13 *Mauri and health of marine waters*
- 3.18 *Historic and cultural heritage*
- 3.19 *Ecological integrity and indigenous biodiversity*
- 3.20 *Outstanding natural features and landscapes*
- 3.21 *Amenity*
- 3.22 *Natural character*
- 3.23 *Public access*
- 3.24 *Natural hazards*

7.1.2 Crown's interest in the coastal marine area

The regional coastal plan shall include provisions that ensure that regard is had to any available alternative and to the applicant's reasons for making the proposed application

when making decisions on any applications for coastal permits in relation to the **common marine and coastal area** for:

- a) reclamations;
- b) the removal of sand, shingle, shell or other natural materials for commercial purposes; and
- c) the rights to occupy such land.

7.1.3 Occupation charging in the coastal marine area

In changing the regional coastal plan, or preparing a proposed regional coastal plan, Waikato Regional Council shall consider whether or not a charging regime for occupation within the common marine and coastal area should be included.

7.1.4 Aquaculture strategy

Waikato Regional Council will develop an aquaculture strategy in consultation with relevant stakeholders to recognise the existing and future contribution of aquaculture to the region. This will form part of the wider Coastal Marine Strategy in Method 7.1.5.

7.1.5 Coastal marine strategy

Waikato Regional Council will develop a coastal marine strategy for the coastal marine area. The purpose of the strategy is to optimise the opportunities provided by **ecosystem services** for regional economic, social, cultural and environmental wellbeing and help direct appropriate infrastructure needs and growth opportunities.

The marine strategy will:

- a) build on existing information;
- b) be developed in collaboration with territorial authorities, tāngata whenua, industry, and other key stakeholders;
- c) identify areas using techniques such as spatial plans for economic use, including aquaculture, infrastructure (including environmental), biodiversity protection and amenity;
- d) identify marine pressures resulting from marine or land-based activities;
- e) identify key economic and environmental opportunities and steps to assist those opportunities;
- f) identify mechanisms and actions for implementation of the coastal marine strategy; and
- g) inform changes to regional plans including the Regional Coastal Plan.

Explanation

Policy 7.1 recognises that the coastal marine area is largely public space but supports a wide range of public and private uses that may result in conflict. Methods 7.1.1 and 7.1.2 provide a framework for making decisions on how and where activities may establish or be carried out. This will allow all interests, values, uses, and costs and benefits from development of the coastal marine area to be taken into account when determining appropriate and inappropriate locations for and types of activities. Adverse effects to be considered include those on specific uses of the coastal marine area, as well as effects on enjoyment that people derive from the landscape and effects on values to tāngata whenua, for example on lines of sight to sites of significance. The framework also allows the management of this area to achieve other policies, for example identification of marine habitats as significant natural areas.

Method 7.1.3 makes it clear that Waikato Regional Council intends to consider a charging regime for occupation of space within the coastal marine area.

The marine area is experiencing increasing use and competing interests for the same resource. The underpinning ecosystem services that provide for successful long-term use of the marine resource are also under increasing pressure. Methods 7.1.4 and

7.1.5 signal the desire to see strategic and holistic management of the region's coastal marine area.

Policy 7.2 Marine water quality

Discharges to marine waters shall be managed to maintain or enhance the **mauri** and health of marine water and to protect ecosystem, amenity, and tāngata whenua values.

Implementation methods

7.2.1 Marine water types

Regional plans shall:

- a) identify types of marine waters based on their capacity to assimilate discharges, including areas of degraded water quality, and establish water quality standards for each type;
- b) include provisions for each of the marine water types to ensure water quality is maintained at or above standards where it is high, or is improved to meet the minimum standards where it is degraded, with demonstrable progress by 2030;
- c) ensure that after **reasonable mixing**, manmade discharges to the coastal marine area do not result in breaches of the water quality standards or loss of local values; and
- d) require the smallest area for mixing necessary to achieve the required water quality whilst minimising adverse effects on the life supporting capacity of water within the mixing area.

The relevant objectives are:

- | | |
|------|--|
| 3.1 | <i>Integrated management</i> |
| 3.2 | <i>Resource use and development</i> |
| 3.3 | <i>Decision making</i> |
| 3.7 | <i>Coastal environment</i> |
| 3.8 | <i>Ecosystem services</i> |
| 3.9 | <i>Relationship of tāngata whenua with the environment</i> |
| 3.13 | <i>Mauri and health of marine waters</i> |
| 3.19 | <i>Ecological integrity and indigenous biodiversity</i> |
| 3.21 | <i>Amenity</i> |
| 3.22 | <i>Natural character</i> |

7.2.2 Activities affecting water quality

Regional plans shall:

- a) control riparian activities including tracking and earthworks, removal of riparian vegetation and access to the coastal marine area by **stock**;
- b) control activities in or near the coastal marine area to ensure that harmful aquatic organisms with the potential to adversely affect the **coastal environment** are not released or spread;
- c) consider alternative land-based opportunities for discharges;
- d) control activities so as not to result in a significant increase in sedimentation; and
- e) manage discharges to avoid significant adverse effects on ecosystems and habitats.

7.2.3 Promotion of initiatives to improve water quality

Local authorities should promote and support initiatives to improve marine water quality (including diffuse discharges and discharges of stormwater and wastewater) such that adverse effects on marine water quality are lessened. These could include:

- a) information dissemination and education;
- b) protection or enhancement of existing, or creation, re-creation or restoration of new appropriately vegetated riparian and **wetland** areas;
- c) creation of esplanade reserves and/or strips, or similar, where this would have a positive effect on marine water quality; and
- d) development and implementation of best practice guidelines and industry standards.

7.2.4 Information gathering

Waikato Regional Council will establish a programme of information gathering to:

- a) set baselines for marine water quality;

- b) determine the causes of marine water quality degradation; and
- c) assess the limits of marine waters for assimilating discharges.

Explanation

The coastal marine area is valued for its ecosystems and biodiversity and for a range of uses including recreation and commercial opportunities. Water quality is high in some areas but in others the quality reflects that the sea is also a receiving environment for sediment and contaminants from both diffuse and point source discharges. Policy 7.2 recognises that water quality needs to be managed if the values are to be protected. Our scientific knowledge of the capacity of marine waters to assimilate discharges is limited. For this reason careful management is promoted through Methods 7.2.1 and 7.2.2, and information gathering is addressed through Method 7.2.4.

Management of water quality requires information on current quality and the setting of standards against which effects of discharges can be assessed and trends in quality monitored. Method 7.2.1 indicates that Waikato Regional Council will identify water types which recognise the different physical characteristics of different areas, for example open coastal waters versus enclosed harbours, and use standards appropriate to each type in order to maintain values. The process of establishing standards will be in conjunction with that of establishing standards for fresh water bodies, recognising that rivers and streams flowing into the coastal marine area are the main source of contaminants and sediment. Method 7.2.2 ensures that regional plans will manage the effects of activities in or near the coastal marine area that have the potential to affect water quality in marine waters.

Although management of water quality is a regional council function, Method 7.2.3 signals an expectation that territorial authorities should consider marine water quality when managing land use activities that ultimately have the potential to affect the receiving environment.

8 Fresh water bodies

Policy 8.1 Approach to identifying fresh water body values and managing fresh water bodies

Waikato Regional Council will facilitate a process that will involve regional communities, to identify values and establish subsequent **fresh water** objectives, limits and targets for fresh water bodies. The value setting process will:

- a) provide for variability in **catchment** management response;
- b) assist in ensuring that adverse effects of activities on the identified values of water bodies are managed in an integrated manner;
- c) determine any outstanding fresh water bodies and significant values of **wetlands**; and
- d) recognise that where a freshwater body is currently used for the purposes of **renewable electricity generation** or domestic or municipal supply, those uses are recognised as being values associated with that **water body**.

The relevant objectives are:

- 3.1 *Integrated management*
- 3.2 *Resource use and development*
- 3.3 *Decision making*
- 3.4 *Health and wellbeing of the Waikato River*
- 3.5 *Energy*
- 3.8 *Ecosystem services*
- 3.9 *Relationship of tāngata whenua with the environment*
- 3.10 *Sustainable and efficient use of resources*
- 3.13 *Mauri and health of marine waters*
- 3.14 *Mauri and values of fresh water bodies*
- 3.15 *Allocation and use of fresh water*
- 3.16 *Riparian areas and wetlands*
- 3.19 *Ecological integrity and indigenous biodiversity*
- 3.21 *Amenity*
- 3.22 *Natural character*
- 3.23 *Public access*

Implementation methods

8.1.1 Integrated catchment management of water resources

Regional plans shall adopt a catchment-based approach to ensure the integrated management of water resources, including the management of:

- a) the allocation and use of water;
- b) flow regimes;
- c) quantity and quality of groundwater;
- d) quantity and quality of surface water;
- e) quality of marine waters; and
- f) land and water interactions, including the impacts of land use activities.

8.1.2 Identify fresh water body values

Waikato Regional Council will facilitate a process that involves **tāngata whenua**, stakeholders, industry organisations and regional communities to identify values for freshwater bodies, including economic, environmental, social and cultural values.

8.1.3 Recognise values, and establish fresh water objectives, limits and targets

Regional plans shall:

- a) recognise identified values and establish fresh water objectives based on the identified values;
- b) establish limits and targets based on the identified values and freshwater objectives, including for minimum and allocable flows, lake levels, wetland levels, and **contaminant** discharges; and

- c) in relation to the Waikato River catchment, incorporate in their entirety the values, objectives, limits and targets identified in the Vision and Strategy for the Waikato River.

8.1.4 Matters to be considered when identifying values

Waikato Regional Council will ensure that the following matters are considered as part of the value setting process for fresh water bodies:

- a) the values identified in the Vision and Strategy for the Waikato River catchment;
- b) the Objectives of the Regional Policy Statement, with particular regard given to Objectives 3.14 and 3.15;
- c) **natural character** and natural function, including flow regime variability;
- d) the hydraulic gradient and physical form of water bodies that support hydro electricity generation values;
- e) health and functioning of **indigenous biodiversity**, ecosystems and habitats;
- f) human relationships with fresh water including:
 - i) the cultural and traditional relationship of tāngata whenua with fresh water;
 - ii) the availability of water, and the suitability of the **fresh water body**, for the purposes of meeting existing and reasonably justified and foreseeable future **domestic or municipal supply** requirements;
 - iii) harvesting of aquatic food species and **mahinga kai** that is safe to eat;
 - iv) recreation values including swimming; and
 - v) the use of water for food production;
- g) the life supporting capacity of fresh water bodies;
- h) the ability of people and communities to provide for their social, economic and cultural wellbeing and for their health and safety;
- i) adverse cumulative effects of land use activities on fresh water bodies;
- j) the existence and purpose of modified or artificial water bodies, including those in section 8A;
- k) existence of lawfully established **infrastructure**, including dams;
- l) that effect will be given to the provisions of national policy statements;
- m) the need for local authorities to meet their general responsibilities under other relevant legislation; and
- n) lawfully consented discharges and takes.

8.1.5 Manage adverse effects to meet identified limits and targets

Waikato Regional Council will manage the adverse effects of activities to meet the limits and targets identified for those fresh water bodies.

8.1.6 Tāngata whenua involvement

Waikato Regional Council will work with tāngata whenua to develop systems and processes to:

- a) adequately involve tāngata whenua in the management and decision making regarding fresh water bodies and associated ecosystems;
- b) identify values and interests in fresh water bodies and associated ecosystems; and
- c) develop monitoring programmes, including **mātauranga Māori**, to monitor the achievement of identified values of fresh water bodies.

8.1.7 Stakeholder involvement

Waikato Regional Council will take a collaborative approach to investigating and implementing future fresh water body management approaches. This will include:

- a) providing for the early and meaningful involvement of stakeholders;

- b) involving stakeholders in the process of identifying catchment based values and establishing freshwater objectives, limits and targets;
- c) involving stakeholders in the process of identifying costs and benefits of any proposed regulatory management options which may include assessment of the impacts of the scale and rate of change required to achieve potential limits and subsequent targets; and
- d) working with stakeholders for the development and delivery of non-regulatory policy options including primary industry initiatives, third party audited self management and education programmes.

8.1.8 Information gathering

To assist in decision making for the future management of fresh water bodies Waikato Regional Council will:

- a) investigate, monitor and review information to assess the effects of sedimentation, nutrients and other contaminants on water quality, aquatic life and ecosystems including in estuarine environments and slow-flushing shallow coastal water such as the Firth of Thames;
- b) investigate and collate information about activities and land use practices that will make a positive difference to fresh water body values;
- c) regularly review land use trends within catchments with high value water bodies;
- d) investigate and collate information about the current and potential risks and threats to water bodies including those posed by cumulative adverse effects or significant land use changes; and
- e) undertake research to support management of water bodies, including but not limited to, determining **minimum flows, allocable flows, sustainable yields**, actual water use, water flow rates and the effects of reduced flows/levels, especially in relation to areas of high use/demand.

Explanation

Policy 8.1 sets out the overall approach for managing fresh water bodies. The approach centres on identifying the current and desired values and freshwater objectives of all water bodies in the region. The values and freshwater objectives attributed to water bodies are to be identified through a community based process. Once values and freshwater objectives are determined the management of fresh water bodies will focus on the establishment of limits and targets. There may be differences across the region in fresh water body limits and targets, depending on the particular uses and relationships humans have with fresh water, or from natural variation in vegetation, soil type or topography.

The regional plan will set numerical and narrative water quality and quantity limits and targets for each fresh water body. It is possible that limits and targets will differ in some areas, and that all principles or criteria to guide decision making will be needed in order to resolve tradeoffs in establishing limits and targets related to the range of ecological and human relationship and use values. The regional plan will then manage the adverse effects on the fresh water bodies to achieve the identified limits and targets.

The management of fresh water bodies is most effectively undertaken at a catchment or sub-catchment level. This approach recognises the inter-connected nature of ground and surface water and land use, and is considered a more effective approach of managing the cumulative effects of activities and discharges on fresh water body values.

Method 8.1.4 identifies matters to be considered when undertaking the value setting process. The matters identified provide a starting point to be considered further through the value setting process. It is important that ultimately the values attributed to a water body will be determined through a community based process, however that process must recognise the need to give effect to national policy statements and the need for

local authorities to meet their general responsibilities under other relevant legislation. The list of matters in 8.1.4 is not intended to be exhaustive, and other matters may be relevant to the value identification process.

When determining the values of those water bodies that have been expressly modified by dams built for municipal supply or hydro electricity generation, the purposes for which they were created need to be carefully assessed and provided for. Other values that may be determined in association with those water bodies will need to be cognisant of the purpose of these dams.

The management of fresh water bodies attracts the interest and involvement of many sectors of the community. Method 8.1.6 recognises the special relationship that tāngata whenua have with water resources and identifies the particular ways in which council intends to involve tāngata whenua in managing the resource. Method 8.1.7 states that for the management of fresh water bodies and their catchments, Waikato Regional Council will take a collaborative approach, specifically involving key sectors of the community and those likely to be most affected by changes in the management of the resource.

Method 8.1.8 identifies specific investigations that would provide important information for the future management of fresh water bodies.

Policy 8.2 Outstanding fresh water bodies and significant values of wetlands

Ensure that the outstanding values of a fresh water body that result in that water body being identified as an outstanding fresh water body, and the significant values of wetlands, are protected and where appropriate enhanced.

Implementation methods

8.2.1 Identify outstanding fresh water bodies and the significant values of wetlands

Waikato Regional Council, through a values setting process, shall identify outstanding fresh water bodies and significant values of wetlands. The process to inform the identification of outstanding freshwater bodies and the significant values of wetlands will include consideration of the values of those fresh water bodies and wetlands that are in section 8B and the uses and associated values of those freshwater bodies that are in section 8A.

The relevant objectives are:

- 3.1 *Integrated management*
- 3.2 *Resource use and development*
- 3.3 *Decision making*
- 3.4 *Health and wellbeing of the Waikato River*
- 3.8 *Ecosystem services*
- 3.9 *Relationship of tāngata whenua with the environment*
- 3.14 *Mauri and values of fresh water bodies*
- 3.15 *Allocation and use of fresh water*
- 3.16 *Riparian areas and wetlands*
- 3.19 *Ecological integrity and indigenous biodiversity*
- 3.21 *Amenity*
- 3.22 *Natural character*
- 3.23 *Public access*

8.2.2 Managing outstanding fresh water bodies and the significant values of wetlands

Regional plans shall provide for:

- a) the protection, and where appropriate enhancement, of the values of outstanding fresh water bodies and the significant values of wetlands and, except as provided for in paragraph (ad), priority shall be given to the values which resulted in the water body being identified as outstanding or significant values of wetlands;
- b) the achievement of limits and targets established under Method 8.1.3
- c) the management of the effects on these water bodies and wetlands from:
 - i) direct discharges to these fresh water bodies;
 - ii) takes and uses of water;

- iii) the damming and diversion of water (including off-line dams and/or the diversion of flood waters);
 - iv) changes in land use (including intensification of existing land uses) within the catchment of the fresh water body; and
 - v) existing land use where this may compromise the values of the fresh water bodies;
- d) the management of fresh water bodies listed in section 8A for the purpose for which they were modified, including the ongoing operation and maintenance of associated infrastructure.

Explanation

Policy 8.2 recognises that some fresh water bodies can have values that contribute to the water body being identified as outstanding, and in the case of wetlands can have values that are determined as being significant. The policy intent is to protect the outstanding water bodies and the significant values of wetlands from being degraded and to provide for future enhancement of these valued water bodies and wetlands.

Method 8.2.1 directs the Waikato Regional Council to undertake a process to identify outstanding fresh water bodies and the significant values of wetlands. The determination of whether a water body is outstanding will, include consideration of the values of those water bodies stated in section 8B and 8A and is likely to include other fresh water bodies, such as natural state water bodies and water bodies valued for their water quality, naturalness and flow regimes. In defining outstanding water bodies it will be important to take into consideration previous commitments to the community such as regional plan protection of water quality in Lake Taupō. The determination of outstanding freshwater bodies will be based on an assessment of the values derived from water use and also from values associated with the life-supporting capacity of water and associated ecosystems.

The previous Waikato Regional Policy Statement was made operative in 2000 and provided an objective of net improvement of water quality across the region and the protection of the quality of outstanding fresh water bodies. Where robust data exists, this will be used to benchmark the state of those fresh water bodies identified as outstanding.

Provision is made in Method 8.2.2, that once outstanding water bodies and significant values of wetlands have been determined, regional plans will manage the effects of activities to ensure that the values of outstanding fresh water bodies and significant values of wetlands are protected or enhanced.

However, where the water bodies identified in section 8A (including water bodies that have been expressly formed by dams built for municipal supply or hydro-electricity generation) are identified as outstanding freshwater bodies, the protection and enhancement of the values which resulted in the water body being identified as outstanding will not be prioritised over the ongoing use of those freshwater bodies for municipal supply or hydroelectricity generation purposes in the event of conflict, but will be considered in the management of those water bodies. Nothing in Method 8.2.2 is to be interpreted as creating any inconsistency with the Vision and Strategy and in particular, the objective to restore and protect the health and wellbeing of the Waikato River.

Policy 8.3 All fresh water bodies

Manage the effects of activities to maintain or enhance the identified values of fresh water bodies and coastal water including by:

- a) reducing:
 - i) sediment in fresh water bodies and coastal water (including bank instability) that is derived from human based activities;
 - ii) accelerated sedimentation of estuaries;
 - iii) microbial and nutrient contamination;
 - iv) other identified contaminants; and
- b) Where appropriate, protection and enhancement of:
 - i) **riparian** and **wetland** habitat;
 - ii) instream habitat diversity;
 - iii) indigenous biodiversity; and
- c) providing for migratory patterns of indigenous freshwater species up and down rivers and streams and to the **coastal marine area** where practicable; and
- d) avoiding:
 - i) physical modification of fresh water bodies where practicable; and
 - ii) inappropriate development in flood plains; and
- e) managing:
 - i) groundwater and surface water flow/level regimes, including flow regime variability;
 - ii) linkages between groundwater and surface water; and
 - iii) pest and weed species where they contribute to fresh water body and coastal water degradation.

The relevant objectives are:

- 3.1 Integrated management
- 3.2 Resource use and development
- 3.3 Decision making
- 3.4 Health and wellbeing of the Waikato River
- 3.5 Energy
- 3.8 Ecosystem services
- 3.9 Relationship of *tāngata whenua* with the environment
- 3.13 *Mauri* and health of marine waters
- 3.14 *Mauri* and values of fresh water bodies
- 3.15 Allocation and use of fresh water
- 3.16 Riparian areas and wetlands
- 3.19 Ecological integrity and indigenous biodiversity
- 3.21 Amenity
- 3.22 Natural character
- 3.23 Public access

Implementation methods

8.3.1 Point source discharges

Regional plans shall control **point source discharges** of **contaminants** into fresh water bodies and coastal water, or onto or into land where the contaminant may reach water, in a way that:

- a) seeks to achieve the fresh water objectives, and meets the limits and targets for the water body;
- b) considers relating the activity status of any rules to the quality and values of the receiving fresh water body and coastal water;
- c) provides for land-based mitigation of the effects of contaminants prior to their discharge to fresh water bodies and coastal water;
- d) provides for mitigation or offsetting of adverse effects where effects cannot be avoided or remedied; and
- e) does not reduce the allocation potential of the fresh water body for water takes.

8.3.2 Activities in riparian areas

Regional plans shall manage the adverse effects of activities in riparian areas, including tracking and earthworks, removal of riparian vegetation and access to the beds and banks of fresh water bodies by vehicles and **stock** to ensure:

- a) reduced sedimentation of fresh water bodies (including bank instability) and estuaries that is derived from human based activities;

- b) reduced microbial contamination of fresh water bodies; and
- c) that water body objectives are achieved, including by meeting the limits and targets in regional plans.

8.3.3 Non-point source discharges

Waikato Regional Council will manage the adverse effects of land use and activities on fresh water bodies and coastal water from **non-point source discharges** of nutrients and other contaminants where such discharges result in, or are likely to result in, the loss of values of a water body in a way that:

- a) achieves the fresh water objectives, and meets the limits and, targets for the fresh water body and coastal water;
- b) works with industry and other stakeholders to ensure appropriate information on good practice land use is available;
- c) controls the adverse effects of increases in land use intensity that involve the discharge of contaminants (including nutrients) to fresh water bodies and coastal water;
- d) introduces controls on contaminant discharges; and
- e) provides for mitigation or offsetting of adverse effects only where effects cannot be avoided or remedied.

8.3.4 Establish allocation baselines

Regional plans shall establish:

- a) minimum and allocable flows in rivers; and
- b) sustainable yields from groundwater resources.

8.3.5 Maintain and enhance lake and wetland water levels

Regional plans shall identify lakes and wetlands requiring water level protection and:

- a) specify the bed and water levels (excluding hydro electricity reservoirs) required to achieve the fresh water objectives, and meet the limits and targets for those lakes and wetlands; and
- b) manage the adverse effect of activities to protect lake and wetland water levels and natural hydrological functioning.

8.3.6 Management of degraded fresh water bodies

Regional plans shall provide for the improvement of degraded fresh water bodies where they have been degraded as a result of human activities to the point of being over allocated.

8.3.7 Management of lakes

Waikato Regional Council will collaborate with territorial authorities, tāngata whenua and other stakeholders to:

- a) identify lakes that are, or could potentially become degraded;
- b) ascertain the likely causes of this degradation; and
- c) investigate and recommend options, including regional or district plan changes, to maintain or enhance the values of the lakes.

8.3.8 Natural functioning and ecological health of fresh water bodies and coastal water

Regional and district plans shall ensure that the natural functioning and ecological health of fresh water bodies and coastal water is maintained and where appropriate enhanced, including by:

- a) controlling water abstraction;
- b) recognising the inter-connectedness of ground and surface waters, and between surface fresh water bodies;

- c) controlling extraction activities, including sand and gravel extraction;
- d) controlling **structures** in or on the banks or beds of fresh water bodies and coastal water;
- e) where practicable avoiding the modification of fresh water bodies including the piping, excavation, infilling, widening or straightening of the fresh water body;
- f) controlling the damming and diverting of water including off line dams and the diversion of flood waters;
- g) addressing adverse effects including effects on **natural character**, habitat quality, **mauri** and migration of indigenous species; and
- h) providing for appropriate development setbacks from fresh water bodies.

8.3.9 Industry self-management

Waikato Regional Council will, with primary industry, investigate the role and ability of industry self-management to achieve any required reduction in non-point source discharges of contaminants.

8.3.10 Effects of subdivision, use and development

Territorial authorities should, in accordance with their statutory responsibilities, manage the effects of subdivision, use and development either by statutory or non-statutory means, including through district plans, development and subdivision guidelines and structure plan by considering the following:

- a) the availability of water, including by encouraging water conservation measures;
- b) avoid, remedy or mitigate the adverse effects of the sealing of known aquifer recharge areas
- c) development and design that minimises the potential for contaminants to enter fresh water bodies and coastal water;
- d) managing flows into stormwater networks including through the adoption of low impact design;
- e) providing for the creation and protection of esplanade reserves and/or strips and riparian habitat, including appropriately vegetated riparian margins where this will have a positive effect on a fresh water body and on its ecological, amenity and recreational values;
- f) the promotion of best practice stormwater management for **urban** areas, including the need for stormwater catchment plans for **greenfield** urban development;
- g) managing contaminant loadings (including sediment) entering stormwater networks;
- h) minimising stormwater entering wastewater networks; and
- i) addressing adverse effects on the migration of indigenous species.

8.3.11 Advocacy and education

Waikato Regional Council will:

- a) encourage adoption of land-based mitigation of stormwater, including the use of wetlands;
- b) promote awareness of the effects of stormwater systems and discharges on water quality, habitat quality and connectivity;
- c) promote low-impact design options;
- d) provide information on the value of fresh water bodies and the **ecosystem services** they provide;
- e) encourage the replacement of onsite wastewater disposal with reticulated wastewater systems where applicable;
- f) encourage retention, enhancement and extension of riparian vegetation and wetlands;
- g) promote awareness of relevant regional and district plan provisions;
- h) promote awareness of soil erosion issues;
- i) encourage adoption of sustainable land management practices;

- j) provide information to territorial authorities to assist in managing land use activities which may adversely affect flow regimes and the availability of water;
- k) promote awareness of the effects of introduction and potential spread of plant and animal pests that affect water resources; and
- l) encourage the regular inspection of communities serviced by onsite wastewater systems, such as in villages and concentrated rural-residential areas, to identify and address any surfacing of effluent from onsite wastewater systems.

Consideration will be given to collaborating with territorial authorities, tāngata whenua, industry and other stakeholders to undertake the above where it is assessed that this may provide a more effective or efficient outcome.

Explanation

There are a range of activities and discharges that can be generally improved across the region and which will result in improving the quality of the region's fresh water bodies. Policy 8.3 applies to all fresh water bodies and coastal water across the region and seeks to maintain or enhance the identified values of all fresh water bodies and coastal water. It sets direction as to the key adverse effects to be managed and the types of activities that are currently known to adversely affect fresh water bodies and coastal water.

Discharges to fresh water bodies and coastal water can generally be divided into two types: point source (such as direct discharges from industry or wastewater treatment plants) and non-point source discharges (such as agricultural or stormwater run-off). Methods 8.3.1, 8.3.2 and 8.3.3 target these discharges.

Method 8.3.1 provides direction to the regional plan and guidance to the resource user on the principles and matters to be considered in controlling point source discharges. Method 8.3.1d) requires the regional plan to provide a policy framework for those instances where it is impossible for effects to be avoided or remediated. In these instances the provision for mitigation and offsetting are an effective means to reduce the impact of unavoidable adverse effects, and to enable a degree of counterbalancing or compensation in order to manage effects of activities in an integrated manner.

Method 8.3.2 seeks to achieve improvements in fresh water body and coastal water values by reducing the adverse effects from land use activities near fresh water bodies and coastal water. This method identifies the discharge of sediment and microbial contamination as of specific concern. Activities known to produce sediment and microbes that have a high risk of entering fresh water bodies include tracking and earthworks, the removal of riparian vegetation and access to the beds and banks of water bodies by vehicles and stock.

Method 8.3.3 sets out the manner in which non-point source discharges, including the adverse effects from intensive **primary production**, will be managed. Primary production industries are those that rely on the productive capacity of the soil resource (with or without inputs such as fertiliser or irrigation), or water to grow their products, for example farming, forestry, aquaculture and horticulture. The method signals that nutrient discharges will be controlled where they are undermining the limits, targets and values of a fresh water body. This recognises that discharges of nutrients may not compromise the limits, targets and values of all fresh water bodies and coastal water but will affect some. In the case of lakes (in particular peat lakes), this type of discharge warrants further investigation and, if then found to be appropriate, control (Method 8.3.7).

Method 8.3.4 directs regional plans to establish and set minimum and allocable flows in rivers and sustainable yields in groundwater resources. Setting bed and water levels in lakes and wetlands is necessary to ensure the maintenance and enhancement of lakes and wetlands (Method 8.3.5). Provision in regional plans will be made to control

activities to protect flows, levels and yields, for example drainage near lakes and wetlands.

Method 8.3.8 seeks to ensure the natural functioning and the ecological health of fresh water bodies throughout the region. This approach focuses on managing those activities that may have adverse effects on the form and natural functioning of a fresh water body.

A major cause of non-point source discharges is agricultural land use. Method 8.3.9 recognises that the industry can play a significant role in reducing non-point source discharges from agriculture and as such Waikato Regional Council will support them in developing methods for industry self-management of these discharges.

Territorial authorities should have regard to the effects of activities on fresh water bodies and coastal water when managing subdivision, use and development. Method 8.3.10 sets out a list of matters to be considered through relevant planning and management documents.

Education and advocacy will play a role in ensuring that all sectors of the community are aware of the effects of their activities on fresh water bodies and coastal water and what steps they can take to reduce their adverse effects. Method 8.3.11 sets out the particular areas where Waikato Regional Council feels it can achieve improvements in fresh water bodies by increasing community awareness.

Policy 8.4 Catchment-based intervention

Identify catchments, including Waikato River and Lake Taupō, that require specific intervention to address the adverse effects of activities and land use changes. In identifying catchments that require intervention, and in undertaking that intervention the following will be considered:

- a) national or legislative direction;
- b) the identified values of the fresh water bodies;
- c) tāngata whenua values;
- d) the degree of improvement in water quality able to be attained by changes to land use practices and discharge practices;
- e) existence and ongoing operation of significant renewable electricity generation activities;
- f) the degree and purpose of intervention or modification that has already occurred along the fresh water body;
- g) the availability of water to meet the existing and reasonably justified and foreseeable future domestic and municipal water supply requirements;
- h) the existence of regionally significant industry;
- i) the potential to address more than one environmental issue through the intervention;
- j) the vulnerability and values of the whole catchment and its receiving environment (including the coastal marine area);
- k) the consequences of inaction and delay; and
- l) the social and economic benefits and costs to the community.

The relevant objectives are:

- 3.1 *Integrated management*
- 3.2 *Resource use and development*
- 3.3 *Decision making*
- 3.4 *Health and wellbeing of the Waikato River*
- 3.8 *Ecosystem services*
- 3.9 *Relationship of tāngata whenua with the environment*
- 3.13 *Mauri and health of marine waters*
- 3.14 *Mauri and values of fresh water bodies*
- 3.15 *Allocation and use of fresh water*
- 3.16 *Riparian areas and wetlands*
- 3.19 *Ecological integrity and indigenous biodiversity*
- 3.21 *Amenity*
- 3.22 *Natural character*
- 3.23 *Public access*

Implementation methods

8.4.1 Identify catchments for specific intervention

Waikato Regional Council will identify catchments that require specific intervention to address the adverse effects of activities and land use changes on the health of fresh water bodies. This assessment will be based on the matters in Policy 8.4 when determining a priority order for catchment intervention. The relative priority of catchments and the inclusion of additional catchments requiring intervention will be reviewed at regular intervals using the consultative process.

For the purposes of Policy 8.4, the catchments of the Waikato River and Lake Taupō have been identified as priority catchments that require intervention (refer to section 8C) to address the adverse effects of activities and land use changes on water bodies.

8.4.2 Process for determining catchment management approach

Waikato Regional Council, working with stakeholders, tāngata whenua and other groups and individuals in local communities, taking into account local information, will develop management approaches to achieve desired outcomes in catchments identified as requiring intervention including by:

- a) defining measurable interim and long-term desired targets for the receiving water body;
- b) analysing the change in management required;
- c) assessing which potential policy instruments are technically feasible;
- d) researching changes in land management and land use practices that would be effective in addressing the cause of adverse effects;
- e) working with stakeholders, tāngata whenua and other groups and individuals in local communities taking into account local information, in order to understand implications to them of, and their likely response to, potential policy instruments;
- f) taking into account the result of work undertaken between Waikato Regional Council and industry groups;
- g) working with tāngata whenua, territorial authorities, other agencies to agree changes to roles and responsibilities if appropriate;
- h) identifying, in consultation with stakeholders, the implications for communities (including financial implications) of the scale and rate of change required; and
- i) determining whether further scientific monitoring and investigation is required as issues are identified in catchments.

8.4.3 Nutrient-sensitive fresh water bodies

Where nutrients pose a significant threat to water bodies in priority catchments, Waikato Regional Council will manage adverse effects of land use activities on receiving water bodies (including the coastal water) by:

- a) developing mechanisms for the control of adverse effects of land use including through the regional plans and industry self management; and
- b) working with primary production industry representatives to develop and implement policy instruments.

8.4.4 Work with primary industry

Waikato Regional Council will work with primary industry groups to investigate options to meet the interim and long-term desired outcomes for an identified catchment, including to:

- a) develop methods for property-scale delivery of advice, including advice in relation to the practical (financial and environmental) options for meeting environmental limits; and

- b) promote land management practices that may assist in achieving the desired fresh water body values.

Explanation

The most effective and efficient method of improving the values of fresh water bodies is to take a catchment management approach. Waikato Regional Council will identify catchments that require specific intervention in order to successfully address the particular issues of fresh water bodies. In some instances the catchment identification will occur at the same time as the value setting process and in other instances they will occur separately. Policy 8.4 seeks to give resource users certainty about the approach Waikato Regional Council will use, and the factors it will consider, in determining those catchments that require specific intervention. The relative priority of these catchments will be confirmed following consultation with the community (Method 8.4.1). In the first instance, the catchments of Lake Taupō and the Waikato River have been identified as catchments requiring specific intervention. Lake Taupō limits and methods are set out in a specific chapter in the regional plan.

Method 8.4.3 gives direction on how Waikato Regional Council will approach the management of fresh water bodies that are particularly sensitive to elevated nutrient concentrations.

Method 8.4.4 recognises that working with landowners and industry groups to develop options to meet the desired outcomes in identified catchments will be increasingly important.

Policy 8.5 Waikato River catchment

Recognise Te Ture Whaimana o Te Awa o Waikato – the Vision and Strategy for the Waikato River – as the primary direction-setting document for the Waikato River and develop an integrated, holistic and co-ordinated approach to implementation.

Implementation methods

8.5.1 Regional and district plans

Regional and district plans shall:

- a) recognise the Vision and Strategy for the Waikato River as the primary direction-setting document for the Waikato River and its catchment; and
- b) ensure activities within the Waikato River catchment (refer to Map 8.2) are controlled with respect to any adverse effects on the health and wellbeing of the Waikato River, including activities which:
 - i) result in the destabilisation of the beds and banks of waterbodies;
 - ii) result in discharges of contaminants to water bodies;
 - iii) result in adverse effects on significant sites, fisheries, flora and fauna;
 - iv) result in a loss of public access; and
 - v) adversely affect the cultural association of Waikato-Tainui, Ngāti Tūwharetoa, Te Arawa River Iwi, Maniapoto and Raukawa with the Waikato River.

The relevant objectives are:

- 3.1 *Integrated management*
- 3.2 *Resource use and development*
- 3.3 *Decision making*
- 3.4 *Health and wellbeing of the Waikato River*
- 3.8 *Ecosystem services*
- 3.9 *Relationship of tāngata whenua with the environment*
- 3.13 *Mauri and health of marine waters*
- 3.14 *Mauri and values of fresh water bodies*
- 3.15 *Allocation and use of fresh water*
- 3.16 *Riparian areas and wetlands*
- 3.19 *Ecological integrity and indigenous biodiversity*
- 3.21 *Amenity*
- 3.22 *Natural character*
- 3.23 *Public access*

8.5.2 Joint management approach

Waikato Regional Council, in partnership with Waikato-Tainui, Ngāti Tūwharetoa, Te Arawa River Iwi, Maniapoto and Raukawa, will:

- a) provide for Joint Management Agreements and Integrated River Plans to be developed and agreed;
- b) establish monitoring programmes, which shall incorporate mātauranga Māori, to determine and monitor the health status of the Waikato River;
- c) work with the Waikato River Authority to ensure targets are established for improving the health and wellbeing of the Waikato River; and
- d) develop and implement a programme of action to achieve those targets, including recommendations for changes to regional and district plans.

8.5.3 Education and advocacy

Waikato Regional Council will collaborate with the Waikato River Authority to:

- a) promote and foster Te Ture Whaimana o Te Awa o Waikato (Waikato River Vision and Strategy) and the regional community's knowledge and understanding of the health and wellbeing of the Waikato River;
- b) develop and share information on rivers and the effects and management of activities within their catchments;
- c) encourage and foster a 'whole of river' approach to the restoration and protection of the Waikato River;
- d) promote the restoration and enhancement of indigenous riparian vegetation and wetlands within the Waikato River catchment; and
- e) promote the development and adoption of best practice methods including mātauranga Māori within the Waikato River catchment to restore and protect the health and wellbeing of the Waikato River.

Explanation

The Waikato-Tainui Raupatu Claims (Waikato River) Settlement Act 2010 (the Act) gave effect to the 2009 deed of settlement in respect of the **raupatu** claims of Waikato-Tainui over the Waikato River. The Ngāti Tuwharetoa, Raukawa and Te Arawa River Iwi Waikato River Act 2010 (the upper River Act) gives effect to the co-management deeds entered into between the Crown and Ngāti Tūwharetoa, Raukawa and Te Arawa River Iwi. The Crown and each **iwi** have agreed to the establishment and participation of each iwi in a co-governance framework for the Waikato River.

The Act establishes Te Ture Whaimana o Te Awa o Waikato – the Vision and Strategy for the Waikato River – as the primary direction-setting document for the management of the River. Section 11 of the Act deems the Vision and Strategy in its entirety to be part of the Regional Policy Statement without the need for public consultation. The Regional Policy Statement cannot be inconsistent with the Vision and Strategy. Policy 8.5 reflects this and the subsequent methods outline how Waikato Regional Council will respond to the directions of the Act and the Vision and Strategy.

The Act also establishes the Waikato River Authority. One of its roles is to review the Vision and Strategy, including for the purpose of considering whether targets or methods should be developed to achieve the overarching purpose of the Settlement. Where targets are developed under Method 8.5.2, these will be consistent with any targets included in the Vision and Strategy by the Waikato River Authority.

The identification of the Waikato River catchment for specific policy intervention assists in ensuring that the health and wellbeing of the Waikato River is restored and protected.

The Nga Wai o Maniapoto (Waipa River) Act 2012 has as its purpose the restoration and maintenance of the quality and integrity of the waters that flow into and form part of the Waipa River, which is a principal tributary of the Waikato River. This Act contains mechanisms whereby the scope of the Vision and Strategy is extended to apply to the entire Waipa River.

Policy 8.6 Allocating fresh water

Manage the increasing demand and competition for water through the setting of allocation limits, efficient allocation within those limits, and other regional plan mechanisms which achieve identified freshwater objectives and:

- a) maintain and enhance the mauri of fresh water bodies;
- b) retain sufficient water in water bodies to safeguard their life-supporting capacity and avoid any further degradation of water quality;
- c) enable the existing and reasonably justified foreseeable domestic or municipal needs of people and communities and an individual's reasonable animal drinking water requirements to be met (with discretion to consider additional allocations for those particular uses in fully and over-allocated catchments);
- d) avoid any reduction in the generation of electricity from renewable electricity generation activities, including the Waikato Hydro Scheme; and
- e) recognise that lawfully existing water takes (including those for **regionally significant industry** and primary production activities supporting that industry) contribute to social, economic and cultural wellbeing and that significant investment relies on the continuation of those takes.

The relevant objectives are:

- 3.1 Integrated management
- 3.2 Resource use and development
- 3.3 Decision making
- 3.4 Health and wellbeing of the Waikato River
- 3.5 Energy
- 3.6 Adapting to climate change
- 3.8 Ecosystem services
- 3.9 Relationship of tāngata whenua with the environment
- 3.10 Sustainable and efficient use of resources
- 3.13 Mauri and health of marine waters
- 3.14 Mauri and values of fresh water bodies
- 3.15 Allocation and use of fresh water
- 3.16 Riparian areas and wetlands
- 3.19 Ecological integrity and indigenous biodiversity
- 3.21 Amenities
- 3.22 Natural character

Implementation methods

8.6.1 Manage allocation of fresh water

Regional plans shall implement Policy 8.6 including by establishing:

- a) **minimum flow** limits and **allocable flow** limits for surface water bodies and how surface water takes will be managed within those limits;
- b) **sustainable yield** limits for groundwater systems and how groundwater takes will be managed within those limits, having regard to any connections between groundwater and surface water and the need to manage connected systems in an integrated manner;
- c) methods to avoid any new over-allocation and phase out over-allocation of surface water and groundwater resources as soon as is practicable, via appropriate voluntary and regulatory methods. These methods may include ceasing new allocations, reviewing consents to achieve efficiency gains, rostering users, encouraging the sharing of water through catchment groups or voluntary agreements between users, promoting alternative sources of water, promoting water harvesting and water augmentation, reassessing the sustainable yield or allocable flow and shared reductions of existing takes (including permitted takes) and shared reductions across the catchment (taking into account relative efficient use of the water taken) of all industrial, commercial and agricultural takes (excluding renewable electricity generation takes and water taken for human drinking purposes or human sanitation purposes) where necessary either by consent review, when consents expire or via appropriate **water management plan** provisions;
- d) methods that:
 - i) allow the exceedance of allocable flow limits by new takes of domestic and municipal water supply, and animal drinking water takes provided those takes are reasonable and justified; and

- ii) ensure that any resulting over-allocation is phased out as soon as is practicable but by no later than 31 December 2030.
- e) methods that provide for the replacement of lawfully existing takes (including those for regionally significant industry and primary production activities that support that industry) provided that they are reasonable and justified;
- f) methods to manage the adverse effects of the take and use of fresh water; including the damming and diversion of water and off-stream water storage;
- g) how restrictions will be applied during water shortages; and
- h) in catchments where authorised water takes exceed the allocation limit an activity status hierarchy for the taking and use of water as follows:
 - i) replacement takes for existing domestic or municipal supply (where a water management plan is provided and the quantum of take is not increased);
 - ii) water harvesting takes, when flows in the river are higher than the median flow and the take is not located within the Waikato River catchment upstream of the Karapiro dam;
 - iii) an individual's reasonable drinking water and animal drinking water needs; replacement of previously authorised takes; and new takes for domestic or municipal supply (where a water management plan is provided); and
 - iv) all other activities.

Explanation

Policy 8.6 recognises that as the competing and increasing demand for fresh water increases there may not be sufficient fresh water to provide for the demand from the full range of instream and abstractive uses.

Whilst the use of fresh water is important to all sectors of the regional community and the national economy, Policy 8.6 recognises that water should not be taken or used to the extent that it compromises the mauri or life supporting capacity of fresh water.

This policy sets the framework to enable the establishment of a favourable status for fresh water takes for domestic and municipal supply and animals, and existing takes.

The policy framework for municipal water supplies is intended to encourage provisions that require new "wet industries" (consumers of large amounts of water) to be accounted for and their requirements justified through municipal applications. However, the policy framework is not intended to afford favourable status to new rural-based irrigation schemes that may otherwise seek to connect to municipal supply schemes to gain the benefits of municipal supply status.

This policy also recognises the importance of maintaining the generation of electricity from renewable electricity generation activities. A cornerstone of the region's water allocation regime is the setting of an allocable flow at Karapiro (which provides for abstractions from the middle and upper Waikato Catchment above Karapiro). The Waikato Hydro Scheme, a long-established existing activity, utilises the water remaining in the Waikato River in a non-consumptive way after all abstractions within the allocable flow have been taken.

Method 8.6.1 sets out some of the matters that regional plans should contain to implement Policy 8.6.

Policy 8.7 Efficient use of fresh water

Ensure that the allocated water resource is used efficiently.

Implementation Methods

8.7.1 Manage the use of fresh water

Regional plans shall ensure allocated surface water flows and sustainable groundwater yields are used efficiently, including by:

- a) ensuring the volume allocated for any take and use of fresh water is reasonable and justifiable with regard to its intended use;
- b) requiring a water management plan to be included as part of any resource consent application for domestic or municipal supply water takes;
- c) promoting shared use of fresh water, including through voluntary water management groups;
- d) promoting the adoption of water conservation and demand management measures;
- e) providing for the temporary or permanent transfer of (in whole or in part) a groundwater or surface water take where this does not adversely affect other abstractions or uses; and
- f) providing for water harvesting and water storage.

The relevant objectives are:

- 3.1 *Integrated management*
- 3.2 *Resource use and development*
- 3.3 *Decision making*
- 3.4 *Health and wellbeing of the Waikato River*
- 3.5 *Energy*
- 3.6 *Adapting to climate change*
- 3.8 *Ecosystem services*
- 3.9 *Relationship of tāngata whenua with the environment*
- 3.10 *Sustainable and efficient use of resources*
- 3.15 *Allocation and use of fresh water*

8.7.2 Water conservation

Waikato Regional Council will promote, and where appropriate require, a range of water conservation practices and demand management measures, including the use of:

- a) water saving devices;
- b) water metering;
- c) water recycling;
- d) water demand management plans;
- e) water efficient technology; and
- f) leak detection and loss monitoring technologies.

Explanation

Water is a finite resource. Consequently, the efficient use of fresh water is an important resource management issue. Regional plans will establish what fresh water is available for use by determining the allocable flow and sustainable yields for fresh water bodies (Method 8.3.4).

Policy 8.7 and associated methods require that fresh water determined to be available for allocation to users is used efficiently. This process will be predominantly undertaken through controls in the Regional Plan as per Method 8.7.1. Method 8.7.2 recognises that the promotion of water conservation and demand management measures and their adoption by municipal supply authorities and water users will be increasingly important as both the demand and competition for water increases. The requirement by Waikato Regional Council for parties to undertake water conservation measures will need to be assessed on a case by case basis, taking into account the full set of circumstances that will lead to efficiency gains, including **local authority** functions under other legislation, and whether other parties are better placed to make decisions on water conservation methods.

8A Modified fresh water bodies

Table 8-1 Fresh water bodies – hydro electric generation

Waikato River, main stem from Tāupo Gates to Karapiro Dam (including hydro reservoirs) with Lake Tāupo utilised as a reservoir to store water for hydro-electricity generation purposes.

Table 8-2 Fresh water bodies – domestic and municipal water supply bodies

Mangatawhiri water supply dam
Mangatangi water supply dam

8B Freshwater bodies and wetlands that have high water quality

Table 8-3: Freshwater bodies with high water quality – ecological health (inferred from water quality measurements)

	Dissolved oxygen (% of saturation)	pH	Turbidity (NTU)	Total ammonia (mgN/m ³)	Temperature (°C)	Total nitrogen (mg/m ³)	Total phosphorous (mg/m ³)
Hikutaia (at Old Maratoto Rd)	95	7.0	1.5	10	13.6	160	12
Hinemaiaia (at SH1)	101	7.4	1.0	5	11.7	130	38
Kauaeranga (at Smiths cableway)	99	7.0	1.1	5 (5)	14.5	100	3
Kuratau (at Lake Taupō)	101	7.4	1.1	5	12.4	550	16
Tauranga – Taupō (at Te Kono slackline)	101	7.3	0.7	5	10.1	90	20
Tongariro (at Turangi)	101	7.5	0.8	2	10.0	75	18
Waihaha (at SH32)	102	7.2	0.5	5	10.3	170	26
Waikato, upper (between Taupō Gates & Waipapa tailrace)	102	7.4	0.8	5	15.9	160	17
Waitahanui (at Blake Rd)	99	7.4	0.6	5	10.7	360	53
Waiwawa (at SH25 Coroglen)	102	7.1	1.4	5	15.1	110	5

Table 8-3 includes ten rivers with the best water quality (centred on the year 2000) for supporting ecological health (median water quality during 1998-2002). The monitoring site listed in the left hand column is the downstream extent of the fresh water body.

Table 8-4: Freshwater bodies – contact recreation purposes

	Horizontal clarity (m)	<i>E. coli</i> (cfu/100mL)
Hinemaiaia (at SH1)	2.6	21
Kuratau (at Lake Taupō)	No data	38
Pueto (at Broadlands Rd)	1.8	30
Tauranga – Taupō (at Te Kono slackline)	3.8	No data
Tongariro (at Turangi)	2.9	No data
Waihaha (at SH32)	5.2	9
Waihou (at Whites Rd)	6.0	41
Waikato, upper (between Taupō Gates and Waipapa tailrace)	3.2	5
Waitahanui (at Blake Rd)	3.7	50
Whanganui (at Lake Taupō)	No data	28

Table 8-4 includes ten rivers with the best water quality (centred on the year 2000) for swimming and other water-based recreation (median water quality during 1998-2002). The monitoring site listed in the left hand column is the downstream extent of the fresh water body.

Table 8-5: Lakes with high water quality, based on condition and vulnerability

Category One Lakes – high condition, low vulnerability			
Lake	Lake SPI Score (%)	Regional Ranking	Other information
Rotopounamu	71%	2 equal	
Upper Tama	Naturally unvegetated	2 equal	Considered to be close to pristine
Lower Tama	Naturally unvegetated	2 equal	Considered to be close to pristine
Blue Lake	Naturally unvegetated	5	Considered to be close to pristine
Koraha	Unknown	8 equal	Known to have submerged plants but not yet surveyed for Lake SPI
Emerald Lakes	Naturally unvegetated	10 equal	
Category Two Lakes – high condition, high vulnerability			
Lake	Lake SPI Score (%)	Regional Ranking	Other information
Taupō	36%	1	
Maratoto	Naturally unvegetated	6 equal	TP 29 mg m ⁻³ , TN 1400 mg m ⁻³ , Chla 32 mg m ⁻³ (waters of Waikato 2010)
Harihari	45%	8 equal	
Taharoa	35%	10 equal	
Rotoaira	23%	12	
Rotopiko (Serpentine)	89% (max 3 lakes)	15	
Otamatearoa	31%	16 equal	
Ngahewa	29%	19 equal	
Parangi	22%	24 equal	

Category One Lakes – high condition, low vulnerability: These lakes have water quality that is close to pristine for their type. They are generally remotely located and have a high percentage of native vegetation cover in the catchment. They are located

on Crown-owned reserve land and are not expected to be subject to changes in catchment land use in the foreseeable future.

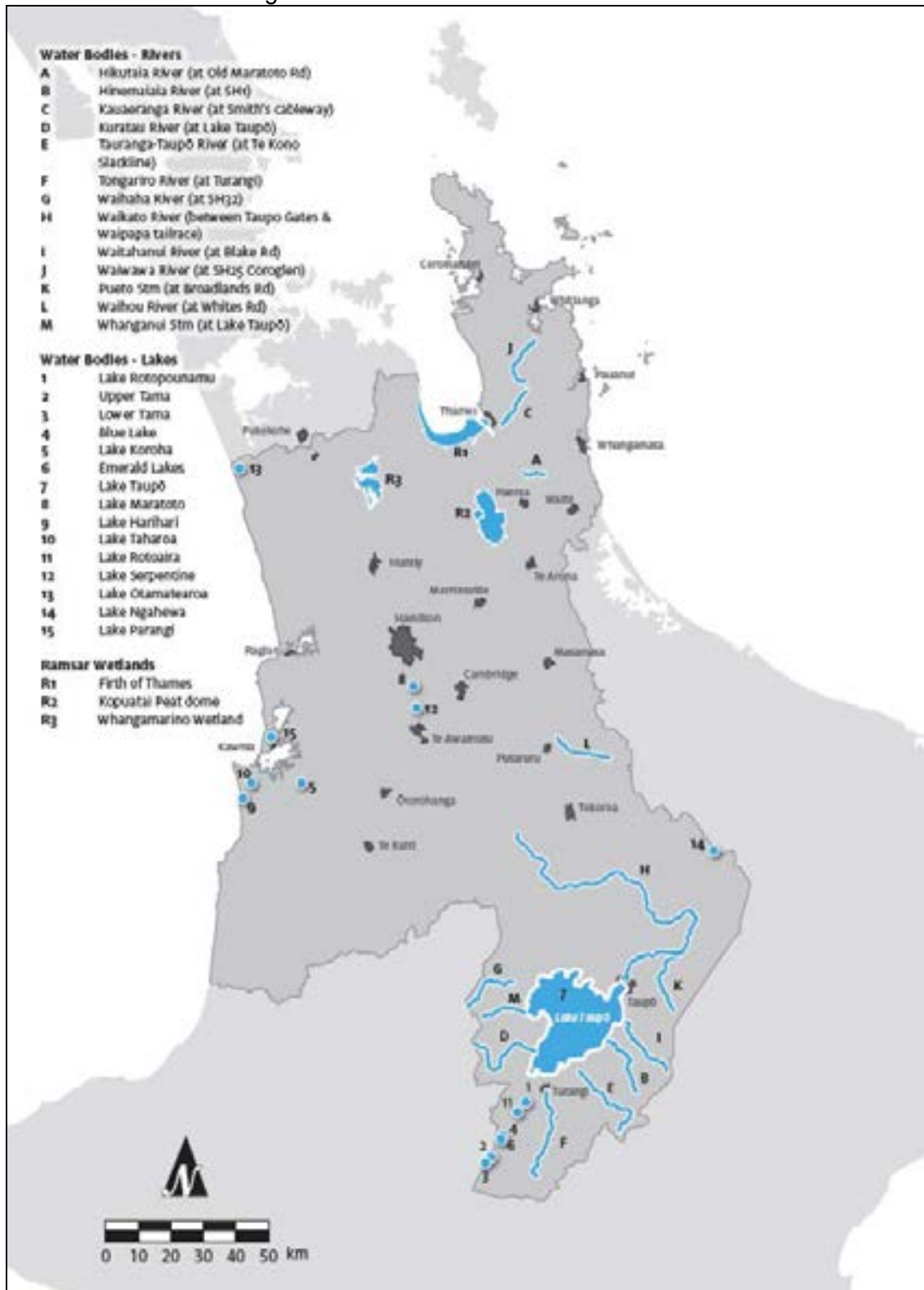
Category Two Lakes – high condition, high vulnerability: These lakes tend to have water quality that has been impacted in some way by either catchment land use and/or introduced plants and/or animals. However, they make up a very small group of lakes that retain a relatively clear water, macrophyte-dominated state. Due to a variety of existing or potential stressors they are considered to be very vulnerable to a change in state from clear water and vegetated to one that is algal-dominated and devoid of submerged macrophytes.

Table 8-6: Wetlands identified as being of international importance

Firth of Thames (Map 8-1 R1)
Kopuatai Peat Dome (Map 8-1 R2)
Whangamarino (Map 8-1 R3)

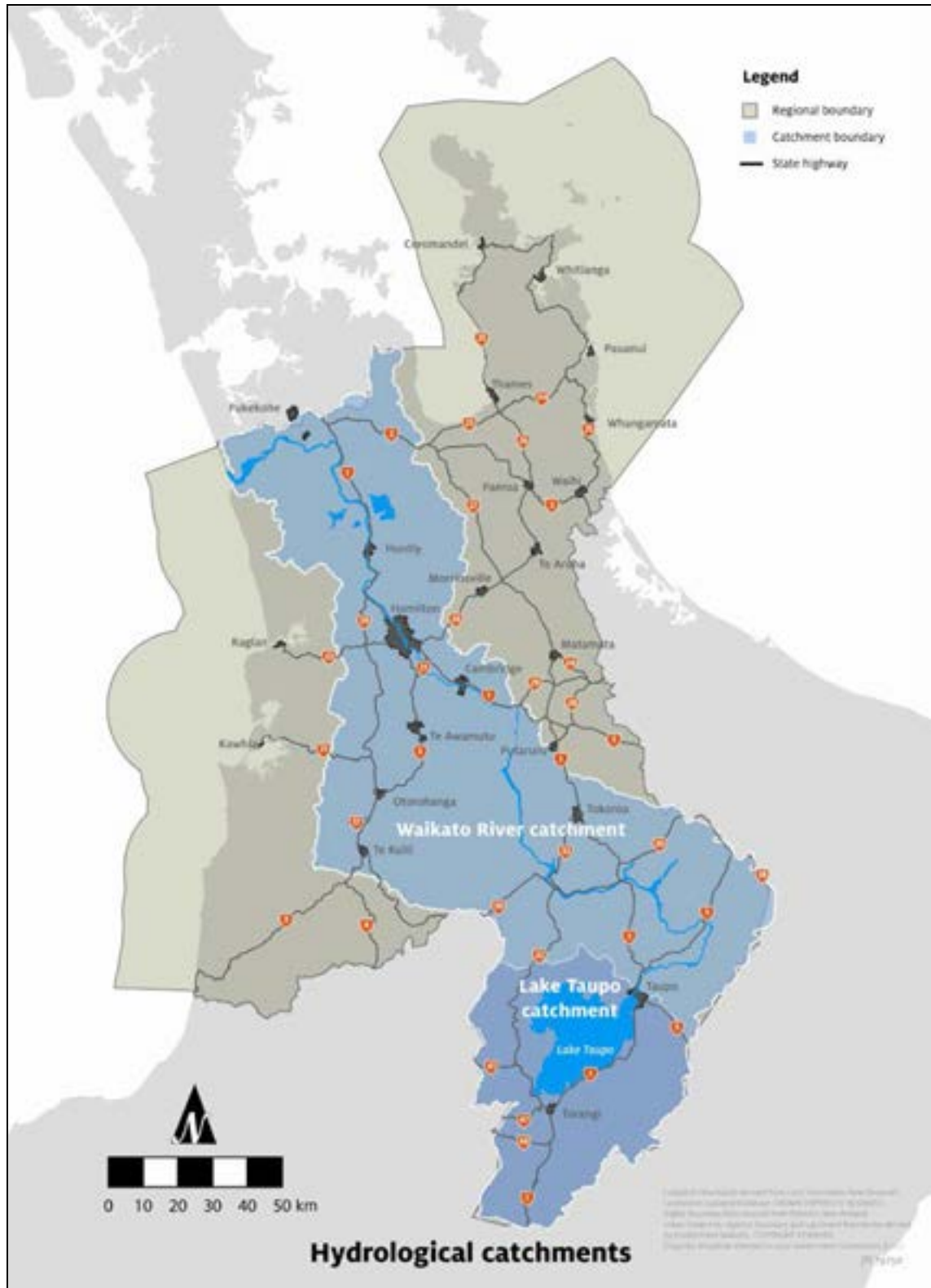
8B Map of fresh water bodies and wetlands

Fresh water bodies and wetlands to be included in the identification of outstanding freshwater bodies and significant values of wetlands as stated in Method 8.2.1



Map 8-1: Fresh water bodies and wetlands to be considered by Method 8.2.1

8C Priority catchments map



Map 8-2: Identified catchments for intervention (Policy 8.4)

9 Geothermal

In relation to **indigenous biodiversity** within Development or Limited Development Geothermal Systems Chapter 11 does not apply to flora and fauna forming part of geothermal features as these are subject to Chapter 9. Chapter 11 does apply to other types of indigenous biodiversity in such systems.

Policy 9.1 Sustainable management of the Regional Geothermal Resource

Sustainably manage the **Regional Geothermal Resource** in a way that provides for multiple uses and the extent and variety of the region's geothermal features including by:

The relevant objectives are:

- 3.1 *Integrated management*
- 3.2 *Resource use and development*
- 3.3 *Decision making*
- 3.5 *Energy*
- 3.10 *Sustainable and efficient use of resources*
- 3.12 *Built environment*
- 3.17 *Geothermal*

- a) classifying geothermal systems for management based upon:
 - i) system size;
 - ii) the vulnerability of **Significant Geothermal Features** to extractive uses; and
 - iii) existing uses;
- b) managing the effects of development and use of land and non-geothermal water on the Regional Geothermal Resource; and
- c) allocating some of the Regional Geothermal Resource for protection and some for take, use and discharge.

Implementation methods

9.1.1 Classification of geothermal systems

Regional plans shall classify geothermal systems as follows:

- a) Development Geothermal Systems are **large geothermal systems** where development of geothermal resources will be enabled because there is no evidence of a flow of subsurface geothermal fluid to or from a system described in b), c) or d) below prior to or under development conditions, and:
 - i) the system contains few geothermal features that are moderately to highly vulnerable;
 - ii) existing geothermal features are significantly impaired by lawfully established large-scale takes; or
 - iii) the system is already subject to large-scale energy use and development;
- b) Limited Development Geothermal Systems are large geothermal systems where there are Significant Geothermal Features that could be adversely affected by large-scale development but where smaller-scale uses are unlikely to adversely affect those features;
- c) Protected Geothermal Systems are large geothermal systems where particular care must be taken to ensure that any use of the geothermal resource is sustainable and has no adverse effect on significant natural **geothermal characteristics** because either:
 - i) the system supports a substantial number of geothermal features that are moderately to highly vulnerable to the extraction of fluid;
 - ii) the system is largely or wholly within a National Park or a World Heritage Area; or
 - iii) there is evidence of a flow of subsurface geothermal fluid to or from a system described in c) i) and c) ii) above;
- d) Research Geothermal Systems are all other large geothermal systems, including:

- i) where there is insufficient information to identify them as Development, Limited Development, Protected Geothermal Systems or Small Geothermal Systems;
 - ii) any large geothermal systems undiscovered at 23 August 2003; or
 - iii) any part of the Regional Geothermal Resource that has not been identified as Development, Limited Development, Protected or Small Geothermal Systems; and
- e) Small Geothermal Systems are those that meet the Glossary definition of **Small Geothermal System**.

9.1.2 Identification of Protected Geothermal Systems

Regional plans shall identify the following systems as Protected Geothermal Systems:

- a) Horomatangi;
- b) Orakeikorako;
- c) Te Kopia;
- d) Tongariro; and
- e) Waikite-Waiotapu-Waimangu.

9.1.3 Mapping of Large Geothermal Systems

Regional plans shall map the boundaries of all known Large Geothermal Systems.

9.1.4 Define large-scale takes

Regional plans shall define thresholds over which a take of **geothermal water** or energy is considered to be large-scale for each type of geothermal system.

9.1.5 Conserving geothermal energy and water

Regional plans shall promote the efficient use of **geothermal energy** and water including by:

- a) preferring the use of energy- and water-efficient technologies; and
- b) promoting the use of down-hole heat-exchangers and group-heating schemes over ad hoc extraction for individual use.

9.1.6 Remediation and mitigation

Regional plans shall ensure that the potential for adverse effects arising from takes, uses or discharges of geothermal energy and water is recognised and addressed, including through:

- a) appropriate resource consent conditions;
- b) the use of bonds;
- c) provision for site remediation;
- d) abandonment of wells; or
- e) removal of building and **structures** including surface pipework.

9.1.7 Use of land and non-geothermal water within geothermal systems

Regional and district plans shall ensure that:

- a) the development and uses of non-geothermal water; and
- b) new development and uses of land

within and adjacent to all geothermal systems are compatible with the purpose for which each **geothermal system** is classified.

9.1.8 Growth management strategies

Waikato Regional Council will promote the preparation of growth management strategies, structure plans or similar mechanisms to identify and address potential effects on geothermal resources.

9.1.9 Environmental education and community groups

Waikato Regional Council will use environmental education programmes to increase public understanding and awareness of the rarity and vulnerability of geothermal features (including ecosystems) and assist in the establishment of community groups in geothermal areas with significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitats of indigenous fauna (as defined in section 11A) to maintain or protect their natural geothermal characteristics or remedy and mitigate existing adverse effects on them.

9.1.10 Assist landowners and occupiers

Waikato Regional Council will encourage and assist landowners and occupiers with geothermal features on their land to protect those features where appropriate and to modify land management practices to accommodate changes in geothermal energy and fluid outflows to ensure the protection of new areas of heated ground and other new surface geothermal features where appropriate.

9.1.11 Research and monitoring

Waikato Regional Council will:

- a) facilitate investigation, research and monitoring of the characteristics of geothermal systems;
- b) ensure that high-quality data, research and monitoring of the Regional Geothermal Resource and of the effects of its use, commensurate with the scale of any activity, are, where appropriate, independently peer reviewed and made publicly available having regard to cultural sensitivity and the protection of commercially sensitive information; and
- c) encourage and provide for the collation and dissemination of data and information about the undisturbed state of characteristics and the effects of development and use of geothermal systems.

9.1.12 Information requirements

Regional plans shall:

- a) require relevant information relating to the use and development of geothermal resources and of the effects of their use and development be lodged with Waikato Regional Council;
- b) require publicly available System Management Plans and regular monitoring and reporting of the effects of exercising consents for large-scale takes in Development Geothermal Systems;
- c) require information commensurate with the scale of the activity for all proposed activities affecting geothermal resources;
- d) require that System Management Plans associated with large scale applications are independently peer reviewed; and
- e) require an assessment of effects for small-scale applications, relative to the threats to features and other users from the consumptive or non-consumptive use.

Explanation

Sustainable management of the Regional Geothermal Resource will only be possible by considering the resource in its entirety and managing each geothermal system in a way that collectively achieves the objective for the management of the resource as a whole. To ensure the resource is allocated, protected and used appropriately, it is recognised that a range of uses including energy extraction, low impact use, research and protection of geothermal features should be provided for. Management directions

for geothermal systems are determined in a way that will ensure that different demands on the resource can be satisfied as appropriate.

The Regional Geothermal Resource can be divided naturally into discrete units or systems. There is a clear distinction between the region's large and small geothermal systems (see map 9.1 in section 9A). The large systems are all found in the Taupō volcanic zone, the triangular-shaped active volcanic zone stretching from an apex at Mt Ruapehu out to White Island and beyond. They cover a large area, and contain large volumes of heated rock and geothermal fluid of temperatures of up to 350°C. The small systems are scattered throughout the region, including in the Taupō volcanic zone, are small in area and volume of water discharged, and generally produce water of less than 100°C. What constitutes a 'large-scale take' within different systems will be different, depending on the characteristics of each system.

The re-classification of any system that is identified in the Waikato Regional Plan or any newly-discovered system can be undertaken through a plan change on the presentation of new information supporting such a change. Protected Geothermal Systems are specifically identified in order to confer an additional level of protection by restricting the ability to request such a change. This recognises that these systems are highly valued by the national and regional communities.

It is important to manage both geothermal and non-geothermal uses of resources in a complementary manner to achieve integrated management of the Regional Geothermal Resource. Development and use of land and water other than the take, use and discharge of geothermal energy and water can adversely affect the characteristics, and the use and development, of the Regional Geothermal Resource. In most situations, non-statutory strategies and studies inform the direction and content of district plans and, as such, are important mechanisms for ensuring land uses are compatible with the purpose for which geothermal systems have been classified.

There are a range of land uses or uses of non-geothermal water that are incompatible with the use, development or protection of the Regional Geothermal Resource. Activities undertaken within or in proximity to geothermal systems should be compatible with the management regime applying to those systems in this Regional Policy Statement and the Waikato Regional Plan.

The more knowledge and information that is available about each geothermal system and the effects of its use, the better the ability to manage and respond to potential and existing beneficial and adverse effects.

Information about the Regional Geothermal Resource is widespread and not all in the public domain. Integrated management of the Regional Geothermal Resource is difficult without access to relevant, up to date, high quality information about the resource and the effects of its use. Information is obtained at considerable cost during exploration of the geothermal resource and is commercially sensitive. Waikato Regional Council will use the means identified above to actively collect information about the Regional Geothermal Resource and make such information publicly available unless considered inappropriate for reasons of cultural or commercial sensitivity.

Refer also to methods under Policy 4.1 in Chapter 4 in relation to offsetting environmental effects.

Policy 9.2 Significant Geothermal Features

Recognise that some **geothermal features** are significant and provide the appropriate level of protection for these features within different geothermal systems.

Implementation methods

The relevant objectives are:

- 3.2 Resource use and development
- 3.3 Decision making
- 3.17 Geothermal
- 3.18 Historic and cultural heritage
- 3.19 Ecological integrity and indigenous biodiversity
- 3.21 Amenity

9.2.1 Significant Geothermal Features within Protected, Research and Small Geothermal Systems

Regional and district plans shall:

- a) recognise that geothermal features located within Protected, Research and Small Geothermal Systems that meet the description of one or more of the **geothermal feature** types listed in section 9B are deemed to be Significant Geothermal Features;
- b) ensure adverse effects on Significant Geothermal Features within Protected Geothermal Systems from take, use or discharge of geothermal energy and water are avoided;
- c) ensure adverse effects on Significant Geothermal Features within Research Geothermal Systems only occur as a result of research activities and that such effects are remedied if they cannot be practically avoided;
- d) ensure significant adverse effects on Significant Geothermal Features within Small and Research Geothermal Systems from take, use or discharge of geothermal energy and water are avoided; and
- e) ensure adverse effects on Significant Geothermal Features within Protected, Research and Small Geothermal Systems from the development and uses of non-geothermal water and the new development and uses of land are avoided with the exception of the existing effects from the operation of the Waikato River system for hydroelectric generation.

9.2.2 Significant Geothermal Features within Development and Limited Development Geothermal Systems

Regional plans shall list and map those features within Development and Limited Development Geothermal Systems that are Significant Geothermal Features.

9.2.3 Managing effects on Significant Geothermal Features within Development and Limited Development Geothermal Systems

Regional and district plans shall ensure:

- a) significant adverse effects on Significant Geothermal Features in Development Geothermal Systems from take, use or discharge of geothermal energy and water are remedied or mitigated;
- b) significant adverse effects on Significant Geothermal Features in Limited Development Geothermal Systems from take, use or discharge of geothermal energy and water are avoided;
- c) consent holders are required to remedy or mitigate any unintended significant adverse effects on Significant Geothermal Features in Limited Development Geothermal Systems occurring as a result of the exercise of a consent for take, use or discharge of geothermal energy and water;
- d) a comprehensive monitoring programme is associated with resource consents for the large-scale take, use or discharge of geothermal energy and water to detect significant adverse effects on Significant Geothermal Features (taking into account the naturally dynamic nature of such features); and

- e) adverse effects on Significant Geothermal Features in Development and Limited Development Geothermal Systems from development and uses of non-geothermal water and new development, and uses of land are avoided with the exception of existing effects from the operation of the Waikato River system for hydroelectric generation.

9.2.4 Mitigation of adverse effects

Regional and district plans shall ensure appropriate remediation or mitigation of adverse effects on Significant Geothermal Features, including through 'like for like' restoration or enhancement of degraded systems or features, or protection from potential adverse effects, within any geothermal system, including in the Bay of Plenty.

9.2.5 Waikato Regional Council works

Waikato Regional Council will ensure that any works it undertakes, promotes, or funds do not damage or threaten Significant Geothermal Features.

Explanation

Many valued geothermal features are highly vulnerable to geothermal system development or to other uses of land and water. Already most of the region's geothermal features have been lost or degraded. Maintenance of the variety of characteristics of the Regional Geothermal Resource requires the identification of the significant characteristics. For each of these characteristics, consideration needs to be given to the frequency of occurrence, the ability to recover from impacts, and the capacity to adapt to a changing situation.

It is recognised that in some circumstances such as the operation and maintenance of existing **infrastructure**, adverse effects on Significant Geothermal Features may occur. It is not the intention to prevent such operation and maintenance, or re-consenting of infrastructure, by virtue of proximity to Significant Geothermal Features. Rather the policy intent is to minimise adverse effects from such activities where it is possible to do so. New activities should be designed and located so that there is little chance of adverse effects on Significant Geothermal Features in the future.

Recognising that some degradation will occur in Development Geothermal Systems as a result of the take, use or discharge of geothermal energy and water, offsite remediation and mitigation will be provided for. This may address existing degradation and/or protection from potential adverse effects in similar types of geothermal features (as listed in section 9B) in the same or another geothermal system to an extent commensurate with the adverse effect being caused ('like for like' mitigation).

Measures may include but are not limited to:

- obtaining formal protection or public ownership of the land surrounding and including the feature or features;
- removal or control of exotic plants from the feature and its margins, and replacement with appropriate indigenous vegetation;
- control of animal pests;
- exclusion of **stock**;
- removal of rubbish, unconsented structures and excessive debris;
- removal and re-channelling of erosional outwash from roads and paths;
- blocking artificial drainage or channelling of a feature or its outflow;
- reinstatement of the local water table;
- providing interpretive signs describing the nature and value of the feature; and
- in rarer cases, the temporary augmentation or channelling of flow in order to regenerate damaged sinter or to re-establish a natural flow regime.

Actions to achieve geothermal 'like for like' remediation or mitigation do not involve creating a new feature, artificially altering the natural area of a geothermal feature or the flow of energy, fluid or **minerals** to it except in the limited case described above. Destruction of a feature or extinction of flow to it cannot be mitigated by creation of a feature elsewhere, but by an appropriately extensive programme of remediation, mitigation, or protection of a similar feature or features elsewhere. Where no feature of the same type as that being adversely affected is reasonably available for remediation, mitigation, or protection, a feature of a similar type may be substituted.

Destruction of features of one type will not necessarily be mitigated by the remediation or mitigation of existing adverse effects and protection from potential adverse effects to characteristics of a feature of a different type. For example, the destruction of geysers is not mitigated by remediation or mitigation of existing adverse effects and protection from potential adverse effects on steaming land. Steam features are relatively common to exploited geothermal systems, whereas geysers and associated hot chloride springs are rarer, and are normally the first features affected. Hence, geysers, chloride springs, and their ecosystems are becoming increasingly rare. Remediation of some surface characteristics affected by heat and fluid extraction may occur to an extent once the extraction stops. Ecosystems may be revitalised over the course of years or decades if fluid flows to them are re-established. However, it is unlikely that complete remediation will occur, even if the 'natural state' is known, because of the irreversibility of some effects.

Refer also to methods under Policy 4.1 in Chapter 4 in relation to offsetting environmental effects.

Policy 9.3 Development Geothermal Systems

Development Geothermal Systems shall be managed in a way that enables large-scale use and development of geothermal energy and water and:

- a) promotes efficient use of the geothermal resource;
- b) recognises and allows for controlled depletion of energy so as to provide for the energy needs of current and future generations;
- c) takes an integrated management approach, including through:
 - i) the development of a System Management Plan for each Development Geothermal System;
 - ii) establishing a peer review panel for the purpose of assisting the consent authority to manage the system; and
 - iii) the development and imposition of appropriate resource consent conditions;
- d) requires reinjection/injection of the geothermal water from large-scale takes remaining after use;
- e) provides for small and medium-scale use and development that is not inconsistent with any approved system management plan; and
- f) avoids, remedies, or mitigates adverse effects on other **natural and physical resources** including overlying structures.

The relevant objectives are:

- 3.1 Integrated management
- 3.2 Resource use and development
- 3.3 Decision making
- 3.4 Health and wellbeing of the Waikato River
- 3.5 Energy
- 3.8 Ecosystem services
- 3.10 Sustainable and efficient use of resources
- 3.12 Built environment
- 3.17 Geothermal

Implementation methods

9.3.1 Large-scale takes and use

For large-scale takes and use of geothermal energy and water from Development Geothermal Systems, regional plans shall:

- a) require preparation of a System Management Plan for each system prior to any use which, with reference to Policies 9.1, 9.2, 9.3 and 9.8, defines the objectives for the management of the system and provides for, as appropriate:
 - i) operational flexibility and adaptive management including provision for subsequent uses;
 - ii) reservoir modelling and subsidence modelling;
 - iii) a mechanism(s) to ensure coordination and promote co-operation between all consent holders for large-scale takes;
 - iv) research, monitoring and reporting;
 - v) non-statutory review of the System Management Plan if in the opinion of the consent holders and the Waikato Regional Council, such amendments are minor; and
 - vi) identification of anticipated significant adverse effects on Significant Geothermal Features and the remediation or mitigation to be undertaken, which may include 'like for like' remediation or mitigation in any geothermal system, including in the Bay of Plenty;
- b) recognise that the geothermal water remaining after use should be reinjected/injected;
- c) manage controlled depletion, including through modelling assessments, to determine appropriately stepped production; and
- d) require preparation of a Discharge Strategy, which shall form part of the System Management Plan, which shall consider the following matters as relevant:
 - i) disposal of waste water;
 - ii) return of geothermal water to that system;
 - iii) facilitation of further extraction of energy from the system;
 - iv) any likely benefits to or adverse effects on the system or its productive capacity;
 - v) the need for adaptive management and flexibility over time;
 - vi) the benefits, costs and adverse effects of the Discharge Strategy;
 - vii) remedying or mitigating significant adverse effects on Significant Geothermal Features;
 - viii) avoiding, remedying or mitigating contamination of surface and ground waters;
 - ix) the need to avoid or mitigate potential differential subsidence, particularly in the built environment;
 - x) the need to remedy or mitigate the adverse effects of subsidence, particularly in the built environment; and
 - xi) the risks associated with hydrothermal eruption, particularly in the built environment, and the need for any specific measures for safeguards to reduce or otherwise mitigate those risks.

9.3.2 Small- and medium-scale takes and use

Regional plans shall ensure small- and medium-scale takes and use of geothermal energy and water from Development Geothermal Systems are not inconsistent with any approved system management plan.

9.3.3 Peer review panel

Waikato Regional Council will establish a peer review panel of independent experts and **tāngata whenua** for each Development Geothermal System which will:

- a) assess the commencement, ongoing exercise and effects of resource consents against achieving the objectives of the system management plan, and the continued use and application of the system management plan;
- b) make recommendations for updating and reviewing the system management plan and changes to resource consents that are operative within that system; and

- c) report to Waikato Regional Council on a) and b), with findings being publicly available.

Explanation

The intention is to enable large-scale efficient and sustainable take, use and discharge of geothermal energy and water in Development Geothermal Systems, recognising that this will result in the depletion of the energy in the system (i.e. mining of the heat). The appropriate degree of efficiency and the rate of depletion will be determined through resource consent processes.

Each Development Geothermal System needs to be managed in an integrated manner including in the circumstances where there is more than one consent holder for the large-scale take, use and discharge of geothermal energy and water. This is to be achieved by the use of the management techniques set out in Policy 9.3 c). There will also be uses, other than large-scale takes, such as smaller takes and non-extractive uses, which are provided for as long as they are not inconsistent with any approved System Management Plan.

A range of benefits, costs and adverse effects need to be considered when determining the manner in which geothermal water is reinjected/injected as part of any large-scale use and development. Due to the uniqueness of every geothermal system, it is necessary to allow flexibility to determine the optimal discharge strategy for any particular Development Geothermal System having regard to all relevant matters.

The policy recognises that it is not possible to avoid all adverse effects on Significant Geothermal Features when large-scale takes, uses and discharges of geothermal energy and water are allowed in Development Geothermal Systems. Accordingly, it is appropriate that where extractive uses cause significant adverse effects on Significant Geothermal Features these effects should be addressed by remediation or mitigation within the Regional Geothermal Resource. This may include remediation or mitigation of existing adverse effects and/or protection from potential adverse effects in similar types of surface features (as listed in section 9B) in the same or other geothermal system to an extent commensurate with the adverse effect being caused ('like for like' mitigation).

Past takes, use, and discharge of geothermal energy in the Wairakei-Tauhara and Ohaaki geothermal systems have caused adverse effects on overlying structures and other natural and physical resources, including land subsidence, hydrothermal eruptions, and increases in concentrations of geothermal contaminants in the Waikato River. The potential for adverse effects on non-geothermal natural and physical resources to result from large-scale take, use, and discharge of geothermal energy and water is therefore recognised, and any such effects are required to be avoided, remedied or mitigated so that the cost of those adverse effects falls on those who cause them.

Policy 9.4 Limited Development Geothermal Systems

Limited Development Geothermal Systems shall be managed in a way that:

- a) allows sustainable and efficient use and development of geothermal resources;
- b) avoids, remedies or mitigates significant adverse effects from take, use or discharge of geothermal energy and water on non-geothermal natural and physical resources, including overlying structures; and

The relevant objectives are:

- 3.2 Resource use and development
- 3.3 Decision making
- 3.4 Health and wellbeing of the Waikato River
- 3.5 Energy
- 3.8 Ecosystem services
- 3.10 Sustainable and efficient use of resources
- 3.12 Built environment
- 3.17 Geothermal

- c) requires consent holders to remedy or mitigate any unintended significant effects occurring as a result of the exercise of a consent.

Implementation methods

9.4.1 Takes, discharges and other activities in Limited Development Geothermal Systems

Within Limited Development Geothermal Systems regional and district plans shall:

- a) ensure that existing takes of geothermal energy and water and associated discharges are provided for, providing there are no significant cumulative adverse effects;
- b) provide for takes and discharges of geothermal energy and water undertaken for scientific investigation or remediation or mitigation of existing adverse effects;
- c) ensure that any unintended significant adverse effects on Significant Geothermal Features occurring as a result of the exercise of a consent are remedied or mitigated;
- d) provide for and encourage the reinjection/injection of taken geothermal water in order to minimise adverse effects on fresh water bodies and targeted to limit adverse effects such as subsidence and land instability; and
- e) seek remediation of past adverse effects in Limited Development Geothermal Systems as mitigation for adverse effects in Development Geothermal Systems.

Explanation

Efficient and effective management of Limited Development Geothermal Systems is provided for by allowing managed takes and encouraging efficiency of use.

Take, use and discharge of geothermal energy and water are to be carefully managed to avoid significant adverse effects on Significant Geothermal Features. If any unintended significant adverse effects subsequently emerge, the consent holder is required to remedy or mitigate those effects.

There is potential for significant adverse environmental effects on other natural and physical resources including overlying structures to result from take, use, and discharge of geothermal energy and water. While there is currently little in the way of overlying development in the Limited Geothermal Development Systems, and hence the risks are low, there is a need to ensure that significant adverse effects are avoided, remedied or mitigated, and that the cost of those adverse effects falls on those who cause them.

Policy 9.5 Protected Geothermal Systems

Protected Geothermal Systems shall be managed in a way that:

- a) protects Significant Geothermal Features from adverse effects, including by maintaining the natural stocks and flows of geothermal energy and water including the flow of deep geothermal water to the surface; and
- b) encourages the protection of other geothermal features where they are valued for amenity, cultural or scientific reasons.

The relevant objectives are:

- 3.3 Decision making
- 3.4 Health and wellbeing of the Waikato River
- 3.5 Energy
- 3.8 Ecosystem services
- 3.10 Sustainable and efficient use of resources
- 3.17 Geothermal

Implementation methods

9.5.1 Takes, discharges and other activities in Protected Geothermal Systems

Regional and district plans shall, within Protected Geothermal Systems:

- a) allow the continuation of legally established, existing takes of geothermal energy or water and associated discharges, providing there are no significant adverse effects;
- b) prevent new takes of geothermal water and associated discharges;
- c) provide for limited new takes of geothermal energy;
- d) provide for takes and discharges undertaken for scientific investigation or the remediation or mitigation of existing adverse effects;
- e) regulate activities (other than takes and discharges of geothermal energy and water) in a manner that avoids any adverse effects on the sustainability of each geothermal system as a whole; and
- f) recognise the value of all geothermal features and where appropriate provide for their protection or remediation.

Explanation

Some large geothermal systems are identified as Protected Geothermal Systems. Within a protection framework they allow for scientific research, and for existing lawful uses that have not demonstrated any actual, potential, or cumulative adverse effects on Significant Geothermal Features. This status moves current and future users towards productively-efficient technology such as down-hole heat exchangers.

Adverse effects on Significant Geothermal Features in Protected Geothermal Systems are to be avoided. This includes adverse effects arising from take, use and discharge of geothermal energy and water. In addition, the protection of all geothermal features that are valued for amenity, cultural or scientific reasons is encouraged.

Policy 9.6 Research Geothermal Systems

Protect the geothermal characteristics of Research Geothermal Systems from long-term adverse effects by maintaining the natural stocks and flows of geothermal energy and water including the flow of deep geothermal water to the surface.

The relevant objectives are:

- 3.2 Resource use and development
- 3.3 Decision making
- 3.4 Health and wellbeing of the Waikato River
- 3.5 Energy
- 3.8 Ecosystem services
- 3.10 Sustainable and efficient use of resources
- 3.17 Geothermal

Implementation methods

9.6.1 Takes and discharges in Research Geothermal Systems

Regional plans shall, in Research Geothermal Systems:

- a) allow the continuation of legally established, existing takes of geothermal energy or water and associated discharges, providing there are no significant adverse effects;
- b) prevent new large-scale takes of geothermal water and associated discharges except as provided for in clause e) below;
- c) provide for limited new small- and medium-scale takes of geothermal energy and water where it can be demonstrated that they will not adversely affect the stocks and flow of geothermal energy and water;
- d) provide for takes and discharges undertaken for the remediation or mitigation of existing adverse effects; and
- e) provide for takes and discharges undertaken for scientific investigation, including for:
 - i) determining whether or not the system is connected to another;
 - ii) delineating the resistivity, hydrological and other boundaries of the system;
 - iii) determining other characteristics of the system such as heat and mass outflow, and gas and water chemistry; or
 - iv) identifying, mapping, or describing geothermal features and their characteristics within the system.

Explanation

Large systems about which not enough is known to define them as Development, Limited Development, or Protected Geothermal Systems are defined as Research Geothermal Systems. In these systems small uses and research are provided for. Any undiscovered large systems or parts of the Regional Geothermal Resource outside the mapped large system boundaries in the Waikato Regional Plan that do not meet the definition of a **Small Geothermal System** or that have not been shown to the satisfaction of the Waikato Regional Council to be strongly hydrologically connected to known Development Geothermal Systems will also fall automatically into this category. Classification as a Research Geothermal System is intended to be temporary, pending reclassification as a Development, Limited Development or Protected Geothermal System. Until enough is known to reclassify these systems, it is appropriate to adopt a precautionary approach and protect the geothermal characteristics.

Investigations that would be likely to have significant adverse effects on the characteristics of the system, Significant Geothermal Features and flowing geothermal features, and other natural and physical resources are not provided for. It is expected that any takes of geothermal fluid for research purposes (including well drilling and testing) will be of limited duration, for example, days or weeks rather than years. In this context, acceptable research includes but is not limited to matters listed in Matter 9.6.1 e).

Research requirements and existing uses in Research Geothermal Systems are recognised, and a move is signalled for current and future users towards productively-efficient technology such as down-hole heat exchangers. Some limited new extractive uses will be considered on a case-by-case basis. These measures avoid significant adverse effects on geothermal systems with particularly highly valued natural characteristics. The policy also ensures that in Research Geothermal Systems the natural geothermal characteristics are protected from adverse effects. It allows for scientific research, and for existing lawful uses that have not demonstrated any actual, potential, or cumulative adverse effects on Significant Geothermal Features, but discourages uses that involve extraction or discharge of water.

Policy 9.7 Small Geothermal Systems

Small Geothermal Systems shall be managed in a way that allows sustainable and efficient use and development.

Implementation methods

9.7.1 Takes, discharges and other uses in Small Geothermal Systems

The relevant objectives are:

- 3.2 *Resource use and development*
- 3.3 *Decision making*
- 3.4 *Health and wellbeing of the Waikato River*
- 3.5 *Energy*
- 3.8 *Ecosystem services*
- 3.10 *Sustainable and efficient use of resources*
- 3.17 *Geothermal*

Regional and district plans shall, within Small Geothermal Systems:

- a) provide for the continuation of existing small-scale takes of geothermal energy or fluid and associated discharges, providing there are no cumulative adverse effects;
- b) control the establishment of new takes of geothermal energy or fluid and associated discharges;
- c) provide for takes and discharges undertaken for scientific investigation or remediation or mitigation of existing adverse effects; and
- d) control other activities in a manner that enables assessment of whether significant adverse effects are avoided.

Explanation

The efficient and effective management of Small Geothermal Systems is provided for by allowing small takes and encouraging efficiency of use. Extractive uses that could

produce adverse effects on Significant Geothermal Features are regulated. The natural geothermal characteristics are to be protected from significant adverse effects arising from the take, use, and discharge of geothermal energy and fluid, while enabling productively efficient uses, appropriate to the size of the resource, that do not damage Significant Geothermal Features.

Policy 9.8 Geothermal characteristics valued by tāngata whenua

Recognise and provide for the **ahi kā (mana whenua)** relationship of tāngata whenua and their role as **kaitiaki** with the characteristics of particular **geothermal systems**, fields and **geothermal features**. Ensure that tāngata whenua identify specific resource management matters of traditional and contemporary cultural significance.

The relevant objectives are:

- 3.2 Resource use and development
- 3.3 Decision making
- 3.9 Relationship of tāngata whenua with the environment
- 3.17 Geothermal
- 3.18 Historic and cultural heritage

Implementation methods

9.8.1 Characteristics of the Regional Geothermal Resource significant to tāngata whenua

Waikato Regional Council will, in consultation with tāngata whenua:

- a) identify the characteristics of the Regional Geothermal Resource significant to tāngata whenua;
- b) identify threats to these characteristics; and
- c) provide strategies for avoiding, remedying, or mitigating these threats.

9.8.2 Hapū and iwi geothermal management plans

Local authorities should support, and where appropriate facilitate, the development of **hapū** and **iwi** geothermal management plans.

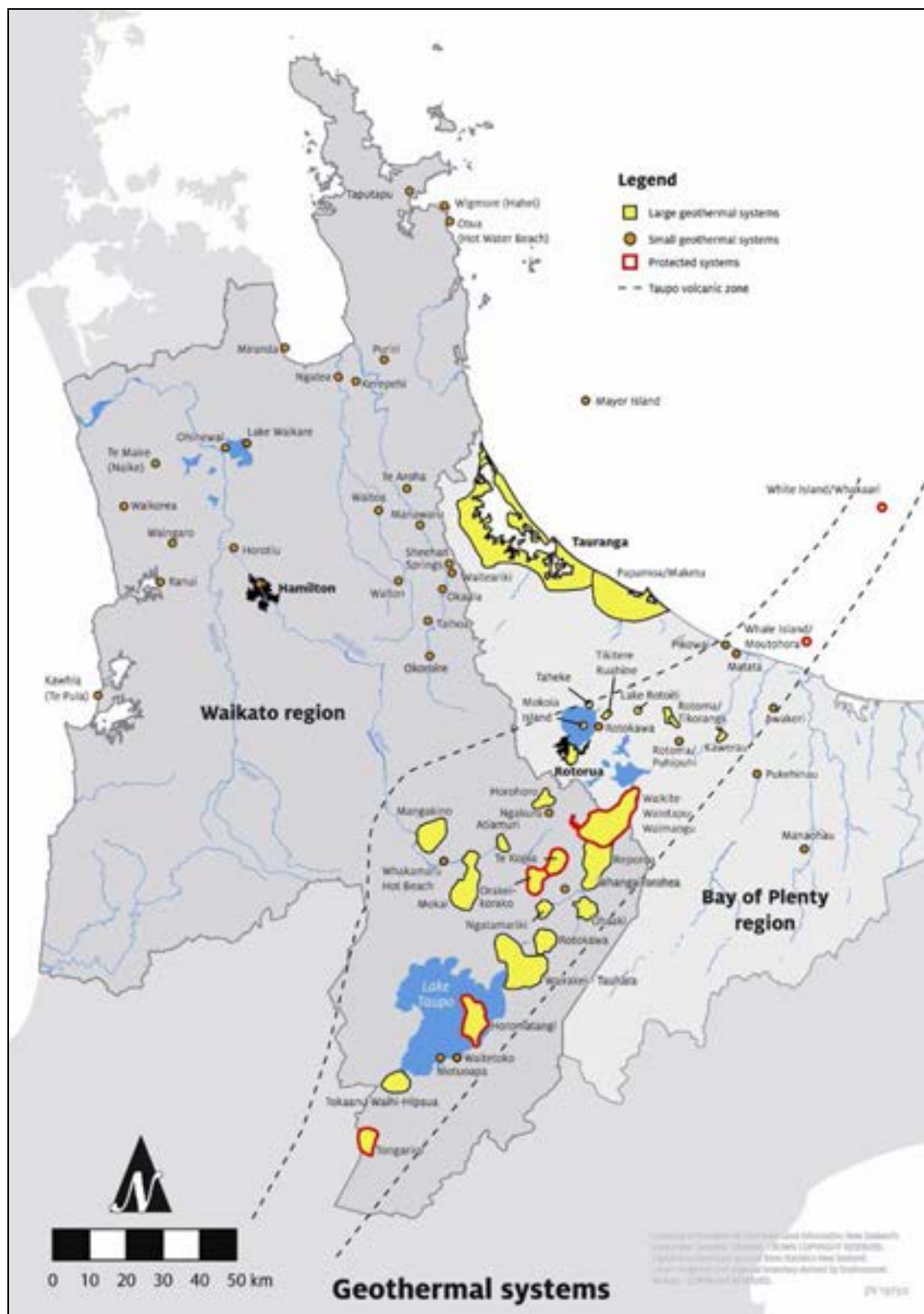
9.8.3 Statutory documents

Regional and district plans shall ensure that the **geothermal characteristics** valued by tāngata whenua are recognised and provided for.

Explanation

Māori have a special relationship with geothermal resources and consider them as **taonga**. This places an obligation on tāngata whenua as kaitiaki to ensure that geothermal resources are maintained and handed on to future generations in a healthy condition. Tāngata whenua with particular interest in geothermal resources include people from Waikato-Tainui, Ngāti Tūwharetoa, Raukawa, Te Arawa, and Hauraki.

9A Geothermal systems



Map 9-1: Geothermal systems

9B Significant Geothermal Feature types

Table 9-1: Significant Geothermal Feature types

Feature type	Definition
Geyser	Any naturally-occurring geothermal spring that occasionally or frequently erupts producing an intermittent or continuous discharge by the evolution of a phase dominated by steam or other gases, vigorous enough to eject forcefully liquid water by surging, boiling, throwing, splashing, or jetting it into the air above a static water level or vent opening. This includes hot water geysers, perpetual spouters, soda geysers, and crypto-geysers. The area of a geyser comprises that of the spring basin and the area covered (perhaps intermittently) by surface water composed of the undiluted discharge from the geyser, and by any sinter deposits created by that discharge.
Spring vigorously depositing sinter	Any naturally-occurring geothermal spring that vigorously deposits sinter on surfaces covered by its outflow, or any submerged geothermal spring that would be likely to vigorously deposit sinter if it were no longer submerged. The area of a spring vigorously depositing sinter comprises that of the spring basin, together with the area covered by any surface water composed of the undiluted outflow from the pool and any sinter deposits created by that outflow.
Recent sinter	Any sinter body that has received natural sinter deposition since 1900. This includes carbonate sinters (travertine). The area of a recent sinter body consists of that of all inter-connected sinter in a single occurrence and the land formations underlying it, and any naturally occurring geothermal spring that flows over the sinter body.
Geothermal habitat on heated ground or cooled acid ground	Any area of terrestrial habitat of thermotolerant indigenous species on current or formerly geothermally heated ground.
Habitat dependent on geothermally-altered atmosphere	Any area of terrestrial habitat of indigenous thermotolerant species that is tolerant of, or dependent on geothermal alteration of, atmospheric conditions.
Mud geyser	Any naturally-occurring geothermally heated mud pool that occasionally or frequently erupts. The eruption produces an intermittent or continuous discharge caused by the evolution of a phase dominated by steam or other gases. This must be vigorous enough to forcefully raise liquid mud by surging, boiling, throwing, splashing, or jetting it into the air above a static water level. This includes mud volcanoes exhibiting this behaviour. The area covered by a mud geyser includes the mud pool, its banks, and any mud formations built up by the ejection of mud from the pool.
Molten sulphur-producing spring	A hot spring whose water supply passes through elemental sulphur bearing rock at a temperature sufficiently high to melt the sulphur (119°C) and bring it to the surface.

Feature type	Definition
Superheated fumarole	Any naturally-occurring vent, including those found underwater, whose main discharge consists of steam and other gases of geothermal origin with a temperature greater than the local boiling temperature of water. The area of a fumarole consists of the vent, any surface accumulating mineral deposits derived from its gases, and any ecosystems dependent on the heat and fluid flowing from the vent.
Mud pool	Any naturally-occurring basin of turbid water or mud heated (or recently heated) by geothermal processes. The area of a mud pool comprises that of the pool itself, its banks, and any mud formations built up by the ejection of mud from the pool.
Geothermally-influenced aquatic habitat	Any area of naturally-occurring seasonal or permanent aquatic habitat of thermotolerant, thermophilic, or extremophilic indigenous species in a water body or part thereof influenced by natural geothermal input, or in a geothermally-influenced water body.
Geothermally-influenced water body	Any naturally-occurring wetland, lake, pool, or stream, or portion thereof (including the bed and banks), whose chemical or temperature profile is significantly influenced by natural geothermal input and which is either: • a standing water body of greater than 30 m² surface area, or • a flowing water body longer than 100 metres and with a flow greater than 0.1 m³/sec in which natural geothermal input has caused the water to have: • a temperature of greater than 30°C, or • a chloride concentration of greater than 120 g/m³, or • a sulphate concentration of greater than 60 g/m³, or • geothermal mineral deposition, measured at least 7 days after a significant rainfall event. In large or poorly mixed water bodies, only those portions which meet the above conditions are included in this definition.
Hydrothermal eruption crater	Any naturally-occurring crater produced by the explosive boiling of geothermal water without the direct involvement of near-surface magma, and by the consequent ejection of material derived from the rock matrix. The area of a hydrothermal eruption crater comprises that of the crater, its sides, and the ejecta deposited around the crater.
Culturally significant feature	Any geothermal surface feature, whether artificial, natural, or modified that is deemed significant following consideration of the criteria for determining significance of cultural heritage resources in section 10A of the Regional Policy Statement.

Table 9-1 lists Significant Geothermal Feature types. There are other Geothermal Features in the region that have not been included as significant. These include but are not limited to:

- fumaroles producing steam of less than 100°C;
- heated or steaming ground;
- geothermally altered ground;
- collapse pits;
- geothermal springs or seeps; and
- ancient sinter.

10 Heritage

Policy 10.1 Managing historic and cultural heritage

Provide for the collaborative, consistent and integrated management of **historic and cultural heritage** resources. Improve understanding, information sharing and cooperative planning to manage or protect heritage resources across the region.

Implementation methods

10.1.1 Regional heritage forum

Waikato Regional Council will facilitate the establishment of a Regional Heritage Forum with representatives of territorial authorities, **tāngata whenua**, Heritage New Zealand and other stakeholders (including landowner representatives) to develop and assess options for a framework for the management of historic and cultural heritage through a centralised heritage inventory.

10.1.2 Regional heritage inventory

The Regional Heritage Forum will facilitate the development of, and access to, an inventory of areas and places of historic and cultural heritage (Regional Heritage Inventory). This inventory will:

- a) collate and update existing inventories;
- b) include agency registrations and other items, objects, sites and places of cultural or historic interest;
- c) include the spatial identification of sites and link to detailed information about those sites;
- d) be used to monitor the condition and extent of heritage resources over time; and
- e) have regard to the conservation principles contained within the International Council on Monuments and Sites (ICOMOS), New Zealand Charter for the Conservation of Places of Cultural Heritage Value when preparing regional and district plans.

10.1.3 Identification and assessment

The Regional Heritage Inventory shall identify known sites, **structures**, areas, landscapes or places of historic or cultural heritage that require protection from inappropriate subdivision, use and development for inclusion in relevant regional or district plans. In doing so regard shall be had to the Heritage New Zealand register of historic places, historic areas and waahi tapu areas. The criteria provided in section 10A shall form the basis of any new assessment of historic and cultural heritage.

Explanation

Under the Resource Management Act, the protection of historic and cultural heritage from inappropriate use, subdivision and development is a matter of national importance. Historic and cultural heritage resources include those of importance for both cultural and historic reasons and could include sites, buildings, areas or landscapes.

As a region we are hampered in our management of heritage resources by a lack of common understanding on what heritage resources exist and what state they are in. There is also variation in how heritage resources are identified and managed. Good knowledge across the region is an important first step in effective integrated management of historic and cultural heritage. Method 10.1.3 targets improving

The relevant objectives are:

- 3.2 Resource use and development
- 3.3 Decision making
- 3.4 Health and wellbeing of the Waikato River
- 3.7 Coastal environment
- 3.9 Relationship of tāngata whenua with the environment
- 3.18 Historic and cultural heritage
- 3.21 Amenity

knowledge of the region's heritage through the identification of heritage resources in a consistent manner for future assessments.

The methods encourage the sharing of information, facilitate relationship building and ensure a co-ordinated multi-agency approach in dealing with specific common issues.

Policy 10.2 Relationship of Māori to taonga

Recognise and provide for the relationship of tāngata whenua and their culture and traditions with their ancestral lands, water, sites, **wāhi tapu** and other **taonga**.

The relevant objectives are:
 3.2 Resource use and development
 3.3 Decision making
 3.4 Health and wellbeing of the Waikato River
 3.9 Relationship of tāngata whenua with the environment
 3.18 Historic and cultural heritage

Implementation methods

10.2.1 Sensitive information

Waikato Regional Council will facilitate a process to assist tāngata whenua in developing and implementing systems to protect sensitive information whilst enabling landowners and local authorities to access information as appropriate.

10.2.2 Identification of taonga

Waikato Regional Council will encourage tāngata whenua to identify (using the criteria provided in section 10A) those areas, places, landscapes and resources of significance, including those with significant spiritual or cultural historic heritage values, and:

- a) appropriate protocols for the use of or access to them;
- b) opportunities to recognise or reflect the kōrero (stories), names, events, whakatauhāki (proverbs) and beliefs associated with them;
- c) opportunities to restore and enhance the relationship tāngata whenua have with them;
- d) any priorities for restoration and enhancement; and
- e) areas that should be monitored and the indicators to be used (**mātauranga Māori**) to measure the state of:
 - i) places, areas, sites or landscapes with significant spiritual or cultural historic heritage value;
 - ii) water bodies managed for cultural purposes;
 - iii) **pātaka kai**; and
 - iv) access requirements.

10.2.3 Maintaining or enhancing tāngata whenua relationships with their rohe

Local authorities should work with tāngata whenua to identify opportunities to maintain or enhance their relationship with their rohe through recognition, protection, maintenance or enhancement of Māori cultural landscapes and should provide for these within regional and district plans. This may include:

- a) the use of traditional place names;
- b) protection, enhancement and restoration of **mauri**;
- c) the use of appropriate plant species;
- d) appropriate access (use and enjoyment) for tāngata whenua; and
- e) incorporation of traditional or sympathetic design elements.

10.2.4 Information and advocacy

Waikato Regional Council will:

- a) undertake and support programmes and the provision of information that promotes awareness of Māori culture and heritage; and
- b) ensure that sites and resources of significance to Māori are added to the Regional Heritage Inventory where it is appropriate for this information to be made publicly available.

Explanation

Recognising and providing for the relationship of Māori and their culture and traditions with their ancestral lands, water, sites, wāhi tapu and other taonga, is a matter of national importance under the Resource Management Act.

It is expected that recognition will be given to the particular significance and meaning that taonga (including areas, places, landscapes and resources) can have to tāngata whenua through their historical and ongoing associations with an area.

The relationship of tāngata whenua with their rohe should be maintained or enhanced through the protection, maintenance or enhancement of Māori cultural landscapes. Māori cultural landscapes are less about the physical appearance of the land and more about the associations of tāngata whenua with the land, particularly within their rohe.

To Māori the physical landscape is inseparable from **tūpuna**, events, occupations and cultural practices. These dimensions are critical to cultural identity and sense of place. There are a number of practical measures by which tāngata whenua's relationship with an area can be recognised and, thereby, maintained or restored. This may range from using appropriate Māori names for roads or places; or using appropriate species when landscaping to restore (at least the appearance of) an area used traditionally for food or materials gathering; or, protecting the values of landscapes that span large areas like foothills, or traditional migration routes.

Policy 10.3 Effects of development on historic and cultural heritage

Manage subdivision, use and development to give recognition to historic and cultural heritage and to integrate it with development where appropriate.

The relevant objectives are:

- 3.2 Resource use and development
- 3.3 Decision making
- 3.18 Historic and cultural heritage

Implementation methods

10.3.1 Protect historic and cultural heritage from inappropriate subdivision use and development

Regional and district plans shall provide for the protection of historic and cultural heritage from inappropriate subdivision, use and development. Mechanisms may include:

- a) heritage alert layers;
- b) **accidental discovery protocols**;
- c) **cultural value assessments** and/or **cultural impact assessments**;
- d) conservation and open space covenants;
- e) **heritage orders**;
- f) financial and other incentives; and
- g) bonds and conditions of consent.

10.3.2 Inappropriate subdivision, use and development

In determining whether an activity is inappropriate, regional and district plans shall require that regard is given to:

- a) the character and degree of modification, damage, loss or destruction of heritage qualities;
- b) the duration and frequency of effect;
- c) the magnitude or scale of any effect on heritage qualities;
- d) the opportunities available to remedy or mitigate pre-existing or potential adverse effects on heritage qualities;
- e) the probability of damage to immediate or adjacent heritage qualities;
- f) the degree to which unique or special materials and/or craftsmanship are retained;
- g) whether the activity will lead to cumulative adverse effects on historic and cultural heritage;
- h) whether the relationships between distinct elements of a historic place, site or area will be maintained;
- i) whether the relationships between sites or areas of historic and cultural heritage to other sites or areas of historic and cultural heritage will be maintained;
- j) the irreversibility of adverse effects on heritage values including:
 - i) the loss of unique or rare features;
 - ii) opportunities for remediation;
 - iii) the costs and technical feasibility of remediation or mitigation;
 - iv) the relocation of heritage away from its original site or context;
 - v) the loss of value or integrity of historic places, sites or areas through lack of appropriate maintenance and management; and
 - vi) a significant reduction in the value of the historical, cultural and spiritual associations with historic and cultural heritage resources which are held by tāngata whenua and the wider community; and
- k) the resilience of heritage qualities or places to change including:
 - i) the ability of the feature to assimilate change; and
 - ii) the vulnerability of the feature to external effects;
- l) effects on the surroundings associated with significant heritage places and areas; and
- m) the requirement to retain the operational function of nationally and regionally significant transport **infrastructure**.

Explanation

Appropriate subdivision, use and development respects historic and cultural heritage values and can add value to and protect the heritage resources. Planning for the development and use of a historic resource therefore must be done with full understanding of its value. In addition, destruction of or damage to heritage resources needs to be avoided.

Policy 10.3 is not intended to prevent change to historic and cultural heritage but rather to ensure that change is carefully considered.

Collectively, this policy and its methods provide direction on the importance and nature of appropriate use of historic and cultural heritage and specify the framework for addressing the requirement to protect historic and cultural heritage from inappropriate subdivision, use and development.

10A Historic and cultural heritage assessment criteria

Table 10-1: Historic and cultural heritage assessment criteria

When assessing historic and cultural heritage, regard shall be given to the Heritage New Zealand register of historic places, historic areas and wāhi tapu areas and the following:

Archaeological qualities	
Information	The potential of the place or area to define or expand knowledge of earlier human occupation, activities or events through investigation using archaeological methods.
Research	The potential of the place or area to provide evidence to address archaeological research questions.
Recognition or Protection	The place or area is registered by Heritage New Zealand for its archaeological values, or is recorded by the New Zealand Archaeological Association Site Recording Scheme, or is an 'archaeological site' as defined by the Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga Act 2014.
Architectural Qualities	
Style or type	The style of the building or structure is representative of a significant development period in the region or the nation. The building or structure is associated with a significant activity (for example institutional, industrial, commercial or transportation).
Design	The building or structure has distinctive or special attributes of an aesthetic or functional nature. These may include massing, proportion, materials, detail, fenestration, ornamentation, artwork, functional layout, landmark status or symbolic value.
Construction	The building or structure uses unique or uncommon building materials, or demonstrates an innovative method of construction, or is an early example of the use of a particular building technique.
Designer or Builder	The building or structure's architect, designer, engineer or builder was a notable practitioner or made a significant contribution to the region or nation.
Cultural Qualities	
Sentiment	The place or area is important as a focus of spiritual, political, national or other cultural sentiment.
Identity	The place or area is a context for community identity or sense of place, and provides evidence of cultural or historical continuity.
Amenity or Education	The place or area has symbolic or commemorative significance to people who use or have used it, or to the descendants of such people. The interpretative capacity of the place or area and its potential to increase understanding of past lifestyles or events.
Historic Qualities	
Associative Value	The place or area has a direct association with, or relationship to, a person, group, institution, event or activity that is of historical significance to Waikato or the nation.
Historical Pattern	The place or area is associated with broad patterns of local or national history, including development and settlement patterns, early or important transportation routes, social or economic trends and activities.
Scientific Qualities	
Information	The potential for the place or area to contribute information about an historic figure, event, phase or activity.
Potential – Scientific Research	The degree to which the place or area may contribute further information and the importance of the data involved, its rarity, quality or representativeness.
Technological Qualities	
Technical Achievement	The place or area shows a high degree of creative or technical achievement at a particular time or is associated with scientific or technical innovations or achievements.

Table 10-2: Māori culture and traditions assessment criteria

<i>Mauri</i>	Ko te mauri me te mana o te wāhi, te taonga rānei, e ngākaunuitia ana e te Māori. The mauri (for example life force) and mana (for example prestige) of the place or resource holds special significance to Māori.
<i>Wāhi tapu</i>	Ko tērā wāhi, taonga rānei he wāhi tapu, arā, he tino whakahirahira ki ngā tikanga, ki ngā puri mahara, ki te taha wairua hoki o te Māori. The place or resource is a wāhi tapu of special, cultural, historic and or spiritual importance to Māori.
<i>Kōrero-o-mua historical</i>	Ko tērā wāhi e ngākaunuitia ana e te Māori ki roto i ōna kōrero-o-mua me ōna tikanga. The place has special historical and cultural significance to Māori.
<i>Rawa tūturu customary resources</i>	He wāhi tērā e kawea ai ngā rawa tūturu a te Māori. The place provides important customary resources for Māori.
<i>Hiahiatanga tūturu customary needs</i>	He wāhi tērā e pupuru nei i ngā tikanga ahurea, wairua hoki o te Māori. The place or resource is a venue or repository for Māori cultural practices and spiritual values.
<i>Whakaaronui o te wa contemporary esteem</i>	He wāhi rongonui tērā ki ngā Māori, arā, he wāhi whakaahuru, he wāhi whakawaihanga, he wāhi tuku mātauranga rānei . The place has special amenity, architectural or educational significance to Māori.

Explanation of terms:

Hiahiatanga tūturu means those parts of the landscape that are important for the exercise of **tikanga** – the principles and practices to maintain the **mauri** of parts of the natural world. This might be a place where a particular ritual is performed or a particular feature that is noted for its ability to identify the boundaries of ancestral tribal lands that is acknowledged in **iwi** or **hapū** oratory.

Kōrero-o-mua refer to places that are important due to particular historical and traditional associations (in pre-European history).

Rawa tūturu means the cultural value of places that provide, or once provided, important customary resources to tāngata whenua. Customary resources might include food and materials necessary to sustain life in pre-European and post-European times.

Whakaaronui o te wa refers to the contemporary relationships tāngata whenua have with Māori heritage places. Appreciation of features for their beauty, pleasantness, and aesthetic values is important to tāngata whenua. Recreational values attributed to features are also important to tāngata whenua as they illustrate the relationship that individuals and groups can have with the environment.

11 Indigenous biodiversity

Scope and application of Chapter 11

Policy 11.1 and its associated methods apply to all **indigenous biodiversity** across the region, with the exception of Method 11.1.3 which does not apply to significant indigenous biodiversity.

Policy 11.2 and associated methods apply specifically to significant indigenous biodiversity.

Notwithstanding the above, Chapter 11 does not apply to indigenous biodiversity that forms part of geothermal features within Development Geothermal Systems or Limited Development Geothermal Systems (these are subject to Chapter 9).

Policy 11.1 Maintain or enhance indigenous biodiversity

Promote positive indigenous biodiversity outcomes to maintain the **full range of ecosystem types** and maintain or enhance their spatial extent as necessary to achieve healthy ecological functioning of ecosystems, with a particular focus on:

- a) working towards achieving **no net loss** of indigenous biodiversity at a regional scale;
- b) the continued functioning of ecological processes;
- c) the re-creation and restoration of habitats and connectivity between habitats;
- d) supporting (buffering and/or linking) ecosystems, habitats and areas identified as significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitats of indigenous fauna;
- e) providing **ecosystem services**;
- f) the health and wellbeing of the Waikato River and its **catchment**;
- g) contribution to **natural character** and **amenity values**;
- h) **tāngata whenua** relationships with indigenous biodiversity including their holistic view of ecosystems and the environment;
- i) managing the density, range and viability of indigenous flora and fauna; and
- j) the consideration and application of biodiversity **offsets**.

The relevant objectives are:

- 3.1 *Integrated management*
- 3.2 *Resource use and development*
- 3.4 *Health and wellbeing of the Waikato River*
- 3.7 *Coastal environment*
- 3.8 *Ecosystem services*
- 3.9 *Relationship of tāngata whenua with the environment*
- 3.12 *Built environment*
- 3.14 *Mauri and values of fresh water bodies*
- 3.16 *Riparian areas and wetlands*
- 3.19 *Ecological integrity and indigenous biodiversity*
- 3.21 *Amenity*
- 3.22 *Natural character*

Implementation methods

11.1.1 Maintain or enhance indigenous biodiversity

Regional and district plans shall maintain or enhance indigenous biodiversity, including by:

- a) providing for positive indigenous biodiversity outcomes when managing activities including subdivision and land use change;
- b) having regard to any local indigenous biodiversity strategies developed under Method 11.1.11; and
- c) creating buffers, linkages and corridors to protect and support indigenous biodiversity values, including esplanade reserves and esplanade strips to maintain and enhance indigenous biodiversity values.

11.1.2 Adverse effects on indigenous biodiversity

Regional and district plans shall recognise that adverse effects on indigenous biodiversity within terrestrial, freshwater and coastal environments are cumulative and may include:

- a) fragmentation and isolation of indigenous ecosystems and habitats;
- b) reduction in the extent and quality of indigenous ecosystems and habitats;
- c) loss of corridors or connections linking indigenous ecosystems and habitat fragments or between ecosystems and habitats;
- d) the loss of **ecological sequences**;
- e) loss or disruption to migratory pathways in water, land or air;
- f) effects of changes to hydrological flows, water levels, and water quality on ecosystems;
- g) loss of buffering of indigenous ecosystems;
- h) loss of ecosystem services;
- i) loss, damage or disruption to ecological processes, functions and ecological integrity;
- j) changes resulting in an increased threat from animal and plant pests;
- k) effects which contribute to a cumulative loss or degradation of indigenous habitats and ecosystems;
- l) noise, visual and physical disturbance on indigenous species, particularly within the **coastal environment**; and
- m) loss of habitat that supports or provides a key life-cycle function for indigenous species listed as 'Threatened' or 'At Risk' in the New Zealand Threat Classification System lists.

11.1.3 Avoidance, remediation, mitigation and offsetting (for indigenous biodiversity that is not significant)

Regional and district plans:

- a) for non-significant indigenous vegetation and non-significant habitats of indigenous fauna (excluding activities pursuant to 11.1.4):
 - i) shall require that where loss or degradation of indigenous biodiversity is authorised adverse effects are avoided, remedied or mitigated (whether by onsite or offsite methods).
 - ii) should promote biodiversity offsets as a means to achieve no net loss of indigenous biodiversity where significant residual adverse effects are unable to be avoided, remedied or mitigated.
 - iii) when considering remediation, mitigation or offsetting, methods may include the following:
 - i. replacing the indigenous biodiversity that has been lost or degraded;
 - i. replacing like-for-like habitats or ecosystems (including being of at least equivalent size or ecological value);
 - ii. the legal and physical protection of existing habitat;
 - iii. the re-creation of habitat; or
 - iv. replacing habitats or ecosystems with indigenous biodiversity of greater ecological value.
- b) for significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitats of indigenous fauna Method 11.2.2 applies.

11.1.4 Recognition of activities having minor adverse effects on indigenous biodiversity

Regional and district plans should include permitted activities where they will have minor adverse effects in relation to the maintenance or protection of indigenous biodiversity. They may include:

- a) the maintenance, operation and upgrading of lawfully established **infrastructure**, regionally significant infrastructure and lawfully established activities using **natural and physical resources** of regional or national importance;
- b) existing lawfully established uses of land where the effects of such land use remain the same or similar in character, intensity and scale;
- c) activities undertaken for the purpose of maintenance or enhancement of indigenous biodiversity;
- d) the collection of material for maintaining traditional Māori cultural practices; and
- e) actions necessary to avoid loss of life, injury or serious damage to property.

11.1.5 Information gathering

Waikato Regional Council will:

- a) collect, analyse and make available the following information for each district and for the region as a whole:
 - i) extent of the remaining indigenous habitat and ecosystems;
 - ii) extent of indigenous habitat and ecosystem loss (from 1840 baseline);
 - iii) ecosystem health and condition; and
 - iv) indigenous biodiversity trends, including in relation to no net loss;
- b) facilitate the establishment of baselines and indicators for ecosystem health and condition; and
- c) utilise monitoring information to track progress, monitor policy and plan effectiveness and inform review of regulatory and non-regulatory methods.

11.1.6 Biodiversity inventory

Waikato Regional Council will collaborate with territorial authorities, tāngata whenua and other stakeholders, to establish and maintain a biodiversity inventory for use in advocacy, education, information provision, policy development and decision making.

11.1.7 Threatened species information

Local authorities should liaise with the Department of Conservation and other relevant agencies to ensure location and distribution data for species listed as 'Threatened' or 'At Risk' in the New Zealand Threat Classification System lists are available when preparing and implementing regional or district plans.

11.1.8 Plan development

Local authorities should consider (including when developing regional and district plans):

- a) offering incentives for indigenous biodiversity enhancements or protection; and
- b) using financial contributions and other economic instruments to maintain or enhance indigenous biodiversity.

11.1.9 Pest management

When preparing any Regional Pest Management Strategy and prioritising pest management activities, Waikato Regional Council will have regard to indigenous biodiversity values, including any areas of significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitats of indigenous fauna, and any local indigenous biodiversity strategies.

11.1.10 Funding and assistance

When preparing long-term plans and annual plans, local authorities should ensure that appropriate funding is provided for the protection and enhancement of indigenous biodiversity. This could include provision for:

- a) developing and implementing complementary biodiversity advocacy and protection programmes (including the development of on-site biodiversity plans) focused on landowner liaison and community partnership;

- b) the promotion of voluntary legal protection, restoration or enhancement of indigenous biodiversity, including through the operation of contestable funds, incentives, rates relief and grants;
- c) land acquisition; and
- d) biodiversity restoration and enhancement on public land such as local purpose reserves.

11.1.11 Local indigenous biodiversity strategies

Waikato Regional Council will assist territorial authorities to develop local indigenous biodiversity strategies. These strategies will be developed at a district scale and will:

- a) use the information produced under Methods 11.1.5 and 11.2.1;
- b) establish indigenous biodiversity targets to enable local authorities to prioritise resourcing, track progress and monitor effectiveness in achieving indigenous biodiversity objectives;
- c) identify:
 - i) opportunities and priorities for re-creating habitat;
 - ii) opportunities and priorities for restoring, enhancing or re-creating buffers, linkages and corridors; and
 - iii) important threats to indigenous biodiversity;
- d) identify areas or sites:
 - i) of indigenous biodiversity value;
 - ii) that may require protection; and
 - iii) that may require enhancement;
- e) involve working with tāngata whenua, affected landowners and resource managers, and other key stakeholders; and
- f) assist in determining the regulatory and non-regulatory framework, including how territorial authorities will contribute to working towards achieving no net loss at a regional scale to maintain or enhance indigenous biodiversity.

Local authorities should have regard to these strategies when considering the most appropriate combination of regulatory and non-regulatory methods for each district.

Explanation

Policy 11.1 guides Waikato Regional Council and territorial authorities to maintain indigenous biodiversity wherever it occurs. An important component of the policy direction is to work towards no net loss for all indigenous biodiversity at a regional scale. The policy is also important where ecosystems have been depleted and fragmented, such as coastal and lowland ecosystems, and where maintaining indigenous biodiversity in the long term requires enhancement and restoration. The Policy will be implemented through a combination of both regulatory and non-regulatory mechanisms. This provides the flexibility to manage the varying local contexts and take into account the positive effects that some activities may have on indigenous biodiversity. Examples of this include positive effects from riparian planting.

Method 11.1.1 recognises that there is a range of mechanisms by which regional and district plans can maintain or enhance indigenous biodiversity when managing the effects of activities. Such mechanisms can provide the flexibility to cope with varying local situations or locally specific types of activities, such as within the cycles of plantation forestry.

Method 11.1.2 provides guidance on adverse effects to be avoided, remedied, mitigated and offset when managing the effects of activities.

No net loss of indigenous biodiversity is to be achieved at a regional scale and does not create a no adverse effects regime. Some activities may result in a loss of indigenous biodiversity; however this will be countered by other regulatory and non-regulatory methods that result in positive indigenous biodiversity outcomes. For non-

significant indigenous biodiversity Method 11.1.3 seeks that district and regional plans avoid, remedy or mitigate adverse effects first, before promoting offsetting. Method 11.1.3 provides a more flexible approach to offsetting and no net loss than Method 11.2.2 which applies to areas of significant indigenous biodiversity.

Method 11.1.4 provides a list of activities that may be provided for as permitted activities in regional and district plans where their effects are minor.

Methods 11.1.5 to 11.1.11 provide a range of non-regulatory approaches intended to allow councils to work collaboratively and strategically to identify opportunities and priorities for enhancement and restoration activities, and to ensure that they have appropriate funding mechanisms, incentives and information to achieve positive indigenous biodiversity outcomes. Method 11.1.5 recognises that ecosystem health is an integral component of ecosystem functioning, and that establishing appropriate methodology and baseline data will enable this to be monitored.

Method 11.1.11 helps determine the most appropriate mix of regulatory and non-regulatory methods to address biodiversity management for each district. This method will help to clarify how a no net loss approach should be applied within the broader strategic picture of district-wide indigenous biodiversity maintenance and enhancement. The Method is also important for determining how each district can contribute to no net loss at a regional scale.

Policy 11.2 Protect significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitats of indigenous fauna

The relevant objectives are:
 3.1 *Integrated management*
 3.19 *Ecological integrity and indigenous biodiversity*

Significant indigenous vegetation and the significant habitats of indigenous fauna shall be protected by ensuring the characteristics that contribute to its significance are not adversely affected to the extent that the significance of the vegetation or habitat is reduced.

Implementation methods

11.2.1 Identify areas of significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitats of indigenous fauna

For the purposes of identifying areas of significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitats of indigenous fauna, Waikato Regional Council will identify areas of significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitats of indigenous fauna at the regional scale (significant natural areas) and make this information available to territorial authorities.

11.2.2 Protect areas of significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitats of indigenous fauna

Regional and district plans shall (excluding activities pursuant to 11.1.4):

- a) protect areas of significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitats of indigenous fauna;
- b) require that activities avoid the loss or degradation of areas of significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitats of indigenous fauna in preference to remediation or mitigation;
- c) require that any unavoidable adverse effects on areas of significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitats of indigenous fauna are remedied or mitigated;
- d) where any adverse effects are unable to be avoided, remedied or mitigated in accordance with (b) and (c), more than minor residual adverse effects shall be offset to achieve no net loss; and

- e) ensure that remediation, mitigation or offsetting as a first priority relates to the indigenous biodiversity that has been lost or degraded (whether by on-site or off-site methods). Methods may include the following:
 - i) replace like-for-like habitats or ecosystems (including being of at least equivalent size or ecological value);
 - ii) involve the re-creation of habitat;
 - iii) develop or enhance areas of alternative habitat supporting similar ecology/significance; or
 - iv) involve the legal and physical protection of existing habitat;
- f) recognise that remediation, mitigation and offsetting may not be appropriate where the indigenous biodiversity is rare, at risk, threatened or irreplaceable; and
- g) have regard to the functional necessity of activities being located in or near areas of significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitats of indigenous fauna where no reasonably practicable alternative location exists.

11.2.3 Assess significance

Where regional and district plans require an assessment of significant indigenous vegetation and the significant habitats of indigenous fauna that have not been identified by Waikato Regional Council as part of Method 11.2.1, the criteria in section 11A shall be used. The identification of the characteristics of any area will be undertaken prior to any modification of the area or site and will inform the decision-making process as to whether the proposed activity or modification is appropriate. The characteristics that have contributed to an area being significant should also be communicated to the relevant landowners and kept on record by the **local authority**.

11.2.4 Identify threats to areas of significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitats of indigenous fauna

Waikato Regional Council will identify important threats to those areas identified in Method 11.2.1 and work with relevant agencies and landowners to facilitate the management of these threats.

Explanation

Policy 11.2 addresses the requirements of s6(c) of the Resource Management Act to protect areas of **significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitat of indigenous fauna** in terrestrial, freshwater, coastal and marine environments. The policy and methods recognise that protection of these areas requires that the areas and the characteristics that deem them to be significant are identified, that identification should be carried out in a consistent manner across the region, and that protection will be achieved through both regulatory and non-regulatory methods. Protection of significant sites need not prevent their use where activities will not materially compromise the characteristics or values which deemed the site significant. The enhancement of ecosystem types as identified in Policy 11.1 also applies to significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitats of indigenous fauna in Policy 11.2.

The intention is for areas of significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitat of indigenous fauna to be identified either at a regional scale by Waikato Regional Council (significant natural areas project), or as a consequence of managing activities through regional and district plans (Method 11.2.2). It is important that regional and district plan provisions provide for the identification of additional areas, including those not identified in Method 11.2.1 which are difficult to detect at the regional scale due to limitations in technology. A diagram in section 11B summarises the respective roles and responsibilities. The identification of significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitats of indigenous fauna by the Regional Council has been undertaken in accordance with 11A and Table 11-1 criteria, through district-scale vegetation mapping, assessment and review of sites, fauna and vegetation studies, scientific research, primarily as a desktop analysis to which varying degrees of confidence are assigned. Before information is included in regional or district plans further verification and

validation may be required to confirm whether the identified areas meet the criteria for significance in section 11A.

Method 11.2.2 reflects a more directive approach to achieving no net loss for areas of significant indigenous biodiversity than Method 11.1.3. This is consistent with s6(c) of the Resource Management Act which requires protection of such biodiversity. The Method seeks avoidance of adverse effects as the most effective means of protecting areas of significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitat of indigenous fauna. It recognises that some loss of or damage to those areas may be unavoidable and in those cases remediation and mitigation is required. Where adverse effects remain after avoidance, remediation and mitigation then more than minor adverse effects are required to be offset. Any loss can be documented and tracked to assist with monitoring the state of the resource.

When applying Method 11.2.2, the expectation is that proposals should reasonably demonstrate that no net loss has been achieved using methodology that is appropriate and commensurate to the scale and intensity of the adverse effects. The application of biodiversity offsetting will be determined on a case by case basis through the decision-making processes.

Method 11.2.2(g) requires that plans shall have regard to the necessity for certain activities to locate in areas of significant indigenous biodiversity where the presence of another resource leads to a functional need for the activity to locate there. Clause (g) does not provide activities with an exemption from the other clauses within Method 11.2.2, it is another matter to be considered through the decision-making process as appropriate.

Method 11.2.3 requires use of the criteria in section 11A to achieve consistency across the region when assessing significance. An area will be considered significant if it meets one or more of the eleven criteria in section 11A.

During the process of identifying areas of significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitat of indigenous fauna, Waikato Regional Council will have the opportunity to identify general threats to the biodiversity at those sites. This information will not be a detailed threat analysis of every site, but Method 11.2.4 signals that the information will be provided to relevant agencies and landowners so that it can be used to direct management of these sites. Information should be managed so that it does not compromise the protection of populations of threatened species.

Map 11C has been inserted as a result of Environment Court decision *Opoutere Ratepayers and Residents Association v Waikato Regional Council* [2015] NZEnvC 126, which found, after rigorous testing through the Environment Court hearing process, that the area shown is a significant natural ecosystem and site of biological importance. The area identified in Map 11C should not be considered as being of greater significance or importance than other areas in the region that have been identified through the process set out under Policy 11.2 and the associated methods.

Policy 11.3 Collaborative management

Maintaining and enhancing indigenous biodiversity shall be promoted in an integrated and efficient manner including by working collaboratively with landowners, resource managers, *tāngata whenua* and other stakeholders.

Implementation methods

11.3.1 Working with *tāngata whenua*

Local authorities should recognise *tāngata whenua* relationships with indigenous biodiversity. This could include involving *tāngata whenua*

The relevant objectives are:

- 3.2 *Resource use and development*
- 3.3 *Decision making*
- 3.4 *Health and wellbeing of the Waikato River*
- 3.9 *Relationship of *tāngata whenua* with the environment*
- 3.19 *Ecological integrity and indigenous biodiversity*

when identifying opportunities for re-creating habitat and providing opportunities for tāngata whenua involvement in implementing local indigenous biodiversity strategies.

11.3.2 Education and advocacy

Waikato Regional Council will:

- a) work with resource managers and industry to encourage the adoption of best practice biodiversity management practices (including the recognition of local indigenous biodiversity strategies) into their management/operational plans;
- b) advocate to relevant agencies and landowners the use and requirements of other legislation (such as the Wildlife Act 1953 and the need for permits to destroy or disturb protected wildlife, Conservation Act 1987, Fisheries Act 1983, Biosecurity Act 1993) or available funding mechanisms to protect or restore areas of indigenous habitats and biodiversity; and
- c) work with territorial authorities, landowners, tāngata whenua and other relevant stakeholders to promote positive indigenous biodiversity outcomes and improve understanding of the importance and benefits of improved indigenous biodiversity.

Explanation

Policy 11.3 recognises the importance of engaging with landowners, resource managers, tāngata whenua and other key stakeholders when seeking positive biodiversity outcomes through Policies 11.1, 11.2 and 11.4. The collaborative approach is relevant to both plan preparation and implementation, as well as when carrying out other work programmes. It is intended that a collaborative approach will facilitate identification of opportunities for involvement and ways to empower tāngata whenua and resource managers to improve their knowledge of indigenous biodiversity and to promote successful maintenance and restoration practices.

Policy 11.4 Safeguard coastal/marine ecosystems

Protect indigenous biodiversity in the **coastal environment** by:

- a) avoiding adverse effects on:
 - i) indigenous **taxa** listed as 'Threatened' or 'At Risk' in the New Zealand Threat Classification System lists or taxa¹ listed as threatened by the International Union of Nature and Natural Resources;
 - ii) habitats of indigenous species where the species are listed as Threatened or At Risk, are at the limit of their natural range, or are naturally rare;
 - iii) areas containing nationally significant examples of indigenous community types;
 - iv) indigenous ecosystems and vegetation types that are threatened in the coastal environment, or are naturally rare; and
 - v) areas set aside for full or partial protection of indigenous biological diversity under legislation².
- b) maintaining or enhancing:
 - i) areas used by marine mammals and wading/coastal birds including breeding, feeding, roosting and haul-out sites (areas where marine mammals come ashore);

The relevant objectives are:

- 3.1 Integrated management
- 3.3 Decision making
- 3.7 Coastal environment
- 3.16 Riparian areas and wetlands
- 3.19 Ecological integrity and indigenous biodiversity
- 3.21 Amenities
- 3.22 Natural character

¹ Taxa refers to named biological classification units assigned to individuals or sets of species (e.g. species, subspecies, genus) and examples of indigenous taxa listed as Threatened or At Risk within the Waikato Region include Maui's Dolphin, Bryde's Whale and Archey's Frog (nationally critical), Moehau Stag beetle and Kokako (nationally endangered), NZ Falcon and Long-tailed bat (nationally vulnerable), and North Island Brown Kiwi (serious decline),

² Including, for example, the West Coast North Island Marine Mammal Sanctuary.

- ii) whitebait spawning areas and shellfish beds;
- iii) habitats, corridors and routes important for preserving the abundance and diversity of indigenous and migratory species;
- iv) indigenous habitats and ecosystems that are unique to the coastal environment and vulnerable to modification and the impacts of climate change, including estuaries, lagoons, coastal **wetlands**, dunelands, rocky reef systems, seagrass and saltmarsh;
- vi) habitats of indigenous species that are important for recreational, commercial, traditional or cultural purposes; and
- vii) areas of predominately indigenous vegetation in the coastal environment.

Implementation methods

11.4.1 Regional and district plans

Regional and district plans shall:

- a) protect marine habitat in the **coastal marine area** that has been identified as an area of significant indigenous biodiversity in Method 11.2.1; and
- b) control the adverse effects, including cumulative effects, of activities within the coastal environment to protect and enhance indigenous biodiversity so as to give effect to Policy 11.4.

11.4.2 Marine protected areas

Waikato Regional Council will support and advocate for a network of marine protected areas that is comprehensive and represents the region's marine habitats and ecosystems.

Explanation

Policy 11.4 specifically identifies values and characteristics of coastal and marine ecosystems because, in addition to the intrinsic values of the habitats and the biodiversity present, these ecosystems are receiving environments for sediment and **contaminants** arising from the use and management of land. Policy 11.4 recognises the critical importance of indigenous taxa that are identified as Threatened or At Risk in the New Zealand Threat Classification System, along with their habitats. Threatened taxa include those that are nationally critical, nationally endangered or nationally vulnerable. At Risk taxa include those that are declining, recovering, relict or naturally uncommon. There are a number of Threatened or At Risk taxa in the Waikato Region (see Footnote 1 to Policy 11.4(a)(i)) and of those, Maui's dolphin is one of the most important as it is facing potential extinction.

Policy 11.4 is a sub-set of the broader policy directions of Policy 11.1 and, as such, the methods to implement Policy 11.1 may also apply to Policy 11.4. It is intended that areas of significant indigenous biodiversity within the coastal environment are identified within those addressed by Policy 11.2, and Methods 11.4.1 and 11.4.2 identify that link as well as recognising the benefits of protecting representative marine habitats and ecosystems in a marine areas network. Method 11.4.1 also provides for a regulatory approach to maintain other indigenous biodiversity in the coastal environment.

11A Criteria for determining significance of indigenous biodiversity

The following criteria are to be used to identify areas of significant indigenous biodiversity and their characteristics as they exist at the time the criteria are being applied. Criteria may be specific to a habitat type including water, land or airspace or be more inclusive to address connectivity, or movement of species across habitat types.

To be identified as significant an area needs to meet one or more of the criteria identified in the table below.

Areas of significant indigenous biodiversity shall not include areas that have been created and subsequently maintained for or in connection with:

- artificial **structures** (unless they have been created specifically or primarily for the purpose of protecting or enhancing biodiversity); or
- beach nourishment and coastal planting (unless they have been created specifically or primarily for the purpose of protecting or enhancing biodiversity).

Table 11-1: Criteria for determining significance of indigenous biodiversity

Previously assessed site	
1.	It is indigenous vegetation or habitat for indigenous fauna that is currently, or is recommended to be, set aside by statute or covenant or by the Nature Heritage Fund, or Ngā Whenua Rāhui committees, or the Queen Elizabeth the Second National Trust Board of Directors, specifically for the protection of biodiversity, and meets at least one of criteria 3-11.
Ecological values	
2	In the Coastal Marine Area, it is indigenous vegetation or habitat for indigenous fauna that has reduced in extent or degraded due to historic or present anthropogenic activity to a level where the ecological sustainability of the ecosystem is threatened.
3.	It is vegetation or habitat that is currently habitat for indigenous species or associations of indigenous species that are: • classed as threatened or at risk, or • endemic to the Waikato region, or • at the limit of their natural range.
4.	It is indigenous vegetation, habitat or ecosystem type that is under-represented (20% or less of its known or likely original extent remaining) in an Ecological District, or Ecological Region, or nationally.
5.	It is indigenous vegetation or habitat that is, and prior to human settlement was, nationally uncommon such as geothermal, chenier plain, or karst ecosystems, hydrothermal vents or cold seeps.
6.	It is wetland habitat for indigenous plant communities and/or indigenous fauna communities (excluding exotic rush/pasture communities) that has not been created and subsequently maintained for or in connection with: • waste treatment; • wastewater renovation; • hydro electric power lakes (excluding Lake Taupō); • water storage for irrigation; or • water supply storage; unless in those instances they meet the criteria in Whaley et al. (1995).
7.	It is an area of indigenous vegetation or naturally occurring habitat that is large relative to other examples in the Waikato region of similar habitat types, and which contains all or almost all indigenous species typical of that habitat type. Note this criterion is not intended to select the largest example only in the Waikato region of any habitat type.
8.	It is aquatic habitat (excluding artificial water bodies, except for those created for the maintenance and enhancement of biodiversity or as mitigation as part of a consented activity) that is within a stream, river, lake, groundwater system, wetland, intertidal mudflat or estuary, or any other part of the coastal marine area and their margins, that is critical to the self sustainability of an indigenous species within a catchment of the Waikato region, or within the coastal marine area. In this context "critical" means essential for a specific component of the life cycle and includes breeding and spawning grounds, juvenile nursery areas, important feeding areas and migratory and dispersal pathways of an indigenous species. This includes areas that maintain connectivity between habitats.
9.	It is an area of indigenous vegetation or habitat that is a healthy and representative example of its type because: • its structure, composition, and ecological processes are largely intact; and • if protected from the adverse effects of plant and animal pests and of adjacent land and water use (e.g. stock, discharges, erosion, sediment disturbance), can maintain its ecological sustainability over time.
10.	It is an area of indigenous vegetation or habitat that forms part of an ecological sequence , that is either not common in the Waikato region or an ecological district, or is an exceptional, representative example of its type.
Role in protecting ecologically significant area	
11.	It is an area of indigenous vegetation or habitat for indigenous species (which habitat is either naturally occurring or has been established as a mitigation measure) that forms, either on its own or in combination with other similar areas, an ecological buffer, linkage or corridor and which is necessary to protect any site identified as significant under criteria 1-10 from external adverse effects.

11B Significant indigenous biodiversity roles and responsibilities

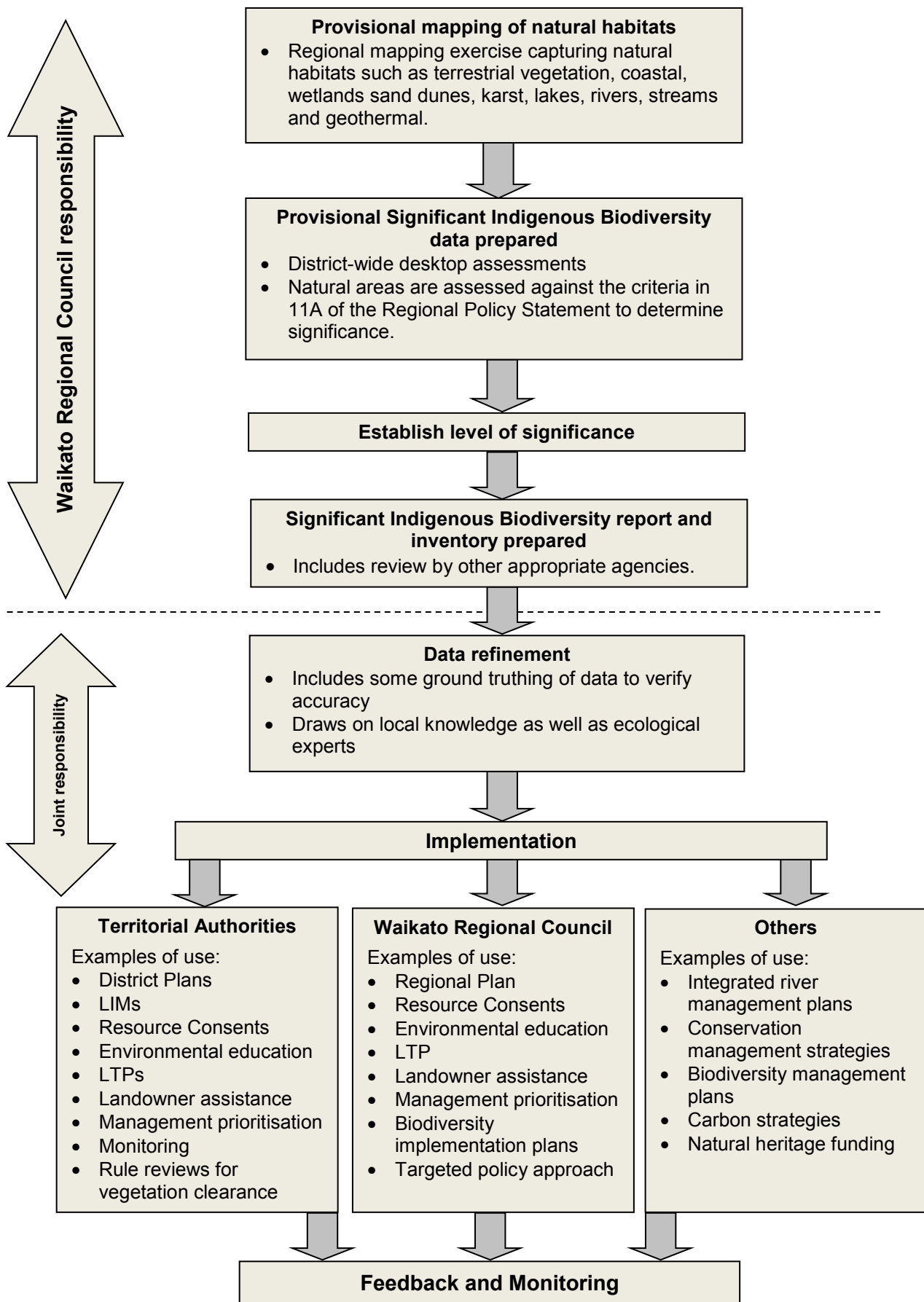


Figure 11: Significant indigenous biodiversity roles and responsibilities



Page 11-13

12 Landscape (including seascape), natural character and amenity

Policy 12.1 Outstanding natural features and landscapes

Identified values and characteristics of outstanding natural features and landscapes (including seascapes) of regional or district significance are protected from adverse effects, including cumulative effects, arising from inappropriate subdivision, use and development.

The relevant objectives are:

- 3.3 *Decision making*
- 3.9 *Relationship of tāngata whenua with the environment*
- 3.20 *Outstanding natural features and landscapes*
- 3.21 *Amenity*

Implementation methods

12.1.1 Protect values of outstanding natural features and landscapes

Regional and district plans shall:

- a) identify and provide for the protection of the values and characteristics of outstanding natural features and landscapes from inappropriate subdivision, use and development, including those of regional significance identified in section 12A (Table 12-1) by:
 - i) avoiding adverse effects of activities on the values and characteristics of outstanding natural features and landscapes in the coastal environment; and
 - ii) outside of the coastal environment, avoiding adverse effects of activities on the values and characteristics of outstanding natural features and landscapes, and if avoidance is not possible remedy or mitigate the adverse effects.

12.1.2 Identify outstanding natural features and landscapes of significance at a district level

Waikato Regional Council will encourage territorial authorities to undertake a district-wide assessment of outstanding natural features and landscapes of district significance. The approach summarised in section 12B (Table 12-2) should be used as the basis of any new assessment.

12.1.3 Values of outstanding natural features and landscapes to tāngata whenua

Waikato Regional Council will work with tāngata whenua to confirm the values of significance to **tāngata whenua** of the outstanding natural features and landscapes included in section 12A (Table 12-1) and ensure these are recognised in regional and district plans.

Explanation

Protecting outstanding natural features and landscapes from inappropriate subdivision, use and development is a matter of national importance under the Resource Management Act. Those areas assessed as being regionally outstanding are identified in section 12A (Table 12-1) (except for seascapes) along with their particular values and characteristics, and these will be protected through regional and district plans. It is expected that further areas will be identified by territorial authorities at a district level and will similarly be protected through regional and district plans. For consistency, there is benefit in using the same approach used to identify the outstanding areas at a regional scale for future assessments. The approach also allows for the identification and protection of seascapes, consistent with directions of the NZCPS, through regional and district plans.

Section 12B outlines the approach that should be followed when assessing landscapes. It includes a definition of 'landscape' and 'feature', the attributes and typical factors to be considered, the assessment process, and the specific threshold tests for 'outstanding natural features and landscapes'.

The outstanding natural features and landscapes included in section 12A (Table 12-1) were identified without the benefit of consultation with tāngata whenua, relying on information readily available at the time of assessment. Tāngata whenua values are one of the values to be assessed in accordance with the approach summarised in section 12B (Table 12-2) and it is intended that the council will work with tāngata whenua to check the values identified for completeness and correctness.

The focus of the policy and approach to assessing landscapes is on the values and characteristics of the outstanding natural features and landscapes (including seascapes) rather than on the features or landscapes themselves. This recognises that landscapes evolve over time however the values and characteristics must be protected to ensure the natural features and landscapes remain outstanding.

Policy 12.2 Preserve natural character

Ensure that activities within the **coastal environment**, **wetlands**, and lakes and rivers and their margins are appropriate in relation to the level of **natural character** and:

The relevant objectives are:
 3.4 *Health and wellbeing of the Waikato River*
 3.7 *Coastal environment*
 3.22 *Natural character*

- a) where natural character is pristine or outstanding, activities should avoid adverse effects on natural character;
- b) where natural elements/influences are dominant, activities should avoid significant adverse effects and avoid, remedy or mitigate other adverse effects on natural character;
- c) where man-made elements/influences are dominant, it may be appropriate that activities result in further adverse effects on natural character, though opportunities to remedy or mitigate adverse effects should still be considered;
- d) promote the enhancement, restoration, and rehabilitation of the natural character of the coastal environment, wetlands and lakes and rivers and their margins; and
- e) regard is given to the functional necessity of activities being located in or near the coastal environment, wetlands, lakes, or rivers and their margins where no reasonably practicable alternative locations exist.

Implementation methods

12.2.1 District and regional plans

Regional and district plans shall:

- a) recognise that different levels of natural character exist within the **coastal environment** and inland **water bodies** and their margins;
- b) map or otherwise identify areas of high and outstanding natural character in the coastal environment using the criteria in section 12C (Table 12-3);
- c) ensure activities are appropriate with respect to the level of natural character, including particularly those activities that:
 - i) alter the natural appearance and functioning of beach and dune systems, or wetlands, lakes or rivers (and their margins);
 - ii) damage or remove areas of **indigenous** vegetation;
 - iii) introduce man-made elements/**structures** where none were previously present or obvious; or
 - iv) introduce man-made elements/structures into a modified area which results in a significant change to natural character; and

- d) have particular regard to the following:
 - i) protecting the special values of inland water bodies, estuaries and bays, beaches and dune systems, including the unique physical processes that occur within and between them;
 - ii) safeguarding the life-supporting capacity of **fresh water** aquatic, coastal and marine ecosystems;
 - iii) maintaining or enhancing indigenous **biodiversity** and the functioning of ecosystems;
 - iv) location, design and form of the man-made elements/structures and any mitigation measures necessary or proposed;
 - v) protecting natural functioning of physical processes over a 100-year timeframe;
 - vi) protecting geological features;
 - vii) protecting surf breaks of national significance for surfing;
 - viii) the need to locate **renewable electricity generation** activities where the renewable energy resource is available; and
 - ix) the logistical or technical practicalities associated with developing, upgrading, operating or maintaining the renewable electricity generation activity.

12.2.2 Enhance natural character where compromised

Local authorities should identify opportunities to enhance, restore or rehabilitate the natural character of the coastal environment, wetlands, and lakes and rivers and their margins where it has been compromised, including when undertaking works and services or preparing or reviewing growth strategies, structure plans, or regional and district plans. In particular, opportunities to achieve the following should be considered:

- a) the removal of derelict or unnecessary structures;
- b) restoration or enhancement of natural elements;
- c) enhancement of water quality;
- d) modification of existing development to be less intrusive; and
- e) de-reclamation of redundant reclaimed land.

Explanation

Preserving the natural character of the coastal environment, wetlands and lakes and rivers and their margins is a matter of national importance under the Resource Management Act. This will be achieved by directing development to areas where natural character is already compromised. This recognises that the intent of the legislation is not to preserve natural character everywhere, and that the higher the level of modification, the more appropriate development will be in a given situation. In the coastal environment Policy 12.2 must give effect to Policy 13 of the NZCPS. This means that despite the use of 'should' in Policy 12.2, in the coastal environment, the direction in Policy 13 of the NZCPS must be followed.

Many of our coastal and **riparian areas** have been modified so it is intended that modification not be allowed in those few places where the natural character is unmodified (that is, pristine). In areas that are highly modified, there may be opportunities for local authorities to achieve the enhancement of natural character, such as when undertaking works and services or authorising activities and using simple measures such as planting appropriate native species as part of landscaping activities.

Criteria are provided in 12C (Table 12-3) to guide plans in identifying areas of high and outstanding natural character in the coastal environment. The criteria provide consistency and give effect to Policy 13 of the NZCPS.

Policy 12.3 Maintain and enhance areas of amenity value

Areas of **amenity value** are identified, and those values are maintained and enhanced. These may include:

- a) areas within the coastal environment and along inland water bodies;
- b) scenic, scientific, recreational or historic areas;
- c) areas of spiritual or cultural significance;
- d) other landscapes or seascapes or natural features;-and
- e) areas adjacent to outstanding natural landscapes and features that are visible from a road or other public place.

The relevant objectives are:

- 3.7 Coastal environment
- 3.9 Relationship of tāngata whenua with the environment
- 3.18 Historic and cultural heritage
- 3.21 Amenity
- 3.23 Public access

Implementation methods

12.3.1 Maintain and enhance areas of amenity value

Regional and district plans shall ensure that:

- a) areas of amenity value to regional or district communities are:
 - i) identified using accepted criteria and methodologies; and
 - ii) appropriately recognised;
- b) the qualities and characteristics for which they are valued are maintained or enhanced;
- c) subdivision, use and development is managed to avoid, remedy or mitigate adverse effects on the identified values of areas of amenity value; and
- d) when recognising and providing for areas of **amenity value**, consideration shall be given to the changing and evolving nature of land management practices that means the visual amenity values may also change.

12.3.2 Amenity value of the coastal environment

Regional and district plans shall ensure that the amenity values of the coastal environment are maintained or enhanced, including by:

- a) recognising the contribution that open space makes to amenity values and providing appropriate protection to areas of open space;
- b) maintaining or enhancing natural sites or areas of particular value for outdoor recreation;
- c) employing suitable development setbacks to avoid a sense of encroachment or domination of built form, particularly on areas of public open space and along the coastal edge;
- d) avoiding forms and location of development that effectively privatise the coastal edge and which discourage or prevent public access to and use of the coast;
- e) recognising that some areas derive their particular character and amenity value from a predominance of structures, modifications or activities, and providing for their appropriate management;
- f) ensuring the removal of derelict or unnecessary structures within the **coastal marine area**;
- g) encouraging appropriate design of new structures and other development to enhance existing amenity values;
- h) maximising the public benefits to be derived from developments;
- i) ensuring public access to public areas is enhanced where practicable; and
- j) recognising the role of esplanade reserves and strips in contributing to public open space needs.

12.3.3 Enhance public values in the coastal environment

Local authorities should seek to incorporate the enhancement of public amenity values, including when undertaking works and services or preparing or reviewing growth strategies, structure plans, or regional and district plans.

Explanation

Local authorities must have particular regard to the maintenance and enhancement of amenity values under the Resource Management Act. Some areas will be particularly valued by communities for their amenity, and it is appropriate to provide for the maintenance or enhancement of the amenity values of these areas to protect communities' sense of place, appreciation and enjoyment.

Local authorities should also recognise that amenity values often exist due to the existing and historical management and development of land use in a particular location or landscape. For example, rural landscapes often derive their amenity value from the presence of productive land use such as pastoral farming, and associated structures such as hay barns. These landscapes are not always static, and may continue to change and evolve as a result of changing management practices. Policy 12.3 is not intended to ensure that the landscapes remain static, but to ensure the values attributed to these types of landscapes are maintained or enhanced, even through change.

The coastal environment is particularly valued by our communities for its amenity values, including its open spaces, and local authorities should ensure that these values are recognised when planning for development and processing resource consents. Individuals' amenity values are also relevant under the RMA and should be assessed on a case-by-case basis through resource consent processes.

Policy 12.4 Maintain and enhance public access

Public access to and along the coastal marine area, lakes, and rivers will be maintained and enhanced by:

- a) providing direction about where and when additional access should be established;
- b) ensuring that subdivision, use and development do not constrain the ability of the land/water edge to adjust over time in response to natural processes, including the effects of climate change; and
- c) ensuring subdivision, use and development do not result in inappropriate loss of existing public access.

The relevant objectives are:

- 3.4 *Health and wellbeing of the Waikato River*
- 3.6 *Adapting to climate change*
- 3.7 *Coastal environment*
- 3.9 *Relationship of tāngata whenua with the environment*
- 3.16 *Riparian areas and wetlands*
- 3.21 *Amenity*
- 3.23 *Public access*

Implementation methods

12.4.1 Regional and district plans

Regional and district plans shall:

- a) provide for the enhancement of public access to and along the coastal marine area, lakes, and rivers by:
 - i) identifying areas where it is appropriate; or
 - ii) establishing criteria to enable assessment through resource consent processes of when it would be appropriate; and
 - iii) including provisions to ensure it occurs in appropriate circumstances and locations;
- b) recognise that activities which result in:

- i) lowering of the beach face and loss of a high-tide beach, either immediately or over time; and
- ii) loss (either in whole or in part) of existing lawful public access to and along the coastal marine area, including to beach areas from adjacent land; are inappropriate in terms of effects on public access to and along the coastal marine area;
- c) require that where subdivision, use or development requires a restriction on public access they should provide for, or contribute to, the provision or enhancement of public access elsewhere; and
- d) avoid adverse effects of activities on access to, use and enjoyment of surf breaks of national significance for surfing.

12.4.2 Enhance public access

Local authorities should enhance public access to and along the coastal marine area, wetlands, and lakes and rivers and their margins, including through negotiation of access arrangements with landowners/managers. In determining priorities, local authorities should consider whether:

- a) suitable alternative access is already available;
- b) the access would link other existing accessible areas;
- c) the area to be accessed has particular cultural, amenity or other values; or
- d) the access would improve the range of access opportunities, including allowing access to less mobile members of the community.

Explanation

Policy 12.4 recognises that maintaining and enhancing public access to and along the coastal marine area, lakes and rivers is a matter of national importance. Maintaining and enhancing access requires both identifying where new access is required, and ensuring that existing and future access is not lost as a direct result of development or, in the coastal environment, from development that constrains movement of dry beach areas landward as a result of erosion or sea level rise. This will be achieved through regional and district plans and other mechanisms such as direct negotiation or purchase.

Policy 12.5 Appropriate restrictions on public access

Public access to and along the coastal marine area, lakes, and rivers will only be restricted where necessary:

- a) to protect areas of significant indigenous vegetation and/or significant habitats of indigenous fauna;
- b) to protect tāngata whenua values;
- c) to protect public health or safety;
- d) to ensure a level of security consistent with the purpose of a resource consent;
- e) to avoid conflicts with activities of landowners or occupiers;
- f) to protect the stability of banks or dunes;
- g) to protect historic heritage;
- h) for temporary activities or special events;
- i) for defence purposes in accordance with the Defence Act 1990; or
- j) in other exceptional circumstances sufficient to justify the restriction, notwithstanding the national importance of maintaining that access.

The relevant objectives are:
 3.7 Coastal environment
 3.9 Relationship of tāngata whenua with the environment
 3.19 Ecological integrity and indigenous biodiversity
 3.23 Public access
 3.25 Values of soil

Implementation methods

12.5.1 Restrictions on public access

Regional and district plans shall identify the circumstances when it is appropriate to restrict public access to and along the coastal marine area, lakes, and rivers and provide for alternative routes, where practicable, in the coastal environment, in accordance with Policy 12.5.

12.5.2 Regional plan restrictions on vehicle use in the coastal environment

Regional plans shall ensure inappropriate vehicle use in sensitive areas of the coastal environment, including the foreshore, beaches and dunes is avoided, in order to protect:

- a) the stability of dunes (including through damage to sand-binding dune vegetation), or other geological systems and processes;
- b) indigenous vegetation;
- c) shellfish beds;
- d) habitat important to threatened or at risk species and ecological corridors connecting such areas;
- e) areas important to migratory species, and to vulnerable stages of indigenous species;
- f) people's safety and enjoyment of the coast;
- g) damage to historic heritage;
- h) damage to habitats of fisheries resources of significance to customary, commercial or recreational users; and
- i) damage to sites of significance to tāngata whenua.

12.5.3 Other mechanisms for restricting vehicle use in the coastal environment

Local authorities should:

- a) collaborate with tāngata whenua, the Department of Conservation, NZ Police and other agencies and stakeholders to identify and address issues arising from the use of vehicles in sensitive areas of the coastal environment, including the foreshore, beaches and dunes; and
- b) consider the appropriateness of imposing restrictions on vehicle use using mechanisms such as:
 - i) district plan rules regarding accessways and roading; and
 - ii) local or regional bylaws.

Explanation

Maintaining public access to and along the coastal marine area, lakes and rivers is a matter of national importance under the Resource Management Act, and access should be maintained unless there are exceptional reasons for restricting it. There will be instances or locations where it is appropriate to restrict access for the reasons set out in Policy 12.5. In some locations access may be controlled by other legislation or statutory authorities. The methods recognise that in addition to identifying when public access generally should be restricted, it is appropriate that vehicle use is specifically restricted in some locations because of the adverse effects that may arise from use of vehicles in the coastal environment. Managing the use of vehicles in coastal areas requires a multi-agency approach.

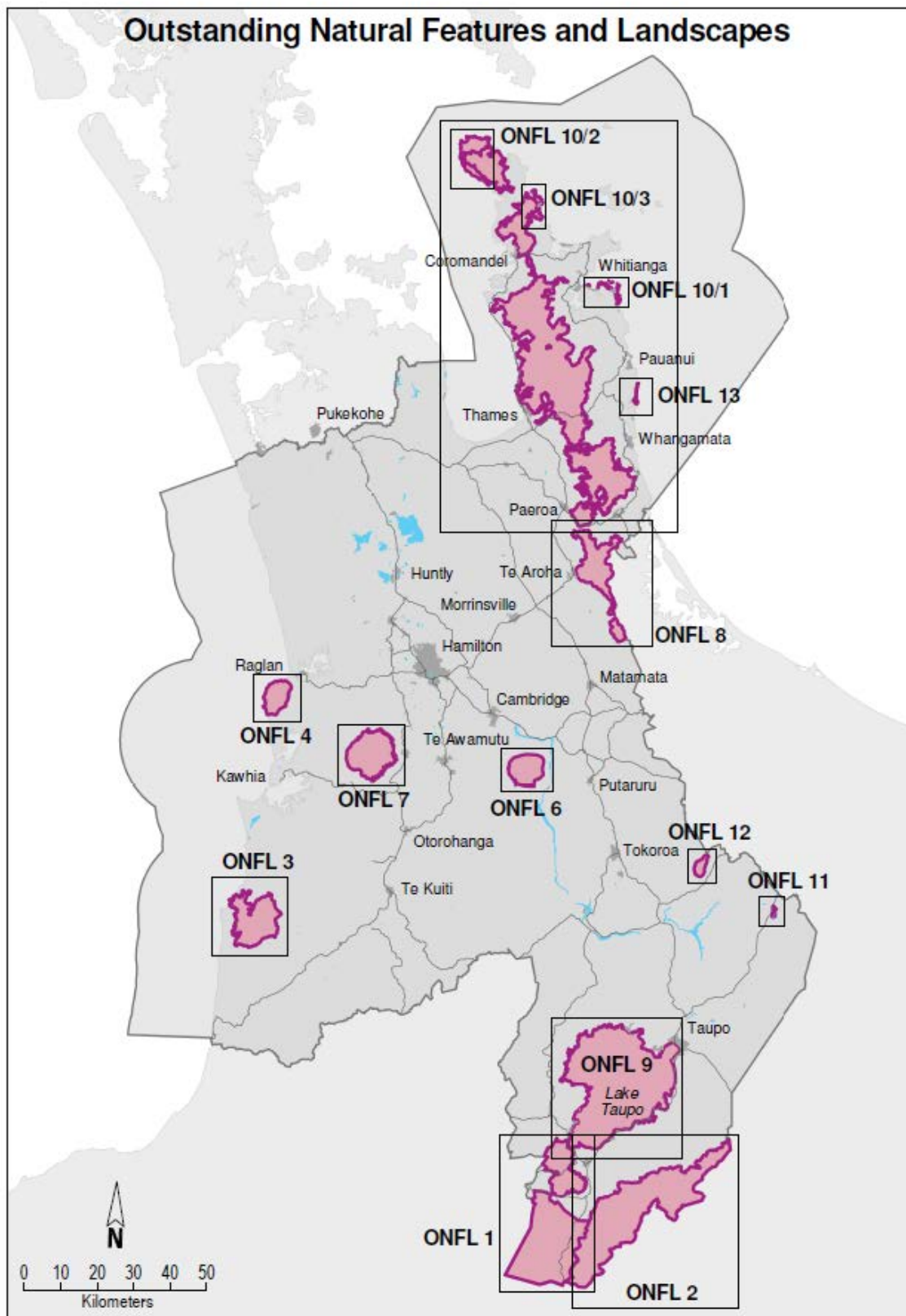
12A Outstanding natural features and landscapes

Table 12-1: Outstanding natural features and landscapes (ONFL) of regional significance

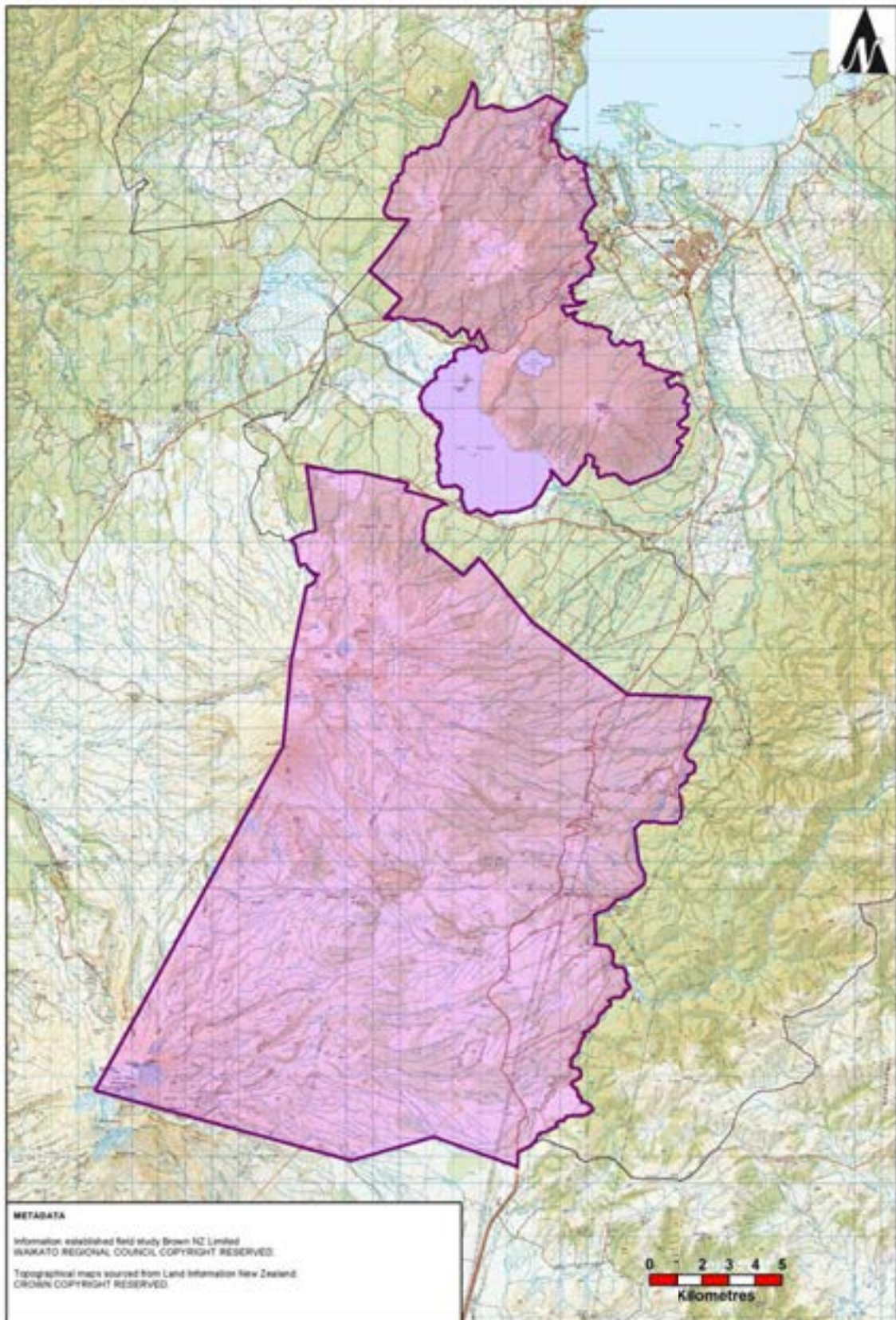
ONFL	Characteristics / Values
Tongariro National Park, Lake Rotoaira, Mt Pihanga, & Kakaramea-Tihia Massif (ONFL 1)	Visual and scenic characteristics, particularly volcanic landscape, highly memorable and natural. Ecological/scientific/recreational/heritage values; significance to tāngata whenua and to population in general.
Kaimanawa Mountains (ONFL 2)	Non volcanic sedimentary range. Landscape is expressive of the forces that made it. Recreational, including remote recreational tramping experiences. Significance to tāngata whenua – food source for Māori. Solid covering of good indigenous forest. Wild and remote.
Northern Herangi Range (ONFL 3)	Rugged peaked landforms largely bush covered. High natural character. Recreational values including tramping, hunting and fishing. Remote.
Mount Karioi (ONFL 4)	Distinctive volcanic cone shape, location close to the coast, good quality indigenous vegetation. Cliffs and headlands along the coastal edge. Tramping tracks and botanical values.
Coromandel Range and Moehau Range (ONFL 5)	Massive volcanic landform. Forms the distinctive backbone to the whole peninsula – peaks, pinnacles and rocks. Bush on the tops. Significance to tāngata whenua – pā sites. Remote and wild. High natural character in places. Historic values of early settlement, gold mining and logging.
Mount Maungatautari (ONFL 6)	Distinctive volcanic cone – distinct feature in the area. Ecological island established around bush at the top. High natural character. Significance to tāngata whenua – Māori settlements used to be on the slopes. Historic/early Pākehā settlers.
Mount Pirongia (ONFL 7)	Distinctive volcano shape. Seen from much of the central portion of the Waikato region. Consists of a number of peaks. High natural character. Significance to tāngata whenua and historic values. Was the centre for the Māori wars and a military base. Recreational values including tramping, walking, botany and bird watching.
Kaimai Range (north of Ngatamahinerua) (ONFL 8)	Volcanic origin – Te Aroha. Highest point. Distinctive peaked landform, its elevation, extensive bush. Significance to tāngata whenua – many pā and marae sites. Wild and remote on the higher slopes. Good quality bush.

ONFL	Characteristics / Values
Lake Taupō (ONFL 9)	Expansive area of water, memorable and vivid, natural character. Forms the foreground to Tongariro National Park viewed from the north. Significance to tāngata whenua. Recreational values including trout fishing, water skiing and boating.
Coastal areas of Coromandel – Cathedral Cove, Shakespeare Cliff and coastline south of Hahei (ONFL 10/1)	Dramatic white cliffs, pinnacles, arches and blowholes. White silica beaches. Cliffs rise to 100m in places. Islands off the coast. Dramatic and memorable. High natural character along coastal edge. Significance to tāngata whenua – footpaths along coast and pa sites. Recreational values including beaches and swimming, fishing and boating.
Coastal areas of Coromandel – northern tip of the Coromandel peninsula and western slopes of Moehau Range out to coast (ONFL 10/2)	Combination of pasture and bush running out to cliffs and bays. Dramatic and vivid with distinctive coastal features. Steep slopes between native forest above and coastal edge. Pōhutukawa along coastline. Botanical interest in the indigenous forest. Historic and Māori. Pā sites on headlands – battles between Māori tribes.
Coastal areas of Coromandel – Tuateawa (ONFL 10/3)	Combination of dramatic coastal edge, stony beaches, and rock reefs, backed by steep slopes with a large number of pohutukawa. High natural character. Significance to tāngata whenua. Recreational values including fishing. Coastline views.
Waiotapu Geothermal Area & Lake Ngakoro (ONFL11)	Dramatic, aesthetically appealing and intact geothermal features. New Zealand's largest area of surface thermal activity. Features include geysers, multi-coloured silica terraces, steaming pools, vents and mud / sulphur craters. The geothermal features, together with surrounding landforms and bush, descend to meet Lake Ngakoro. Highly significant tourist destination.
Horohoro Escarpment (ONFL12)	Highly distinctive line of cliffs, interspersed with native bush. Frames and defines the northern edge of the Whirinaki Valley. Demarcates the southern edge of Mamaku Plateau and Horohoro (rhyolite) dome. Dramatic, perhaps unique, profile is very clearly exposed to SH30. Significance to tāngata whenua.
Opoutere Beach (ONFL 13)	An expansive, undeveloped, ocean beach, and dune system, backed by a forested Department of Conservation Reserve, comprised primarily of maritime pine and regenerating native vegetation. Ohui, its northern end, is marked by the striking Ohui Bluffs, Ohui Stream and Motohaua Rock. Its southern end culminates in a distal spit and the mouth of the Wharekawa Harbour, off shore from which sits the sculptural Hikinui Island and, on the southern side of which is, Ruahiwihiwi Headland. Opoutere Beach is important from a recreational standpoint – for swimming, walking, surfing and the like. The beach, particularly the northern (Ohui) and southern (distal spit) ends of it, and the Wharekawa Harbour, are also very important ecologically as a habitat for NZ dotterel, the variable oystercatcher and other indigenous fauna and flora.

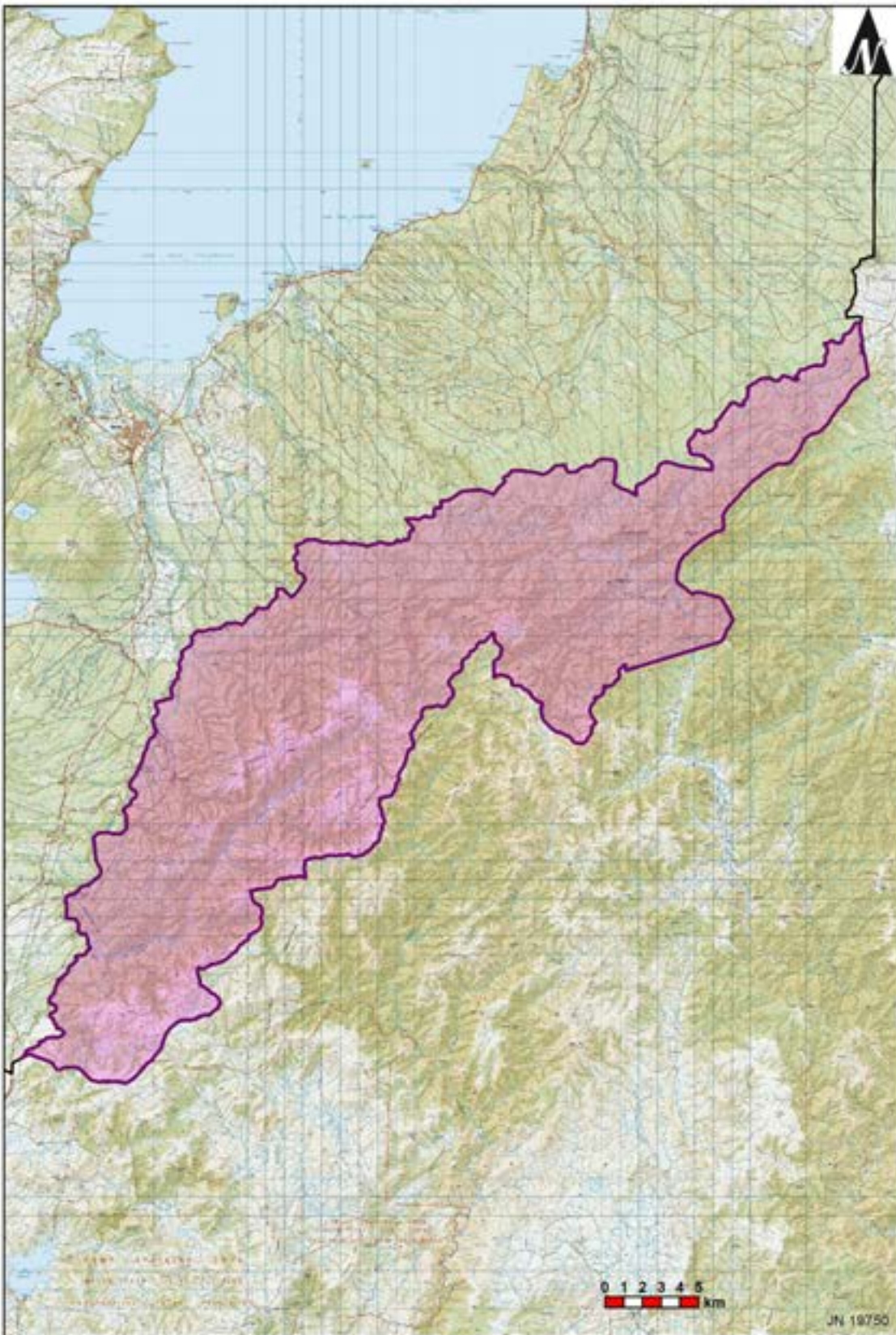
The following maps are at a regional scale and are indicative only. They should be used as the basis for district level ONFL identification.



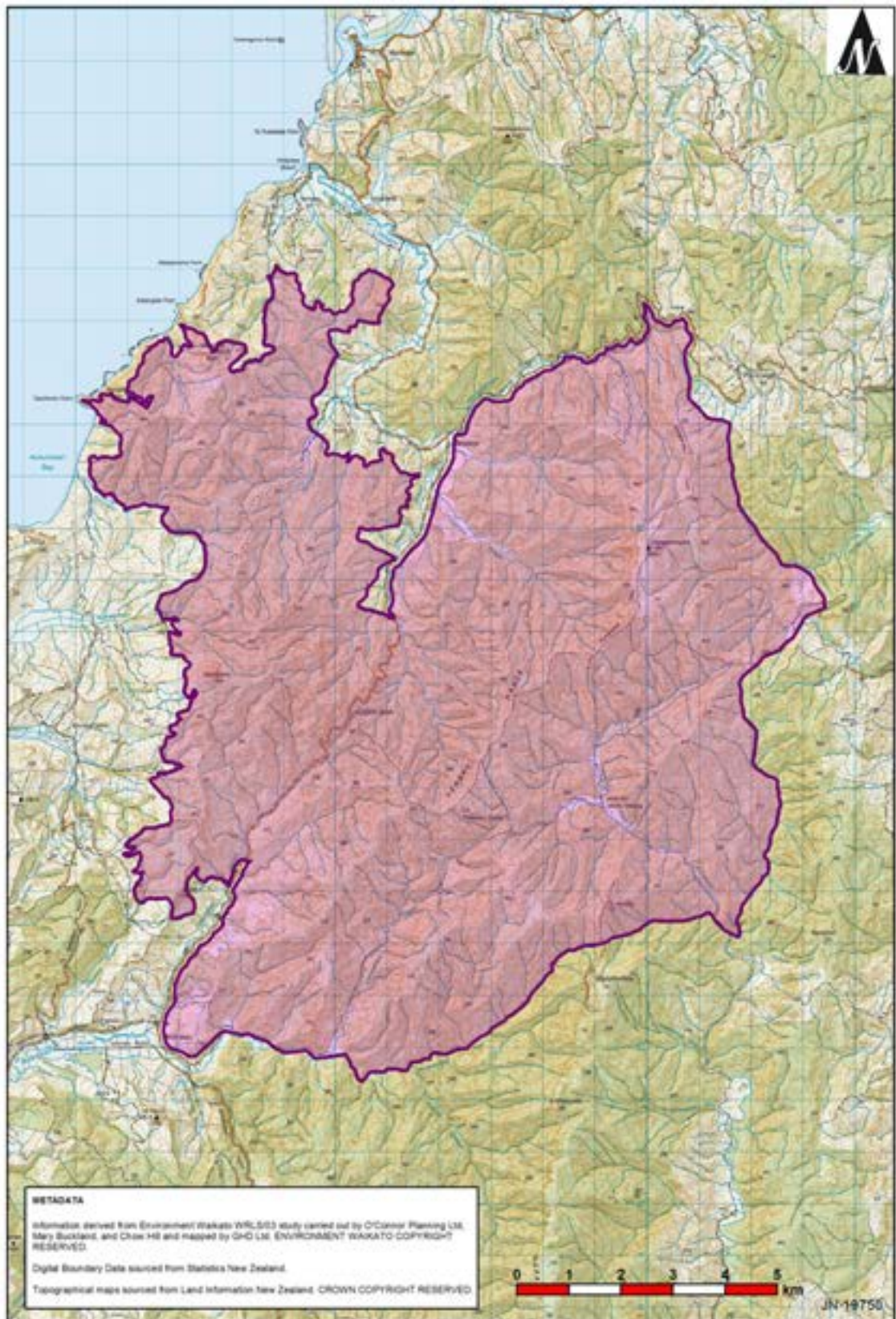
Map 12-1: Overview of outstanding natural features and landscapes (ONFL) maps



Map 12-2: ONFL 1 – Tongariro National Park



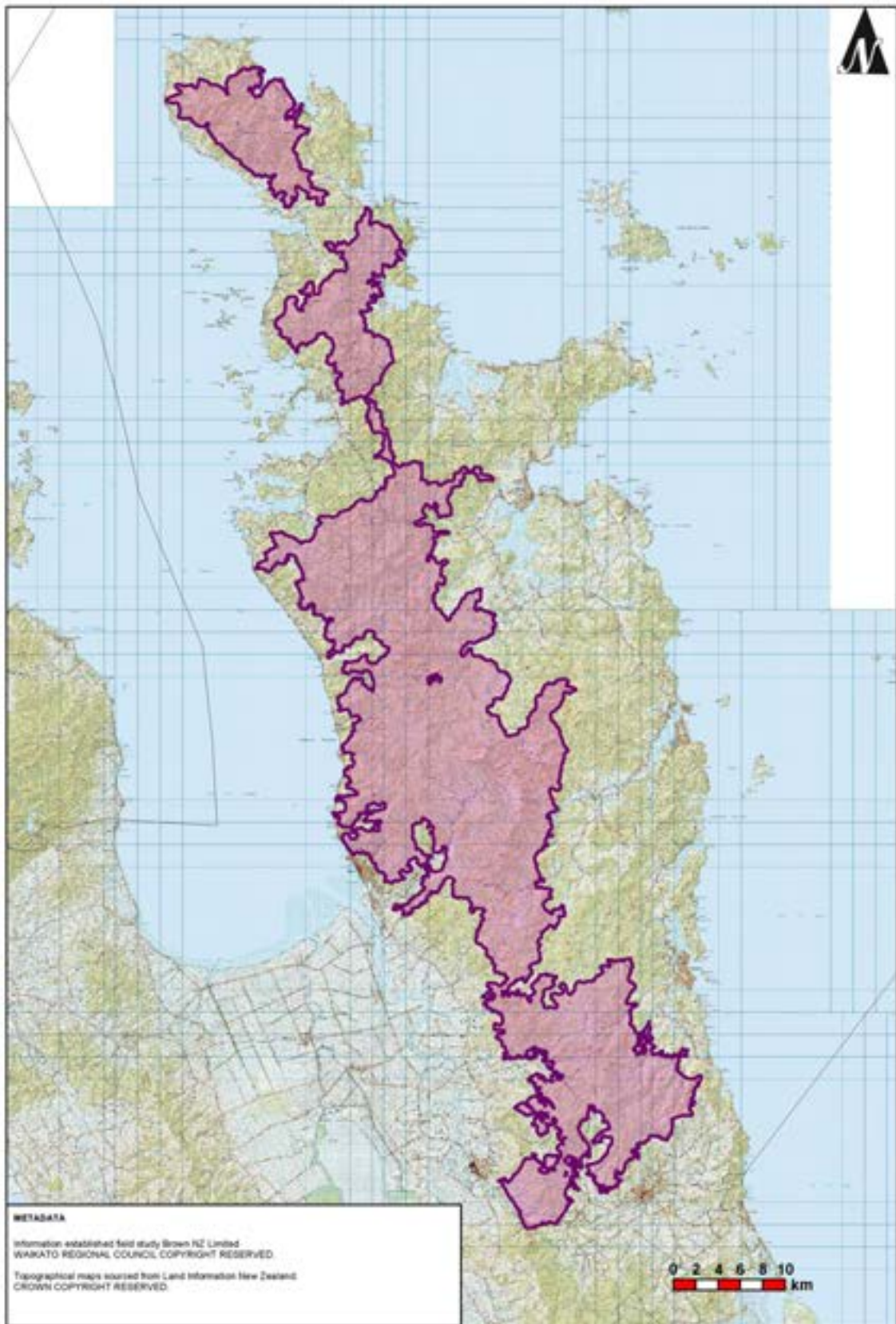
Map 12-3: ONFL 2 – Kaimanawa Mountains



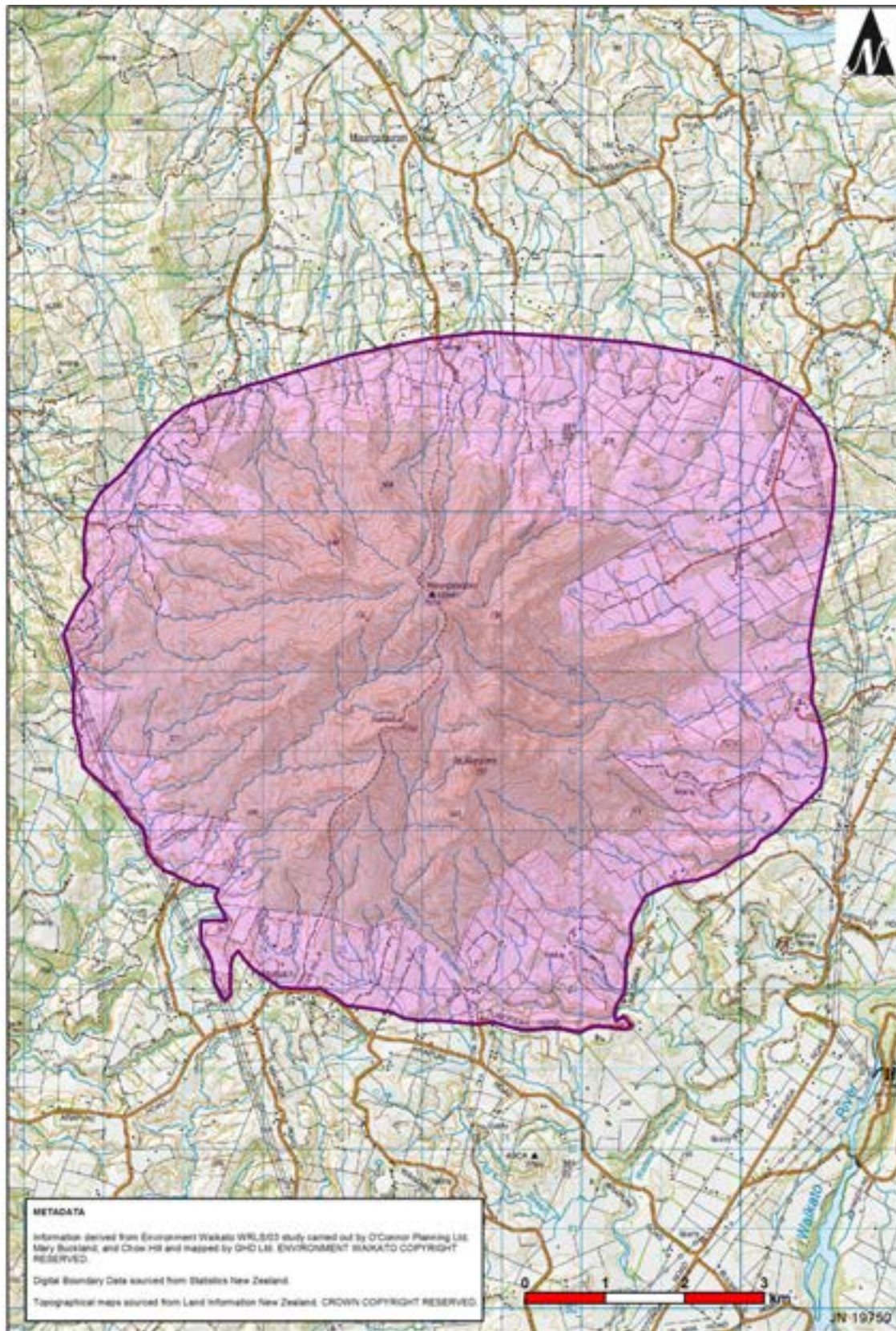
Map 12-4: ONFL 3 – Northern Herangi Range



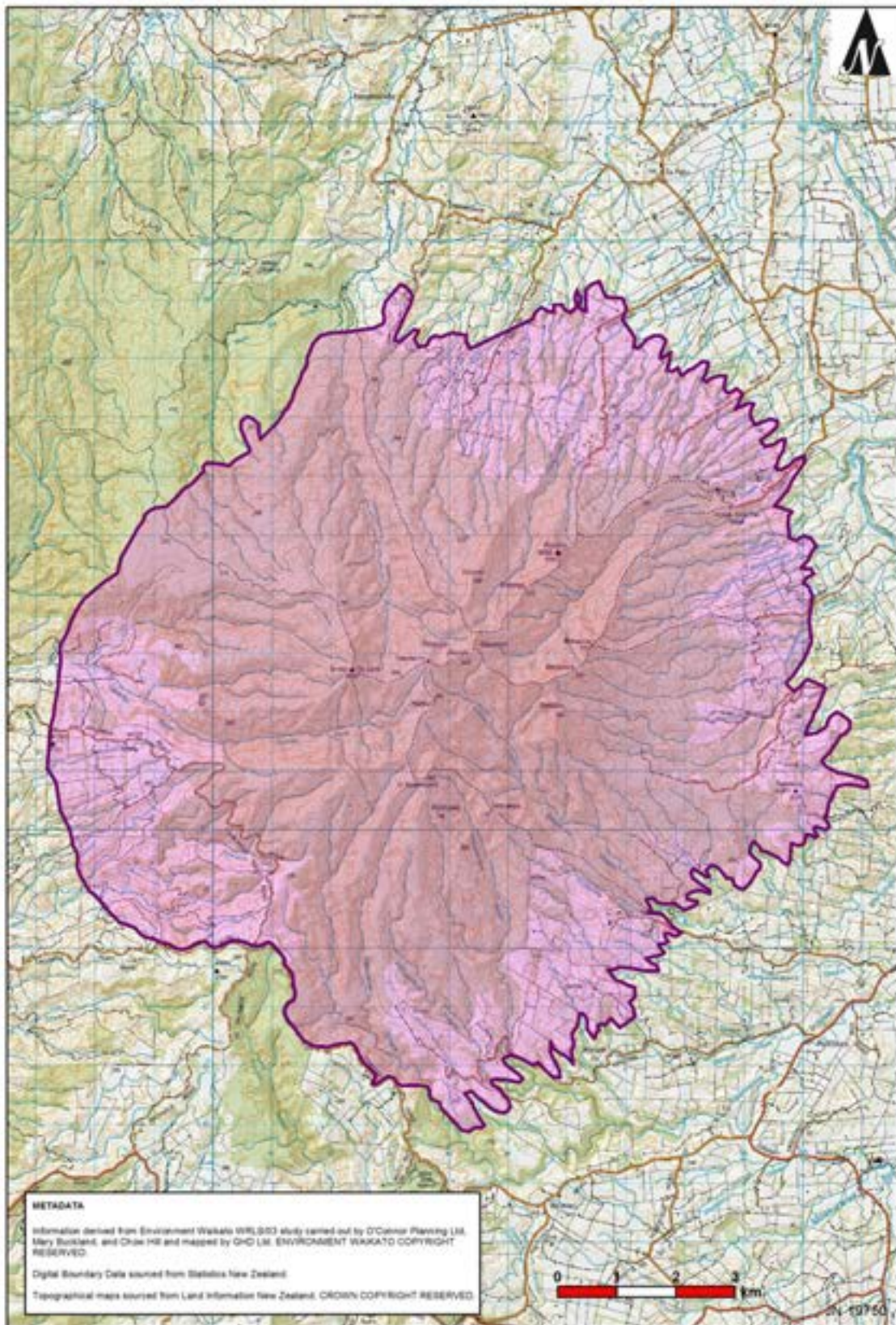
Map 12-5: ONFL 4 – Mount Karioi



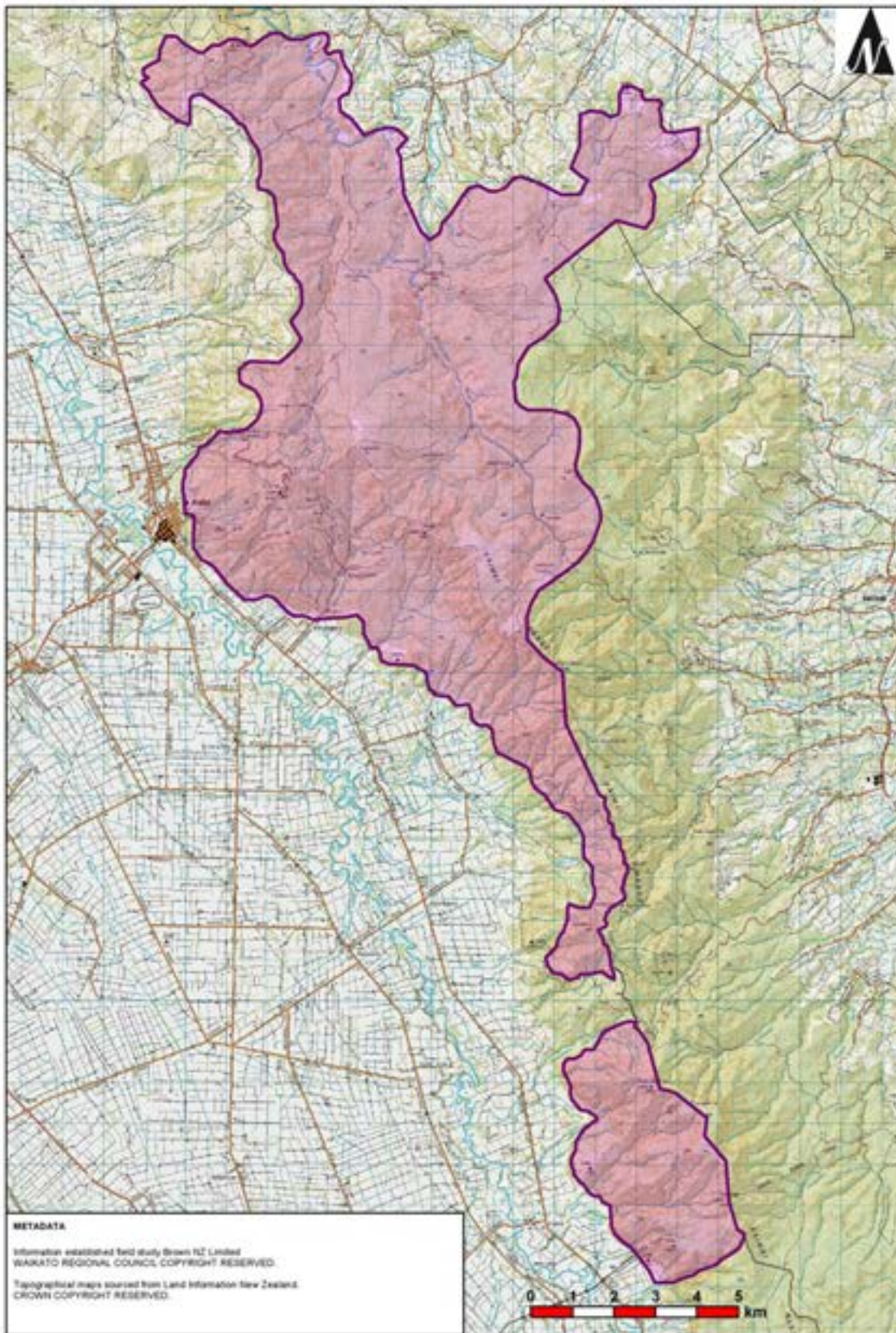
Map 12-6: ONFL 5 – Coromandel Range and Moehau Range



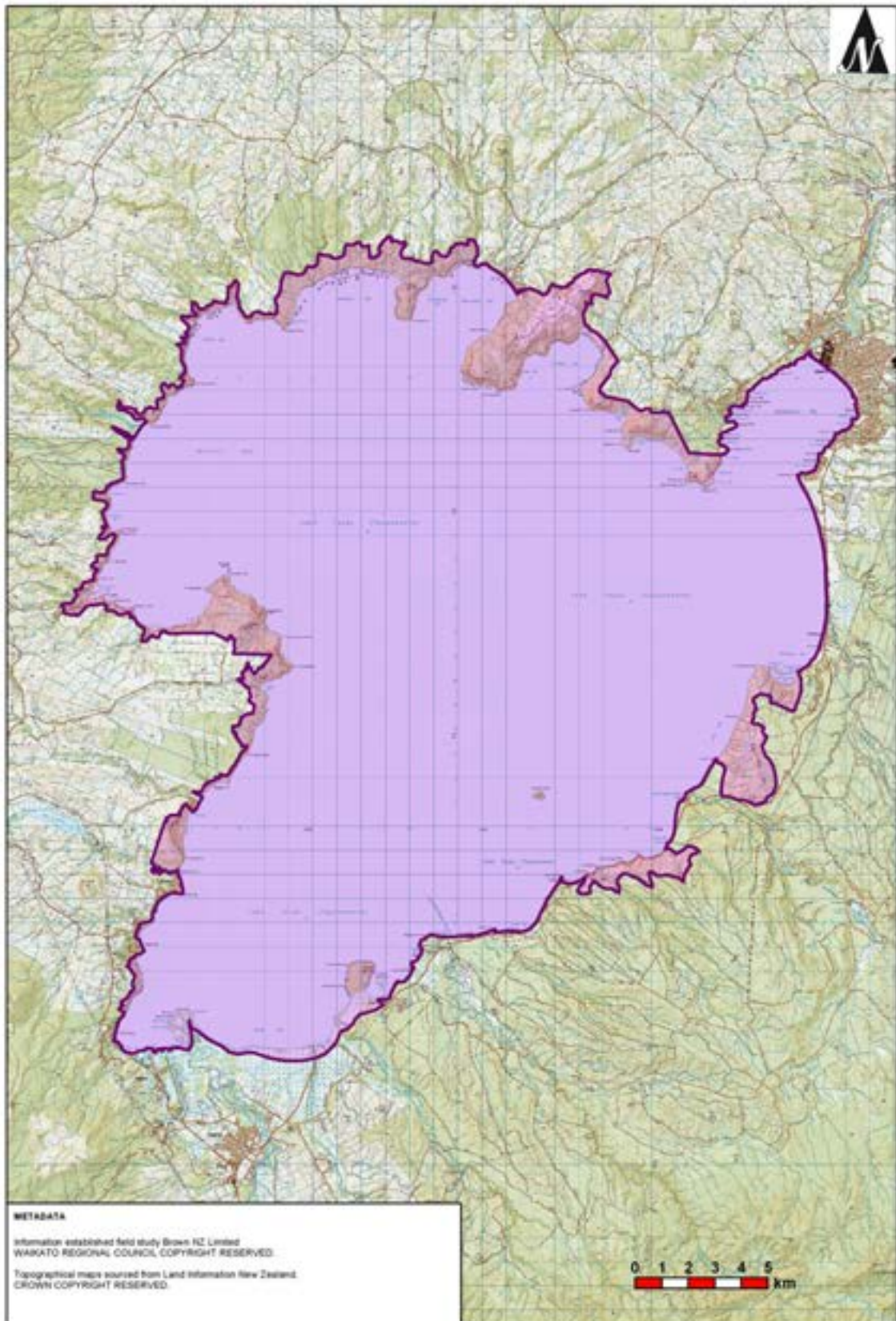
Map 12-7: ONFL 6 – Mount Maungatautari



Map 12-8: ONFL 7 – Mount Pirongia



Map 12-9: ONFL 8 – Kaimai Range (north of Ngatamahinerua)



Map 12-10: ONFL 9 – Lake Taupō



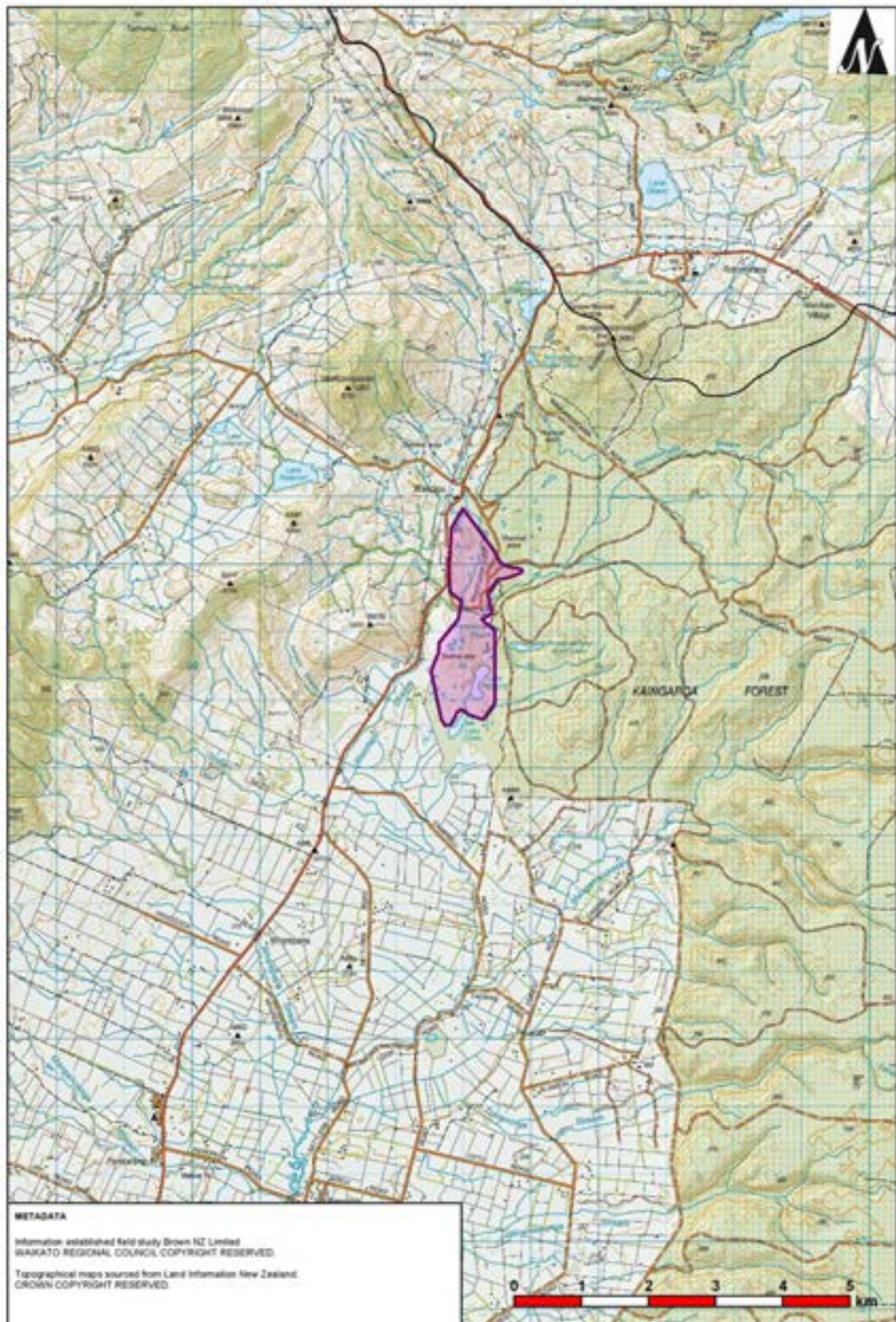
Map 12-11: ONFL 10/1 – Cathedral Cove, Shakespeare Cliff and coastline south of Hahei



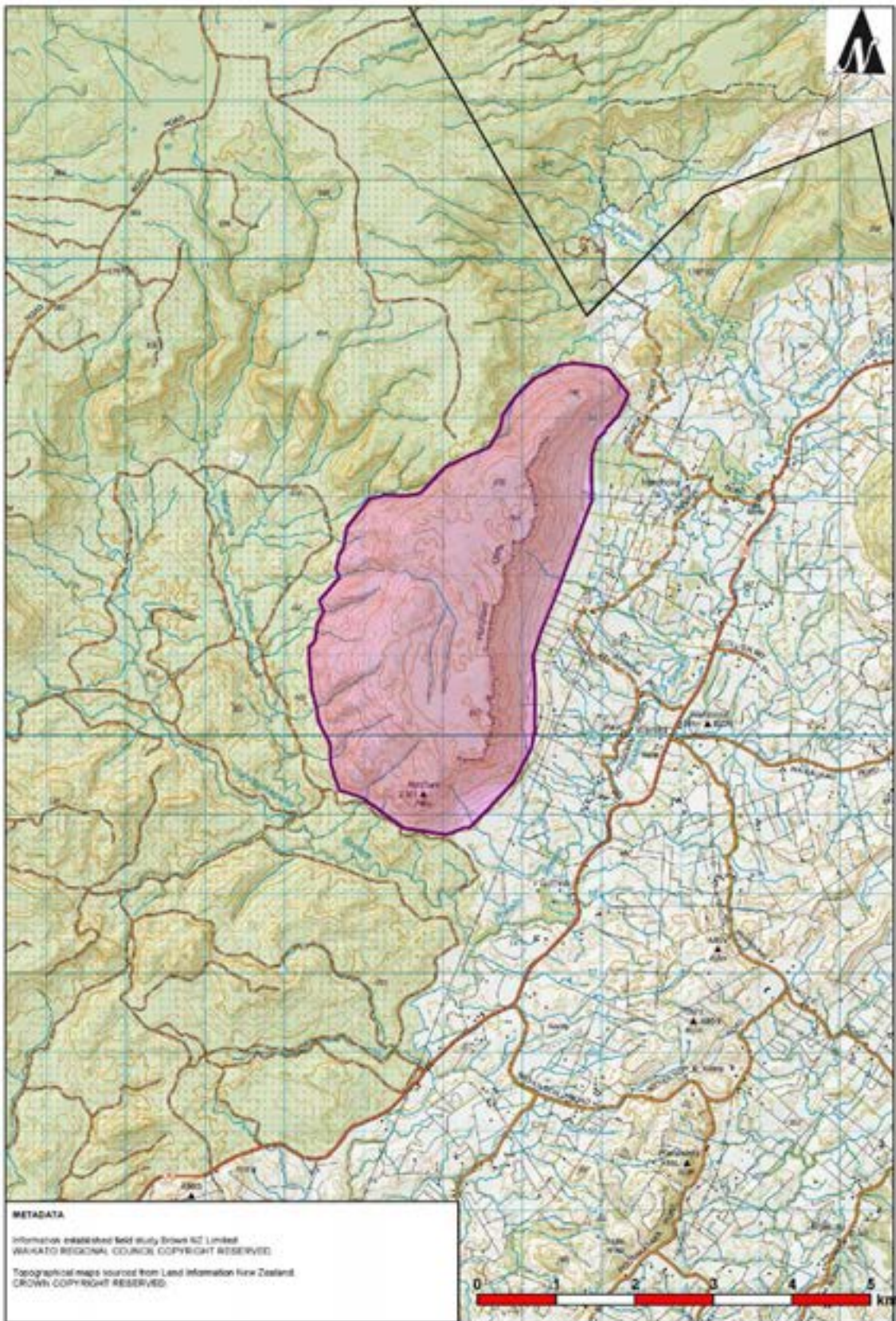
Map 12-12: ONFL 10/2 – Northern tip of Coromandel Peninsula and western slopes of Moehau Range out to coast



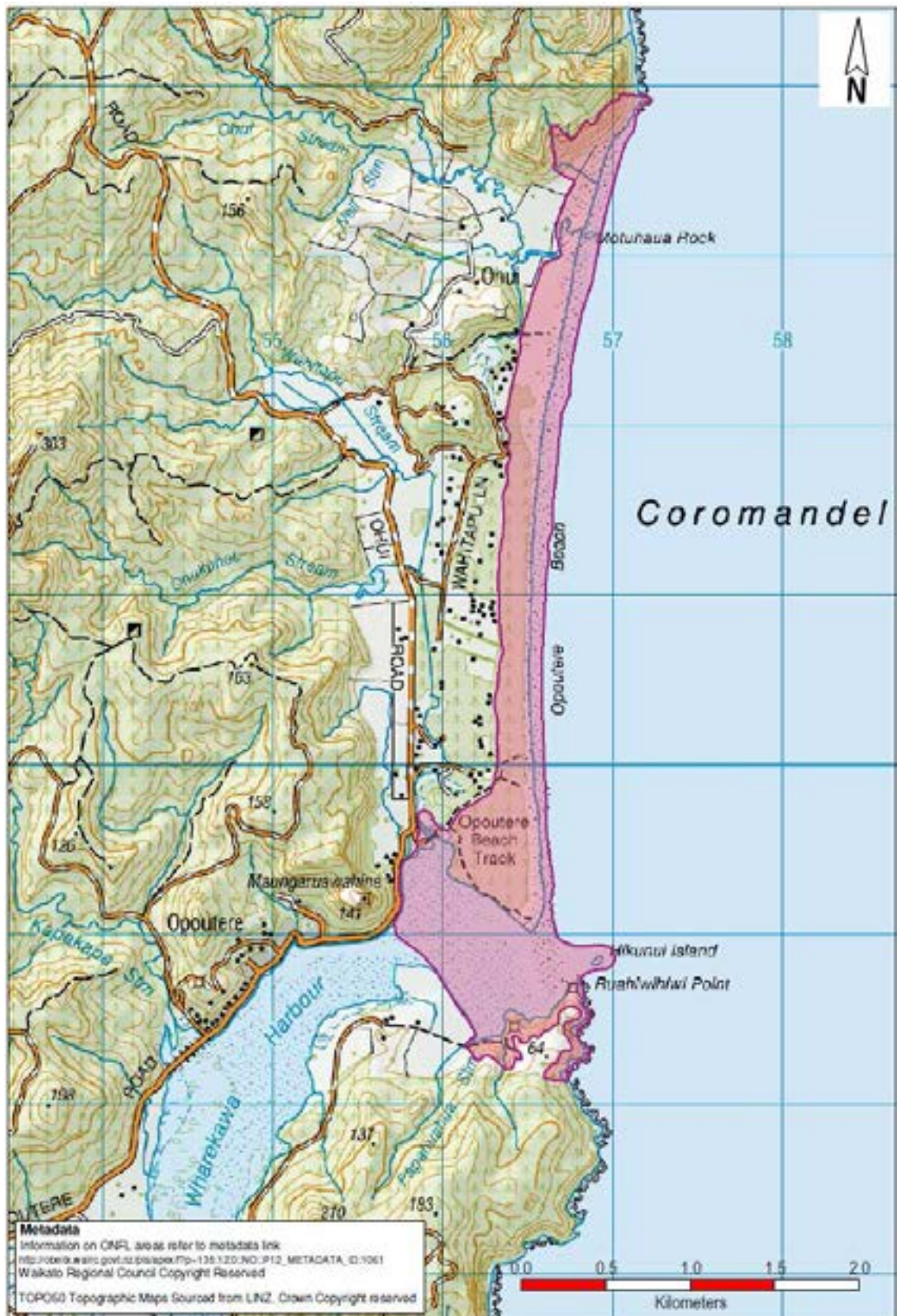
Map 12-13: ONFL 10/3 – Tuatua



Map 12-14: ONFL 11 – Waiotapu Geothermal Area & Lake Ngakoro



Map 12-15: ONFL 12 – Horohoro Escarpment



Map 12-16: ONFL 13 – Opoutere Beach

12B Landscape assessment approach

The following section outlines the approach to be followed in assessing landscapes. Such an approach should be applied to the identification of 'outstanding natural features and landscapes' and also to 'seascapes' or landscapes with other specific amenity value.

In applying the approach continuing refinements in best practice, for instance as a result of future research or professional guides, should be taken into consideration.

Definition of 'Landscape' and 'Feature'

'Landscape is the cumulative expression of natural and cultural features, patterns and processes in a geographical area, including human perceptions and associations' (New Zealand Institute of Landscape Architects Best Practice Note 10.1, November 2010). A feature is a discrete part of a landscape.

By way of further explanation:

- Landscape is a distinct geographical area;
- Landscape involves both the physical attributes of the area and people's appreciation of such attributes; and
- Landscape appreciation entails scientific understanding, aesthetic perceptions, and people's associations with an area.

Assessing Landscapes

Landscape assessment entails the following stages:

1. **Analyse** the landscape's qualities taking into account its physical, aesthetic and associative attributes. Table 12-2 lists factors to be taken into consideration. The list is not exhaustive (other factors may be relevant depending on the qualities of specific places) and different factors may have greater or lesser relevance in different locations.
2. **Delineate the extent** of each landscape (typically defined by natural or human boundaries).
3. Make an **overall appraisal** of the landscape's character and significance based on the analysis described above. The appraisal should be more than a description of components, but rather how the components act together as a whole.
4. **Explain** the appraisal of each landscape (or feature) with reasons. The explanation needs to be sufficient in itself to justify the assessment's conclusions.

Outstanding Natural Features and Landscape Threshold Tests

A further stage is required to identify outstanding natural features and landscapes, which must be both 'natural' and pass an 'outstanding' threshold.

- 'Outstanding' means 'conspicuous, eminent, excellent, remarkable'.
- 'Natural' means a landscape predominantly characterised by natural elements and processes (for example landform, natural vegetation and/or water). 'Natural' can include managed rural landscapes (including pastoral landscapes) where natural elements and processes are dominant.

Table 12-2: Typical factors to consider when assessing landscapes

Attributes	Typical factors
Physical Attributes	Natural - the characteristics of intactness, health and significance of natural landscape features including: • Geology, geomorphology, and resultant topography • Hydrology (hydrological features and processes) • Soil and natural vegetation • Ecology (the health and significance of ecological attributes) Human ('Cultural') - the characteristics of human features, any inherent cultural significance, and the manner in which they relate to the underlying natural setting including: • Land use • Human vegetation patterns • Buildings, structures and settlements • Road networks Human or cultural factors are relevant to landscape assessment in general. However, for assessment of outstanding natural features and landscapes the focus will be on natural areas where such human factors are recessive or absent.
Aesthetic Attributes (perceptual, sensory, experiential)	Visual and aesthetic characteristics including: • Expressiveness – the manner in which biophysical features (including landforms, water-bodies and natural vegetation) express natural processes and patterns • Legibility (in the sense of way-finding and orientation) – the role of landscapes and features as landmarks, boundaries, areas with a distinctive character (taking the 3D sequential experience into account) • Picturesqueness / Composition (including such attributes as the presence of water, contrast of shadow and light, perspective depth, focal-points, the mix of openness and enclosure, and the overall composition of landscape elements) • Coherence (the manner in which different elements relate to each other including the intactness of natural landscapes and the extent to which human elements and patterns reflect the natural structure of the landscape) Account should be taken of attributes that may be only occasionally or seasonally present (such as wildlife or snow), and the effects of movement (wind, waves) i.e. the 'transient factors'
Associative Attributes	Values or meanings associated with a landscape including such matters as: • Naturalness associations (such as 'wilderness' values) • 'Sense of place' the manner in which landscapes convey a distinctive local character (cultural or natural) • Historical associations (where relevant to appreciation of the landscape) • Tāngata whenua associations (where relevant to appreciation of the landscape) • Recreational uses based fundamentally on landscape qualities • Emblematic attributes (for instance where a feature has been adopted as an icon for a community)

12C Natural character of the coastal environment: assessment criteria

Table 12-3: Natural character assessment criteria

The following criteria are to be used as the basis for identifying areas of high and outstanding natural character within the coastal environment.

BIO-PHYSICAL CHARACTERISTICS:
Land Forms (Geology / Geomorphology): reflecting the degree to which the natural terrain, headlands, coastal slopes, reefs, shoals, dunes, beaches and other natural geomorphic 'systems' remain intact.
Vegetation Cover & Type(s): reflecting both the physical extent of 'native' vegetation cover and the indigenous content and integrity of that cover: a higher proportion of endemic vegetation cover – e.g. from salt marsh to mature coastal / podocarp forest – connotes greater naturalness; conversely a preponderance of production forestry, horticultural planting or other 'exotic' vegetation are associated with a modified / developed environment. Similarly, the greater presence and proportion of the coastal environment that is covered by native species the greater its naturalness.
Sea / Estuarine Water Bodies: the greater the presence of the sea and/or estuarine water bodies, and the more intact and unmodified those marine bodies are – including their inter-tidal margins / edges – the more 'natural' a coastal environment is likely to be.
Land Uses / Activities / Structures: reflecting the degree to which human activities, structures, buildings, development and land / bush clearance impose their own values on the coastal environment and modify it: the greater that effect, the less natural a coastal environment will be.
Habitat Value: the greater the ecological / habitat value of any coastal environment, the more likely that the related presence of wildlife (e.g. gannets, seals, penguins) will evoke a strong sense of naturalness.
Natural Processes: the clear presence of tidal activity, estuarine flows, vegetative succession, natural (not man-induced) erosion, the greater the feeling that the coastal environment is still largely shaped by natural systems; conversely, man-made structures, developments and activities – such as culverts and coastal defences – are likely to diminish such values.
PERCEPTUAL VALUES:
Wildness / Remoteness: reflecting the degree to which the coastal environment is perceived as being remote from urban / suburban New Zealand and imbued with qualities that make it seem wild and / or connoting 'wilderness'.
Experiential Attributes: related to the sounds, smells and the appreciation of other sensory attributes that contribute to the feeling of being at the seaside, within an area dominated by natural elements and processes.
Context / Setting: reflecting the qualities of, and degree of interaction with, other parts of the coastline and the degree to which that interaction enhances or compromises the naturalness of the more immediate coastal environment.
Transient / Dynamic Attributes: related to seasonal / daily change, weather patterns, the motion of water, surf breaks, waterfalls, tidal flows, the presence of wildlife and the degree to which such exposure enhances the relative naturalness of the coastal environment.
Night-time Values: reflecting the extent to which lights, noise, perceived activities and exposure to the sky's star-field affect the perceived naturalness of the coastal environment.
OVERALL ASSESSMENT:
Overall Evaluation of Natural Character Values: Outstanding / High / Less than High

13 Natural hazards

Policy 13.1 Natural hazard risk management approach

Natural hazard risks are managed using an integrated and holistic approach that:

- a) ensures the risk from **natural hazards** does not exceed an acceptable level;
- b) protects health and safety;
- c) avoids the creation of new intolerable risk;
- d) Reduces intolerable risk to tolerable or acceptable levels;
- e) enhances community resilience;
- f) is aligned with civil defence approaches;
- g) prefers the use of natural features over man-made **structures** as defences against natural hazards;
- h) recognises natural systems and takes a 'whole of system' approach; and
- i) seeks to use the best available information/best practice.

The relevant objectives are:

- 3.1 Integrated management
- 3.2 Resource use and development
- 3.3 Decision making
- 3.6 Adapting to climate change
- 3.12 Built environment
- 3.16 Riparian areas and wetlands
- 3.21 Amenity
- 3.22 Natural character
- 3.24 Natural hazards

Implementation methods

13.1.1 Risk management framework

Regional and district plans shall incorporate a risk-based approach into the management of subdivision, use and development in relation to natural hazards. This should be in accordance with relevant standards, strategies and plans, and ensure that:

- a) new development is managed so that natural hazard risks do not exceed acceptable levels;
- b) intolerable risk is reduced to tolerable or acceptable levels
- c) the creation of new intolerable risk is avoided;
- d) any intolerable risk as a result of existing use and development is as low as reasonably achievable; and
- e) where intolerable risk remains, the risks will be managed until an acceptable level is achieved.

13.1.2 Define primary hazard zones

Waikato Regional Council will identify **primary hazard zones** in consultation with key stakeholders including but not limited to territorial authorities, **tāngata whenua**, **infrastructure** providers, and affected communities and these shall be recognised and provided for in regional and district plans.

13.1.3 Assess natural hazard risk to communities

Waikato Regional Council will collaborate with territorial authorities, tāngata whenua and other agencies to undertake assessments of coastal and other communities at risk or potentially at risk from natural hazards, and develop long-term strategies for these communities. The strategies will, as a minimum:

- a) include recommendations for any hazard zones that should be applied, including primary hazard zones;
- b) identify risks to the community and existing infrastructure from natural hazards; and

- c) identify options for reducing the risks to the community to an acceptable level and the relative benefits and costs of those options, including taking into account any effects on:
 - i) public access;
 - ii) **amenity values**; or
 - iii) **natural character** (including natural physical processes, **indigenous biodiversity**, landscape and water quality).

13.1.4 Regional natural hazards forum

Waikato Regional Council will establish and co-ordinate a regional natural hazards forum to promote organisational integration and information sharing across jurisdictional and plan boundaries.

13.1.5 Information, education and advocacy

Waikato Regional Council will:

- a) collaborate with:
 - i) territorial authorities to support the collection and analysis of natural hazard risk information;
 - ii) territorial authorities, the Ministry of Civil Defence and Emergency Management, the Waikato Civil Defence and Emergency Management Group and other agencies to develop and implement public education and awareness programmes on natural hazards and their associated risks;
 - iii) agencies involved in the property market, including insurance companies, lending agencies and real estate agencies to promote understanding and awareness of natural hazard risk to properties; and
 - iv) research organisations; and
- b) store all natural hazard risk information that is available and relevant to the Waikato region, and share this information with territorial authorities and other relevant stakeholders; and
- c) advocate for:
 - i) a proactive approach to natural hazard identification in district and regional plans;
 - ii) the use of best practice approaches, including **mātauranga Māori**, to natural hazard identification and management of the associated risks; and
 - iii) a strategic approach to development (including redevelopment) that seeks that any increase in risk from natural hazards (including **residual risk**) is minimised.

Explanation

The Resource Management Act, Local Government Act, Building Act and Civil Defence and Emergency Management Act are all relevant to the management of natural hazard risks. This can lead to uncertainty as local authorities have roles under each Act; however, each Act has a different focus. The management of natural hazard risks within the region should be consistent and should be aligned with civil defence approaches. The respective roles of regional and territorial authorities should be clear to avoid duplication of effort and uncertainty (covered in Chapter 4). This includes functions in relation to natural hazards information for which it is intended the regional council will take a central role through supporting the territorial authorities and centrally storing all relevant information. It is not expected that the regional council will be responsible for assessing or providing natural hazards information at an individual property scale.

There will be situations where the existing risk to life, property or the environment from natural hazards is considered to be intolerable (primary hazard zones). This could be because the risk is considered real within the short term, or because the potential consequences are significant due to the scale or vulnerability of the people, property or

the environment at risk. It is not feasible to set region-wide standards for the identification of these areas due to the variability of the region, including the physical environment, and economic, social and cultural factors. It is expected that these areas will be identified on a case-by-case basis, including through the community assessments under Method 13.1.3 and the management of these areas will be tailored to the local situation.

A strategic approach should be taken to natural hazards that avoids the need and demand for ad hoc responses to natural hazard events and recognises that natural hazards are essentially natural events which only really pose a problem when people or development are put at risk. It seeks that assessments are undertaken that consider the appropriate scale (for example, whole community, **catchment** or beach), and take into account the full range of effects and values, not just risks to people and property. Typical responses to natural hazards have involved attempts to structurally protect property. These responses often result in adverse effects that are borne by other property owners or the wider community. This policy and methods seek to ensure that where such decisions are made, they are made after full consideration of the relative costs and benefits.

The central concept of the management of natural hazards is the identification and management of activities based on the level of risk to which they are exposed. Avoidance or mitigation of natural hazards is based on risk (the likelihood and consequences of a hazard). Rare events with potentially catastrophic outcomes may have the same level of risk as frequent but low-impact events. Ideally, the risk of both extremes should be managed so as not to exceed an acceptable level. Method 13.1.3 directs regional and district plans to take a risk-based approach to natural hazard management and that the risk to people, the community, property and the environment does not exceed acceptable levels or risk is reduced to tolerable levels. It is expected that district plans will further define what is acceptable and tolerable risk in their community and for particular land uses. For example, residential development in a high risk flood zone is likely to exceed acceptable levels of risk due to the risk to life and property given the nature of the land use; however the risk to other types of development in the same area, for example farming, may be acceptable. Intolerable risk is where the risk to people, property or the environment cannot be justified.

Assessment of risk should be in accordance with relevant standards and plans including as relevant:

- a) NZS9401:2008 (Flood Risk Management – A Process Standard);
- b) the Waikato Civil Defence and Emergency Management Group Plan; and
- c) ISO 31000: 2009 (Risk Management).

The diagram below provides clarification of the structure of the natural hazard issues, objectives, policies and methods.



Policy 13.2 Manage activities to reduce the risks from natural hazards

Subdivision, use and development are managed to reduce the risks from natural hazards to an acceptable or tolerable level including by:

<i>The relevant objectives are:</i>	
3.1	<i>Integrated management</i>
3.2	<i>Resource use and development</i>
3.3	<i>Decision making</i>
3.6	<i>Adapting to climate change</i>
3.7	<i>Coastal environment</i>
3.24	<i>Natural hazards</i>

- a) ensuring risk is assessed for proposed activities on land subject to natural hazards;
- b) reducing the risks associated with existing use and development where these risks are intolerable;
- c) avoiding intolerable risk in any new use or development in areas subject to natural hazards;
- d) minimising any increase in vulnerability due to **residual risk**;
- e) avoiding the need or demand for new structural protection works; and
- f) discouraging hard protection structures and promoting the use of alternatives to them, including natural defences in the coastal environment.

Implementation methods

13.2.1 Control of subdivision within areas of intolerable risk

District plans shall control subdivision to avoid creating demand for new structures within identified **high risk flood zones** and identified primary hazard zones, and areas at high risk of coastal hazard.

13.2.2 Identification of areas of coastal hazard risk and high risk flood zones

District plans shall identify the location of areas:

- a) potentially affected by coastal hazards, prioritising the identification of those areas at high risk; and
- b) affected by high risk flood hazard.

13.2.3 Control of structures within primary hazard zones

Regional plans shall control any use or development of structures within identified primary hazard zones to reduce the risk from natural hazards to an acceptable level over time.

13.2.4 Floodplain management

Regional plans shall:

- a) control activities that divert or discharge flood water, including the importation of cleanfill into floodplains, in order to avoid or mitigate adverse effects of flooding and erosion; and
- b) ensure that an integrated catchment approach to flood management is adopted.

13.2.5 Control of use and development (high risk flood zones and areas of high coastal hazard risk)

Regional and district plans shall ensure that use and development within high risk flood zones and areas of high coastal hazard risk is appropriate, including by avoiding the placement of structures or development where these would be vulnerable to a natural hazard event or would place a community at intolerable risk. These include:

- a) habitable structures;

- b) significant community infrastructure such as hospitals and emergency services; and
- c) **lifeline utilities**.

13.2.6 Control of development within a floodplain or coastal hazard area

Regional and district plans shall ensure that:

- a) Subdivision, use and development can only occur in a floodplain with an annual exceedance probability of 1% (where the floodplain does not match the definition of being a High Risk Flood Zone) or in an identified potential coastal hazard area (not being a High Risk Coastal Hazard) area where:
 - i) appropriate assessment of the risks has been undertaken and these risks will not exceed acceptable levels;
 - ii) appropriate assessment of the likely effects has been undertaken, including the effects of any new structure or fill on the diversion of overland flows or any consequential increased runoff volumes;
 - iii) the creation of a new, or exacerbation of an existing hazard, including those off site, and any adverse effects are avoided, remedied or mitigated;
 - iv) any adverse effects of a 1% **annual exceedance probability** flood event on habitable buildings are avoided or mitigated;
 - v) has been designed and located to minimise the level of coastal hazard risk over its intended lifetime; and
 - vi) any **hazardous substance** stored as part of the development, or during the construction, or found on or near to the site, will not create a hazard; or
- b) it is essential infrastructure, and:
 - i) it cannot be located elsewhere; or
 - ii) it will not increase the risk of or from natural hazard.

13.2.7 Control of subdivision, use and development (residual risk zones)

District plans shall identify **residual risk zones** and shall control subdivision, use and development within these zones so that **residual risk** is minimised. In doing so, particular regard shall be had to:

- a) the level of service provided by the structural defences;
- b) the physical, environmental and financial sustainability of the structural defences over a period of at least 100 years;
- c) the impact caused by an **overwhelming** or a structural failure of protection works; and
- d) a reduction in the ability of a community to respond to and recover from a natural hazard event.

13.2.8 Control of subdivision, use and development for other natural hazards and associated risk

Regional and district plans shall control subdivision, use and development outside primary hazard zones, high risk flood zones, floodplains and residual risk zones to ensure:

- a) they do not create or exacerbate natural hazard risks elsewhere;
- b) they are appropriate by considering:
 - i) the likelihood that defensive structures or works will be required to protect the activity from the effects of natural hazards;
 - ii) the vulnerability of the activity to the effects of natural hazards;
 - iii) the potential for adverse effects on the wider local and/or regional community; and

- iv) whether or not the development is consistent with a growth strategy or structure plan; and
- c) the role of natural features to avoid or mitigate natural hazards should be recognised and maintained or enhanced.

Explanation

The intention is to reduce the risks to the regional community from natural hazards, recognising that different tools and approaches are required and appropriate in different situations – for example, for **greenfield** sites versus developed sites, for areas facing immediate risk versus those facing medium- to long-term risk, or depending on the particular natural hazard(s) faced in an area. This approach recognises that avoiding risk everywhere is impractical and seeks instead to ensure that development is appropriate with respect to the level of risk faced and the relative vulnerability of different activities. It also recognises that natural hazards are essentially natural events which only pose a hazard because development has occurred within their range and it will generally always be easier and cheaper to avoid development in these areas than manage the risk afterwards. This is especially true given the expected effects of climate change which will change the frequency, intensity and occurrence of weather- and sea level-related natural hazards.

Because existing lawfully established activities have some protection under the Resource Management Act (section 10), there are limitations on how territorial authorities can manage existing development. Regional councils are not restricted in the same way. It is expected that to effectively reduce the risks to people, property and the environment, it will be necessary to manage existing structures within primary hazard zones and, therefore, the regional council needs to take on this role. Territorial authorities will retain functions for structures in relation to matters such as access, daylight requirements, yards, and height restrictions. To avoid unnecessary complications due to this overlap, the regional council will investigate transferring its functions back to the relevant **territorial authority** (refer to section 33 RMA).

Areas of intolerable risk are those areas that have been classified as a High Risk Flood Zone or a Primary Hazard Zone. These are areas where modelling the risks to people and property are likely to be high. Development in these areas will be more tightly controlled in order to reduce the risk from hazards to an acceptable level.

The methods of this policy are predominantly focused towards identified hazard areas, including Primary Hazard Zones, Flood Risk Zones, areas at high risk of coastal hazard and Residual Risk Zones. Method 13.2.8 recognises that there are other natural hazards that may be relevant in particular areas e.g. coastal erosion, coastal flooding or liquefaction risk, and that development in these areas needs to be managed to ensure that the risk from these natural hazards does not exceed an acceptable level.

Policy 13.3 High impact, low probability natural hazard events

The relevant objective is:
3.24 Natural hazards

The risks associated with high impact, low probability natural hazard events such as tsunamis, volcanic eruptions, earthquakes and debris flows are considered, having particular regard to:

- a) personal health and safety;
- b) damage and/or disruption to essential community services;
- c) the ability of a community to respond and recover; and
- d) civil defence readiness, response and recovery planning.

Implementation methods

13.3.1 Planning for readiness, response and recovery

Local authorities should consider the potential effects of high impact, low probability natural hazard events and address these, including by:

- a) where possible avoiding new development in high risk hazard areas (for example, tsunami run-up areas). Development that may be directed away from such areas could include:
 - i) residential, commercial and industrial uses (especially those involving hazardous materials);
 - ii) lifeline utilities; and
 - iii) emergency services facilities including police, hospital and fire services;
- b) using other land use planning measures where it is not feasible to restrict land uses to open-space uses. These may include controlling the type of development and uses allowed in hazard areas, and avoiding high value and/or high occupancy uses to the greatest degree possible;
- c) for tsunami risk, considering site-specific mitigation measures aimed at slowing, blocking, or redirecting water, or raising structures and habitable areas above the expected level of inundation;
- d) avoiding or restricting the location of facilities such as hospitals, schools and other facilities that may be difficult to evacuate quickly in areas at risk from tsunami, lahars, lava and pyroclastic flows, and debris avalanches;
- e) liaising with civil defence and lifeline utility agencies; and
- f) designing safeguards for critical community networks (for example, water supply).

13.3.2 Advocacy

Waikato Regional Council will advocate for appropriate consideration and recognition of the likely effects of high impact, low probability natural hazard events, including through regional and district plans, structure plans, growth strategies and resource consent processes.

Explanation

It is practically impossible to completely avoid or even manage the risks associated with high impact, low probability natural hazard events such as tsunami, volcanic eruptions, earthquakes and debris flows. To do so would require relocation of the region's low-lying coastal settlements as well as those around the central volcanic plateau to name but a few. There are, however, practical measures that can be adopted to reduce or mitigate the risk, including by increasing our understanding of these events and where, when and how they may occur, or by increasing our preparedness for such events.

14 Soils

Policy 14.1 Maintain or enhance the life supporting capacity of the soil resource

Manage the soil resource to:

- a) minimise sedimentation and erosion;
- b) maintain or enhance biological, chemical and physical soil properties; and
- c) retain soil versatility to protect the existing and foreseeable range of uses of the soil resource.

The relevant objectives are:

- 3.2 Resource use and development
- 3.8 Ecosystem services
- 3.9 Relationship of *tāngata whenua* with the environment
- 3.25 Values of soil
- 3.26 High class soils

Implementation methods

14.1.1 Manage the effects of activities to maintain soil quality and reduce risk of erosion

Regional plans shall control the effects of activities to maintain **soil quality** and to reduce the risk of erosion, including:

- a) activities that negatively impact on soil quality and ecosystem services;
- b) activities on land with high erosion potential and/or near water bodies;
- c) earthworks and soil disturbance, including controlling the timing, duration, scale and location of soil exposure;
- d) maximising the retention of soil on site and in situ; and
- e) the adverse effects on pumice soils.

14.1.2 Soil conservation

Waikato Regional Council will prepare and administer soil conservation and **catchment** management programmes in order to reduce erosion risk.

14.1.3 Research and advocacy

Waikato Regional Council will:

- a) advocate for research into the risks from and effects of erosion and soil degradation, and for the development of land management practices that enhance the life supporting capacity of the soil resource; and
- b) collaborate with primary industry, landowners, **tāngata whenua** and other stakeholders to develop and adopt best practice, and to provide education and advice to land managers.

14.1.4 Pest management

Waikato Regional Council will ensure that the Regional Pest Management Strategy addresses the control of pest species that may threaten or damage vegetation that offers protection from soil erosion.

Explanation

The Waikato region relies on the soil resource to support primary industries including farming, forestry and horticulture.

The processes to form soil occur over hundreds to thousands of years, so keeping soil on site and in situ is the most natural and effective way for soil to continue to provide **ecosystem services** and maintain quality for a range of uses. Retaining soil on site and in situ is the most effective means of meeting Policy 14.1 to maintain or enhance

the values of the soil resource. There are, however, some activities that require soil removal and accordingly Method 14.1.1 is to maximise the retention of soil on site and in situ, rather than require full retention.

Soil disturbance and loss results in a decline in soil quality and productive capability, and a loss in the range of purposes for which the soil can be used. Erosion occurs naturally irrespective of land use, but the way that land is managed changes the risk and extent of soil disturbance and loss. For example, the risk and extent of soil lost during cultivation practices or as a result of vegetation removal may be affected by the soil type, topography, timing, scale of the activity, or by the way in which the activity is carried out. Methods 14.1.1, 14.1.2 and 14.1.4 focus on managing activities when the risk of erosion is high or where it may result in adverse effects on water quality and elsewhere.

Degradation of the soil resource may also occur through changes in physical condition, including porosity and soil structure, chemical properties including carbon levels (organic matter), and biological activity. These affect productivity and health of soil and its ability to hold and use nutrients and water. Method 14.1.3 recognises that working with industry and land managers and advocating for good soil management practices offers opportunities to ensure that soil quality is maintained or enhanced. Research into soil and land management practices may include consideration of carbon sequestration, greenhouse gas emissions and the values of soils under native vegetation as a reservoir of **biodiversity** and of ecosystem services.

Primary production activities such as agriculture, forestry and horticulture have a direct relationship with the management and continued viability and availability of the soil resource. Policy 4.4 and associated methods recognise this relationship, as well as the social and economic value and benefits that are to be derived from ongoing availability of resources such as soils.

Policy 14.2 High class soils

Avoid a decline in the availability of **high class soils** for primary production due to inappropriate subdivision, use or development.

The relevant objectives are:
 3.2 Resource use and development
 3.8 Ecosystem services
 3.10 Sustainable and efficient use of resources
 3.25 Values of soil
 3.26 High class soils

Implementation methods

14.2.1 Manage the form and location of development

District plans shall give priority to productive uses of high class soils over non-productive uses including through:

- a) restricting **urban** and **rural-residential development** on high class soils;
- b) restricting the level of impermeable surfaces allowable on high class soils;
- c) facilitating the return or continued availability of high class soils to primary production activities, for example through amalgamation of small titles;
- d) directing urban and rural-residential development onto soils of lesser versatility where there is an option to do so;
- e) accepting that where high class soil removal or disturbance cannot be avoided, the soil should be used to rehabilitate the land or enhance soils elsewhere in the region in order to retain soil versatility and productive capacity; and
- f) the development of growth strategies.

For the purpose of implementing the above method (including in particular development referred to in (a), (b) and (d)), development provided for in:

- a) a growth strategy identified in Chapter 6 of this Regional Policy Statement; or

- b) a council-approved growth strategy developed with regard to the development principles in 6A, shall be recognised and provided for where such growth strategies identify development which may occur on high class soils.

14.2.2 Provision of information

Waikato Regional Council will make information on high class soils, including the soil classifications, available to territorial authorities and other interested parties.

Explanation

Waikato region contains about one quarter of New Zealand's high class soils, making them a significant national resource within the region. High class soils are inherently highly productive for a wide range of purposes not always possible on other class soils. They are a finite resource.

Policy 14.2 recognises that many of the region's high class soils are in or around urban areas and are consequently under pressure from urban expansion and **infrastructure** development. Using high class soils for urban development pushes agricultural activities onto more marginal soils. This has the potential to increase adverse environmental effects and necessitates greater inputs, such as fertiliser and water, to maintain production than would have been required on high class soils. It is desirable, therefore, that district plans recognise the importance of restricting use of high class soils for uses other than primary production purposes or, in situations where only high class soils are available, that Class III soils are used in preference to Classes I and II.

It is not the intention of Policy 14.2 or its methods to prevent all urban development on high class soils. However, it is expected that, in order to ensure development is appropriate, it would be subject to a comprehensive planning process such as district plan review, structure plan or growth strategy prior to any re-zoning. In addition, Chapter 6 includes further guidance on avoiding fragmentation of high class soils.

Policy 14.3 Soil contaminants

Ensure that **contaminants** in soils are minimised and do not cause a reduction in the range of existing and foreseeable uses of the soil resource. Particular attention will be given to the potential for effects on:

- a) human health;
- b) animal health;
- c) suitability of soil for food production;
- d) micro-nutrient availability;
- e) soil ecology; and
- f) groundwater.

The relevant objectives are:

- 3.1 Integrated management
- 3.8 Ecosystem services
- 3.10 Sustainable and efficient use of resources
- 3.14 Mauri and values of fresh water bodies
- 3.25 Values of soil
- 3.26 High class soils

Implementation methods

14.3.1 Control discharges to land

Regional plans shall control discharges to land to ensure the accumulation of soil contaminants does not reduce the range of existing and foreseeable uses of the soil resource. For key soil contaminants including cadmium, fluorine and zinc, Waikato Regional Council will consider:

- a) adopting risk-based guidelines for contaminants in soil and linking these with specific management actions; and
- b) establishing processes to determine discharge limits which may include setting maximum discharge limits based on soil contaminant levels.

14.3.2 Research, advocacy and education

Waikato Regional Council will:

- a) work with industry and other stakeholders to identify, and incorporate into land management practices, actions to reduce the rate of accumulation of key soil contaminants including cadmium, fluorine and zinc;
- b) work with relevant agencies towards increasing the understanding of diffuse contaminant issues and developing relevant national strategies; and
- c) advocate for sustainable land management practices and the use of alternative technologies that minimise the risk of diffuse soil contamination, including through environmental education programmes.

Explanation

The intent of Policy 14.3 is to minimise contaminants in soils. Contaminants in soils, and the accumulation of contaminants, can lead to reduced soil versatility and productivity and in some cases can render land unsuitable for food production and for people to inhabit. Situations already exist in the region where the level of a contaminant has rendered an area unsuitable for habitation, and remediation was required before the area could be developed for housing. Adverse effects may also arise if a contaminant leaches from soil to groundwater, or if it causes a change in micro-nutrient (trace element) availability, resulting in either deficiency or toxicity of a micro-nutrient to animals or plants and affecting their health.

Contamination of soils arises from the discharge of contaminants onto or into land from sources such as phosphate fertiliser, animal health remedies and biosolids. Contamination may be diffuse over large areas of soil or concentrated at a particular site, and the approach used to manage activities likely to result in contamination will differ, depending on the contaminant involved and the source of the contaminant.

Contaminants currently causing concern include cadmium, fluorine and zinc, but the policy is not specific and the methods provide for research, collaboration and best practice advice on any potential contaminant issue. Regular monitoring will provide information on contaminant levels and trends.

Policy 14.4 Contaminated land

Identify and manage **contaminated land** to ensure human, plant and animal health, and water, air and soil quality are protected from unacceptable risk.

Implementation methods

14.4.1 District plans

District plans shall include provisions that support the implementation of the Resource Management (National Environmental Standard for Assessing and Managing Contaminants in Soil to Protect Human Health) Regulations 2011.

14.4.2 Regional plans

Regional plans shall control discharges to and from land arising from remediation or management of contaminated land to reduce the potential for the creation of further contaminated land.

14.4.3 Approach to identifying and remediating contaminated land

- a) Waikato Regional Council will collaborate with territorial authorities and other relevant stakeholders to:

The relevant objectives are:

- 3.1 Integrated management
- 3.3 Decision making
- 3.8 Ecosystem services
- 3.10 Sustainable and efficient use of resources
- 3.11 Air quality
- 3.14 Mauri and values of fresh water bodies
- 3.25 Values of soil

- i) identify and monitor existing or potentially contaminated land and develop a protocol for the proper use and release of this information; and
 - ii) develop consistent, efficient and effective approaches to remediating and managing contaminated land for when there is an unacceptable risk to human health and the environment; and
- b) territorial authorities shall control any actual or potential effects of the subdivision, development, change in use, or ongoing use of contaminated land.

14.4.4 Advocacy

Waikato Regional Council will:

- a) seek guidance and assistance from central government on the management of specific contaminated lands;
- b) recognise and apply relevant Ministry for the Environment criteria and best practice guidance when managing contaminated land; and
- c) encourage the active management and remediation of identified areas of contaminated land.

Explanation

People, animals and the environment can be exposed to risk from contaminated land in a number of ways, including direct contact with contaminated soil, swallowing food or water from contaminated environments and breathing gases or contaminated dust.

Exposure to **hazardous substances** can have significant adverse effects on human health and on soil, surface water, groundwater and ecosystems. As well as endangering health, these substances can limit the current and future uses of land and reduce land value.

Contamination is not always limited to a specific site. Hazardous substances may seep through the soil into groundwater, or be carried to nearby land and waterways in rainwater or on dust particles. Vapour and gases from contaminated land may present additional risks of explosion and odour.

New Zealand has a legacy of soil contamination that requires areas of contaminated land to be identified and assessed particularly prior to any development in order to ensure that the land does not pose an unacceptable risk.

Waikato Regional Council will apply relevant Ministry for the Environment guidelines when managing contaminated land. However, where relevant guidance is unavailable other national or international criteria and best practice guidance may be applied.

The Resource Management (National Environmental Standard for Assessing and Managing Contaminants in Soil to Protect Human Health) Regulations 2011 (NЕСS) now largely govern **territorial authority** responses to soil contamination. A district plan cannot be more nor less stringent than the NESCS, except where a rule is included for the purpose of giving effect to the Vision and Strategy for the Waikato River, in which case the rule may be more stringent than the NESCS. Territorial authorities should consider the need for district plan provisions to support the implementation of the NESCS. For example, resource consent applications arising under the NESCS could be supported by appropriate objectives and policies and a list of information to be supplied with applications.

It is expected that this will be a collaborative approach that uses Waikato Regional Council's expertise.

Policy 14.5 Peat soils

Manage the adverse effects of activities resulting from use and development of **peat soils**, including by slowing the rate of subsidence and the loss of carbon by oxidation from peat soils.

Implementation methods

14.5.1 Manage peat subsidence

Regional plans shall control activities on peat soils to promote best practice land management to:

- a) slow the rate of subsidence of peat soils and carbon loss;
- b) mitigate the adverse effects resulting from use and development of peat soils, including off-site effects on habitats, infrastructure, properties and other development; and
- c) ensure drainage infrastructure minimises any adverse effects on peat soils and subsidence on peat lakes.

14.5.2 Research

Waikato Regional Council will undertake and promote research to increase information on the rates and long-term impacts of subsidence and carbon loss on peat soils, associated environments and infrastructure.

14.5.3 Advocacy and education

Waikato Regional Council will advocate soil management and land use practices that avoid degradation of peat soils, including through environmental education programmes.

Explanation

Subsidence occurring as a consequence of drainage activities can adversely affect adjacent infrastructure, such as roads, and provision of services. In these situations it is appropriate that plan provisions provide for the remediation or mitigation of adverse effects.

The Waikato region contains 94,000 hectares of farmed peat, about half of New Zealand's peatland resource. Drainage and cultivation allow these soils to be farmed but this results in subsidence and oxidation of the peat and ultimately the loss of the peat resource. Subsidence can also draw down the water table on adjacent **wetlands** and contribute to greenhouse gas emissions through carbon loss.

Good moisture and pasture management can reduce the rate of subsidence and prolong the life and the use of the resource. Research is required to better understand the effects of land management on rate of subsidence and the long-term impacts of this on the peat resource and associated wetland ecosystems. Reduction of subsidence will be achieved through advocacy of practices identified to reduce moisture loss, as well as from regulation of some activities to reduce adverse effects.

The relevant objectives are:

- 3.2 *Resource use and development*
- 3.8 *Ecosystem services*
- 3.10 *Sustainable and efficient use of resources*
- 3.12 *Built environment*
- 3.16 *Riparian areas and wetlands*
- 3.25 *Values of soil*



PART C

PART C

TE WĀHANGA C

15 Monitoring and evaluation

15.1 General

Waikato Regional Council has identified through this Regional Policy Statement resource management issues for the region, and objectives, policies and methods to address these issues. It will measure success (or not) of the policies through monitoring and review, in order to determine whether any changes are needed to the policy framework.

This part of the Regional Policy Statement fulfils the requirements of Section 62(1)(j) of the Resource Management Act by identifying how Waikato Regional Council will determine if this Regional Policy Statement is working or not. It identifies the procedures to be used to establish the efficiency and effectiveness of policies and methods to achieve the stated objectives. Successful policy in this respect is defined as achieving the desired end results (objectives) by doing the things we said we would (policies and methods) and to compare those policies and methods for relative effectiveness.

This will require analysis and evaluation of the actions of not only Waikato Regional Council, but also those of the territorial authorities within the region as these relate to the development and implementation of district plans. It will also require an understanding of the changing condition of the natural and physical resources within the region that are identified in Part B of this policy statement. The policy monitoring and evaluation process is summarised in Figure 15-1 below.

In most situations, the desired condition for the region's natural and physical resources is expressed as enduring objectives or as a trend, as this reflects the reality that changes in condition will – in most cases – take many generations to achieve. The review period for this policy statement is a maximum of ten years from the time it becomes operative. Objectives will extend beyond the reviews of each successive policy statement. For this reason, the year 2000, when the first policy statement became operative, has been established as the baseline for trend-related condition measurements.

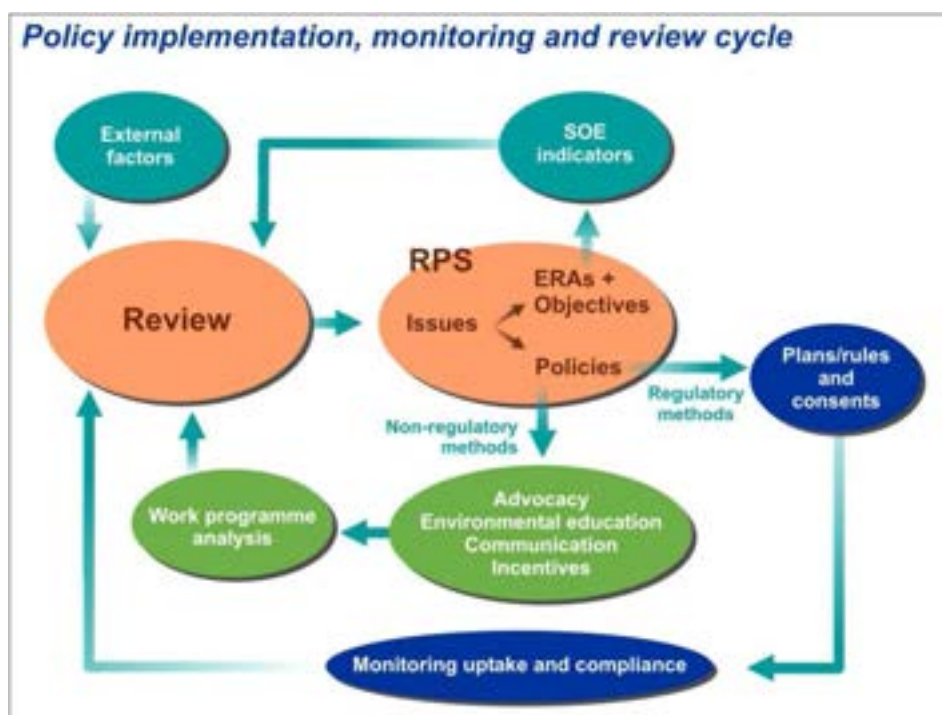


Figure 15: Policy implementation, monitoring and review cycle

15.2 Review existing procedures for monitoring

The Waikato region already has a comprehensive integrated monitoring programme in place (Information Gathering Action Plan) that has been designed to collect information to address a number of statutory requirements for monitoring, primarily the:

- Resource Management Act 1991;
- Local Government Act 2002;
- Biosecurity Act 1993;
- Hauraki Gulf Marine Park Act 2000; and
- Land Transport Management Act 2003.

The regional monitoring programme will be reviewed to ensure that monitoring activities (for example, state-of-environment reporting and monitoring and reporting of Community Outcomes) are collecting relevant information that will:

- a) allow an understanding of progress towards the stated objectives in Part A (long-term focus); and
- b) environmental results anticipated (short- to medium-term focus) in this part of the policy statement.

The monitoring programme review will have particular regard to the benefits gained through alignment of monitoring and data collection effort and ensuring that as much of the existing baseline information can be used and built upon. It will recognise the value of long-term monitoring to the recognition and understanding of trends. Results of the monitoring programme will be publicly available.

15.3 Tāngata whenua involvement

The state of the region's natural resources and effects of their use are of vital interest to tāngata whenua of the region. Some indicators of natural resource and ecosystem health are either more efficiently measured at the community level or relate to concepts that there are, as yet, no scientific equivalent measurements, for instance matters involving mātauranga Māori and the mauri of natural resources. In the future, methods will need to be developed for cultural health indicators and it is anticipated that the design and implementation of monitoring programmes will involve tāngata whenua.

15.4 Environmental results anticipated

The changes we expect to see as a result of implementing policies and methods, known as environmental results anticipated, are outlined in sections 15.4.1 - 15.4.11 below. These statements allow the effectiveness and efficiency of this policy statement to be determined.

The environmental results anticipated will help shape Waikato Regional Council's monitoring framework, and are designed to provide a vision of what policy success will look like.

15.4.1 Integrated management

- a) Land use activities are appropriately managed to avoid, remedy or mitigate future adverse effects, including the effects of climate change and reverse sensitivity effects.
- b) The benefits of property-level environmental management plans are investigated and options developed.
- c) The coastal environment of the Waikato region is identified and incorporated into relevant regional and district plans.
- d) No unanticipated adverse effects on the marine environment are caused by land use activities and vice versa.
- e) Processes to track and anticipate land and resource use trends and effects are established.

- f) District plans give effect to the Regional Policy Statement.
- g) Cross-boundary issues are identified and addressed in a consistent manner in regional and district plans.
- h) Processes for regular liaison with tāngata whenua and other local authorities are established.
- i) Mechanisms are in place with Auckland Council, Bay of Plenty Regional Council, Hawke's Bay Regional Council, Manawatu-Wanganui Regional Council and Taranaki Regional Council regarding the management of cross-boundary issues.
- j) Mechanisms are in place to ensure the consistent management of geothermal resources and the Rotorua Lake catchment between Waikato and Bay of Plenty regions.
- k) Preparation of a spatial plan for the Hauraki Gulf is investigated.
- l) Formal partnership agreements exist between the Waikato Regional Council and iwi authorities of the region.

15.4.2 Air

- a) Emissions per capita from both the domestic and transport sector are reduced.
- b) Assessments of air quality indicate no unacceptable risk to human health from air.
- c) Use of public transport is increased.
- d) There are decreasing annual average concentrations of PM₁₀ in monitored urban areas.
- e) There is a reduction in the number of exceedences of ambient air quality guidelines or standards.
- f) All gazetted air sheds have achieved the National Environmental Standards for Air Quality for fine particulate matter.

15.4.3 Built environment

- a) New development is not subject to intolerable levels of risk from natural hazards.
- b) There is greater use of walking, cycling and public transport in urban areas.
- c) Vehicle kilometres travelled per capita are reduced.
- d) No increase in per capita energy use in the Waikato region.
- e) Solid waste entering landfill is reduced.
- f) Indigenous biodiversity in urban (including rural-residential) areas is improved.
- g) Most rural-residential development occurs in identified areas.
- h) Rural-residential development does not inhibit ability to allow for expected urban expansion needs.
- i) Fragmentation of high class soils is reduced.
- j) New development does not impact on the efficiency and effectiveness of existing infrastructure.
- k) Development of the built environment does not result in a reduction in valued natural environments, amenity values, landscapes and heritage sites.
- l) New urban developments are more compact.
- m) Development of the built environment does not prevent extraction of minerals from identified significant mineral resources.
- n) Development does not reduce access to water bodies and the coast.
- o) Development in the coastal environment does not diminish coastal values in a way that was not anticipated by development planning.
- p) There is increased adoption of low-impact stormwater design.
- q) There are increased examples of green/sustainable technologies in the Waikato region.

- r) Development in the Future Proof area is consistent with the Future Proof Guiding Principles (Section 3 of Future Proof Growth Strategy).
- s) Valued coastal habitats that may be affected by sea level rise are identified.
- t) A strategic framework for infrastructure in the coastal marine area is developed.
- u) District plans provide for the development of marae and papakāinga.
- v) A transmission corridor management approach is developed and consistently implemented.
- w) Development in Thames-Coromandel District is consistent with the directions of Blueprint.
- x) Development in Taupo District is consistent with the directions of Taupo 2050.
- y) Development in Franklin is consistent with the directions of the Franklin District Growth Strategy.
- z) A secure (reliable and resilient) electricity generation and transmission system in the region that meets demand.
- za) Increased supply of renewable energy contributes towards improved security of supply.
- zb) There is a decreased dependence on energy from non-renewable sources and increase in the use of renewable energy sources.
- (zc) Regionally significant industry is retained and provided for.

15.4.4 Coastal marine area

- a) Access to mahinga kai is maintained.
- b) Allocation of space in the coastal marine area is based on appropriate and consistent criteria.
- c) Marine habitats and ecosystems are protected from significant adverse effects.
- d) Coastal water is safe for contact recreation, shellfish gathering and recreational fishing, and aquaculture.
- e) Marine water quality is maintained or enhanced.
- f) Marine water quality standards are developed and water meets these standards.
- g) Public values of the coastal environment are enhanced through the use of occupation charges and mitigation of unavoidable adverse effects.

15.4.5 Fresh water bodies

- a) Fenced, planted and managed riparian margins along waterways are increased.
- b) The values of those water bodies listed in section 8B are maintained at their 2000 level, or are enhanced.
- c) The proportion of monitored sites on water bodies across the region that meet or exceed standards for satisfactory water quality and ecological health are increased.
- d) Water quality and quantity and habitat quality in water bodies supports functioning and healthy ecosystems.
- e) There are no new barriers to fish passage and the number of existing impediments is reduced.
- f) The known distribution and diversity of aquatic biota in fresh water bodies is maintained or enhanced.
- g) Flow regimes, in rivers and lakes, maintain the variability required to sustain ecological functions and do not result in excessive plant cover and/or other forms of degradation that adversely affects aquatic ecosystems.
- h) There is no reduction in extent or condition of wetlands, with some wetlands exhibiting physical, chemical, hydrological or biological improvements.
- i) Te Ture Whaimana o te Awa o Waikato is being implemented.

15.4.6 Geothermal

- a) Tāngata whenua have a greater role in the management of the Regional Geothermal Resource.
- b) There is greater public awareness of the characteristics of geothermal resources, including Significant Geothermal Features.
- c) Adverse effects on Significant Geothermal Features are managed consistently with the relevant Geothermal System Classification.
- d) Some geothermal energy available for use by present and future generations.
- e) Land use, development and use of non-geothermal water are compatible with the purpose for which geothermal systems are classified.
- f) Adverse effects on Significant Geothermal Features from the development and uses of non-geothermal water and the new development and uses of land are avoided, with the exception of existing effects from the operation of the Waikato River system for hydroelectric generation.
- g) Large-scale use of geothermal energy and water are enabled in Development Geothermal Systems.
- h) Adverse effects on other natural and physical resources, including overlying structures, from take, use and discharge of geothermal energy and water are avoided, remedied or mitigated.
- i) The risk of hydrothermal eruptions is reduced.
- j) Economic benefits derived from access to some of the energy and other geothermal characteristics, including non-extractive uses, and to Significant Geothermal Features.
- k) Understanding of the Regional Geothermal Resource and the characteristics of Research Systems through controlled research of these systems is increased.
- l) In situ uses of geothermal energy are increased.
- m) There is increased protection for the full range of geothermal features.
- n) Research Geothermal Systems are reclassified as Development, Limited Development or Protected Geothermal Systems.
- o) There is increased use of energy- and water-efficient technologies and more efficient use of the Regional Geothermal Resource.

15.4.7 Heritage

- a) The number of identified heritage sites within the region is increased.
- b) The number of formally protected heritage sites is increased.
- c) There is increased community awareness of the relevance of heritage resources.
- d) Regional Heritage Inventory is developed.
- e) Regional Heritage Forum is established.
- f) There is increased identification of taonga.
- g) Systems and processes to protect sensitive information are developed.

15.4.8 Indigenous biodiversity

- a) There is no net loss in area or values of significant vegetation or significant habitat of indigenous fauna, see 15.4.6c) in relation to Geothermal Features.
- b) The number and extent of significant natural areas which are formally protected or covenanted is increased.
- c) The number and extent of significant natural areas which are protected from grazing by stock is increased.
- d) There is no decline in the extent of under-represented indigenous ecosystem types (those with 20 per cent or less of their original extent).
- e) There is no reduction in extent of coastal wetlands, estuaries, salt marshes and sand dunes in the coastal environment.

- f) The lineal extent of esplanade reserves and strips along waterways and the coast is increased.
- g) The availability of funding or other incentives for protection, enhancement and restoration activities is increased.
- h) The area of restored or recreated indigenous biodiversity is increased, including areas under sustained pest control, or formal protection.
- i) There is no human-induced loss of indigenous species or their natural range within the region.
- j) Fragmentation of indigenous ecosystems, habitats and areas is reduced.

15.4.9 Landscape, natural character and amenity

- a) The values of identified outstanding landscapes are not degraded.
- b) New infrastructure and utility corridors are not inappropriately placed in outstanding landscapes.
- c) There is no reduction in natural character where it is pristine or outstanding.
- d) There is no loss in functioning of natural elements in the coastal environment due to inappropriate development.
- e) The type and scale of subdivision or development in the coastal environment does not degrade natural character.
- f) Opportunities for access along the coast, lakes and rivers are increased.
- g) Any loss of existing public access is mitigated or remedied so that the ability to get to and along the coast is maintained.
- h) There is no damage to dunes and other sensitive coastal areas from vehicles.

15.4.10 Natural hazards

- a) There is no increase in the number of habitable buildings or other vulnerable development located in identified high flood risk zones.
- b) Community awareness of the risk from natural hazards and the relationship between activities and natural hazards is increased.
- c) The number of habitable buildings or other vulnerable development at unacceptable risk from natural hazards in primary hazard zones is reduced.
- d) The need/demand for flood and erosion protection structures is reduced.

15.4.11 Soils

- a) The area affected by erosion is reduced.
- b) The land area impacted by a decline in soil quality characteristics (such as compaction) is reduced.
- c) Fragmentation of high class soils is reduced.
- d) The rate of accumulation of contaminants in soil across the region (such as cadmium, and zinc) is reduced.
- e) The risks to human health and the environment associated with soil contamination are reduced.
- f) Understanding of the impacts of shrinkage on peat soils is improved.
- g) There is a reduction in the rates of shrinkage of and carbon loss on peat soils.
- h) There is minimisation of adverse effects of peat shrinkage on habitats and infrastructure, and appropriate remediation or mitigation where effects are unavoidable.
- i) Contaminated land is identified and managed before any land use change or site development occurs.

15.5 Giving effect to the Regional Policy Statement

The objectives, policies and methods of this Regional Policy Statement need to be incorporated into regional and district plans. They should also inform:

- relevant plans and strategies prepared under other statutes (e.g. Biosecurity Act and land transport legislation); and
- other (non-regulatory) activities.

Local authorities need to provide sufficient resources through long-term and annual planning for preparation, review, monitoring, implementation and enforcement of regional and district plans. Education and advocacy and other non-regulatory methods are important components of this Regional Policy Statement and will also require resourcing.

Waikato Regional Council will have a role in assisting territorial authorities with the interpretation of the objectives, policies and methods into district plans and other plans and strategies. Evaluation of the effectiveness of this Regional Policy Statement will include establishing whether the objectives, policies and methods have been interpreted consistently and as intended.

It will take time for the effects of implementing the policies and methods in this Regional Policy Statement to be seen. To allow for this, the provisions in Part B will be comprehensively reviewed in a staggered way every five years (interim reviews).

16 Principal reasons for adopting

16.1 Background

Section 62(1)(f) of the Resource Management Act requires that regional policy statements state the principal reasons for adopting objectives, policies and implementation methods.

When adopting a proposed regional policy statement the council must also adopt a draft consideration of alternatives, benefits and costs as outlined in Section 32(2) of the RMA (Section 32 analysis). This analysis:

- a) contains detailed reasons for each provision;
- b) outlines the reasons why each objective is the most appropriate way to achieve the purpose of the Resource Management Act; and
- c) discusses whether, having regard to their efficiency and effectiveness, the policies and methods are the most appropriate for achieving the objectives.

The report also evaluates the benefits and costs of policies and methods and the risk of acting or not acting if there is uncertain or insufficient information available.

The principal reasons for adopting each provision are included in the Section 32 analysis and readers should refer to this.

16.2 Objectives

All objectives in the Regional Policy Statement have been adopted to address the regionally significant resource management issues (including resource management issues of significance to iwi authorities) outlined in Chapter 1.

The regionally significant issues were identified from analysis of the state of the environment, existing regional plans and strategies (including the operative Regional Policy Statement and iwi management plans), and feedback received from councillors, tāngata whenua, territorial authorities and other stakeholders in workshops and committee meetings.

Achievement of the objectives will promote the sustainable management of natural and physical resources in line with the purpose of the Resource Management Act.

Chapter 3 of the Section 32 analysis provides the principal reasons for adopting each objective.

16.3 Policies and implementation methods

The policies in the Regional Policy Statement set the course of action that is to be followed to achieve the objectives.

Policies are supported by explanations in each chapter, as well as the description of the environmental results anticipated and processes for monitoring the efficiency and effectiveness of the policies (Chapter 15).

Implementation methods state the actions that will or should be undertaken to implement the policies. There are two types of methods – regulatory and non regulatory. Policies may be implemented through either or both type of method.

Regulatory methods include those which direct what will or should be included in regional plans, the Waikato Regional Land Transport Plan and district plans.

PRINCIPAL REASONS FOR ADOPTING

Non-regulatory methods include those that specify guidance should or will be prepared, methods for integrated management of resources, investigation of resources needed and support and assistance required to implement the policies.

The effectiveness and efficiency of each policy and its accompanying methods is evaluated in depth in Part B of the Section 32 analysis. In general, specific policy/method packages have been adopted because they have been assessed as the most effective and efficient combination to achieve the objectives. The evaluation of the preferred policy and method packages provided in the Section 32 analysis should therefore be considered the principal reasons for adopting the policies and methods contained in this Regional Policy Statement.



GLOSSARY

TE KUPUTAKA

GLOSSARY

Glossary

* denotes definitions from the Resource Management Act
italic entries are explanations of Māori terms used in the Regional Policy Statement rather than strict definitions

Accidental discovery protocols – establish the steps to be taken in the event that historic heritage (such as archaeological or **wāhi tapu** sites) is unexpectedly discovered during subdivision, use or development.

Ahi kā – *central to the concept of ahi kā is the notion of occupation, occupying a place with iwi, or hapū to maintain a representational presence on the part of whānau. This concept is linked with mana whenua, the idea of maintaining strong links to areas by occupation gives a sense of higher and senior priority over decision making.*

Allocable flow – the amount of water in a **water body** that can be allocated for take or use.

Amenity values* – those natural or physical qualities and characteristics of an area that contribute to people's appreciation of its pleasantness, aesthetic coherence, and cultural and recreational attributes.

Annual exceedance probability – the estimated probability of an event occurring in any one year – for example, a 1% annual exceedance probability means an event that has an estimated probability of occurrence of 1 per cent in any one year.

Atua – *deities and personifications of supernatural beings. Examples of these include Ranginui and Papatūānuku.*

Biodiversity – the variability among living organisms, and the ecological complexes of which they are a part, including diversity within species, between species, and of ecosystems.

Built environment – buildings, physical **infrastructure** and other **structures** in **urban**, rural and the **coastal marine area**, and their relationships to natural resources, land use and people.

Catchment – the area of land that provides water to a **water body**.

Coastal environment – the environment where the coast is a significant part or element, comprising at least:

- a) the **coastal marine area**;
- b) islands within the coastal marine area;
- c) areas where coastal processes, qualities or influences are significant, including coastal lakes, lagoons, tidal estuaries, salt marshes, coastal **wetlands**, and the margins of these;
- d) areas at risk from coastal hazards;
- e) coastal vegetation and the habitat of **indigenous** coastal species, including migratory birds;
- f) elements and features that contribute to **natural character**, visual qualities or **amenity values**;
- g) items of cultural and historic heritage in the coastal marine area or on the coast;
- h) inter-related coastal marine and terrestrial systems, including the intertidal zone; and
- i) physical resources and built facilities, including **infrastructure**, that have modified the coastal environment.

Coastal marine area* – the foreshore, seabed, and coastal water, and air space above the water:

- a) of which the seaward boundary is the outer limits of the territorial sea;
- b) of which the landward boundary is the line of mean high water springs, except that where that line crosses a river, the landward boundary at that point shall be whichever is the lesser of-
 - i) 1 kilometre upstream from the mouth of the river; or
 - ii) The point upstream that is calculated by multiplying the width of the river mouth by 5.

Commercial development – the range of commercial activities including office, retail and commercial service provision.

Common marine and coastal area – the marine and coastal area (“MCA”) excluding private title and conservation areas. The MCA is defined in the Marine and Coastal Area (Takutai Moana) Act 2011 as meaning:

- a) the area that is bounded –
 - i) on the landward side, by the line of mean high-water springs; and
 - ii) on the seaward side, by the outer limits of the territorial sea; and
- b) includes the beds of rivers that are part of the **coastal marine area** (within the meaning of the Resource Management Act 1991); and
- c) includes the airspace above, and the water space (but not the water) above, the areas described in paragraphs (a) and (b); and
- d) includes the subsoil, bedrock, and other matter under the areas described in paragraphs (a) and (b)

Contaminant* – includes any substance (including gases, odorous compounds, liquids, solids and micro-organisms) or energy (excluding noise) or heat, that either by itself or in combination with the same, similar, or other substances, energy, or heat –

- a) when discharged into water, changes or is likely to change the physical, chemical, or biological condition of water; or
- b) when discharged onto or into land or into air, changes or is likely to change the physical, chemical, or biological condition of the land or air onto or into which it is discharged.

Contaminated land* – means land that has a **hazardous substance** in or on it that –

- a) has significant adverse effects on the environment; or
- b) is reasonably likely to have significant adverse effects on the environment.

Cultural impact assessments – reports documenting Māori cultural values, interests and associations with an area or a resource and the potential impacts of a proposed activity on these. They are tools to facilitate meaningful and effective participation of Māori in impact assessment and should be regarded as technical advice, much like any other technical report such as ecological or hydrological assessments.

Cultural value assessments – variations of **cultural impact assessments**. These can be used in assessing or providing background information when preparing plans. They can identify and describe values pertaining to an area or resource. They differ from cultural impact assessments in that they may not include a description of effects as they do not relate to a specific activity. However, they may address broad level impacts of development occurring or anticipated in that area. Cultural value assessments can provide direction as to the relevant issues and how these should best be addressed.

Domestic or municipal supply – means a reticulated supply publicly or privately owned where the net take is:

- a) for the primary purpose of human drinking, sanitation and household needs wherever they arise; or

- b) for the purpose of enabling local authorities to meet their general responsibilities (wherever they arise) under the Local Government Act 2002, the Health Act 1956 and relevant legislation, including supply for the purposes of industrial and agricultural use.

Ecological sequence – a series of two or more connected ecosystems or vegetation types that retain natural transition zones along an environmental gradient. Ecological sequences that are not common in the Waikato region include, but are not restricted to:

- a) native dune vegetation through to coastal scrub or forest;
- b) lake margins or geothermal systems to native forest; and
- c) coastal to alpine vegetation.

Such sequences should be largely intact (e.g. perhaps bisected by roads but not by large tracts of non-native land cover), such that they can be traversed by the majority of **indigenous** species that are reliant on such sequences for the completion of part or all of their life-cycles (either by deliberate movement or dispersal of propagules such as seed or pollen). An exceptional representative sequence will be one of the best examples of its type, taking into account its intactness, composition and ecological processes.

Ecological sustainability – a site's ability to continue to exist as an area of **indigenous** vegetation or habitat for indigenous fauna when taking into account its size, shape, buffering from external effects, connection to other natural areas and likely threats. It may change naturally into a different habitat but will continue to contain mainly **indigenous** species and remain of natural character.

Ecosystem services – the benefits people obtain from ecosystems. These include:

- a) provisioning services (such as food and water);
- b) regulating services (such as flood and disease control);
- c) cultural services (such as spiritual, recreational, and cultural benefits); and
- d) supporting services (such as nutrient cycling);

that maintain the conditions for life on Earth.

Electricity generation activities - means the construction, operation and maintenance of **structures** associated with electricity generation. This includes small and community-scale distributed generation activities and the system of electricity conveyance required to convey electricity to the distribution network and/or the national grid and electricity storage technologies associated with renewable electricity.

Electricity transmission network/ electricity transmission - all mean part of the national grid (assets used or owned by Transpower NZ Limited) of transmission lines and cables (aerial, underground and undersea, including the high-voltage direct current link), stations and sub-stations and other works used to connect grid injection points and grid exit points to convey electricity throughout the North and South Islands of New Zealand.

Endemic – indigenous species occurring naturally in the Waikato region and nowhere else.

Fine particulate matter – particulate matter with an effective aerodynamic diameter of 10 microns and below (PM₁₀).

Fresh water* – means all water except coastal water and **geothermal water**.

Fresh water body – fresh water (including in the **coastal marine area**) in a river, lake, stream, pond, **wetland** or aquifer or any part thereof. It excludes **geothermal water**.

Full range of ecosystem types – the nine broad ecosystem types that occur in the Waikato region:

- a) native forest and scrub;
- b) swamps and bogs;
- c) streams, rivers and lakes;
- d) beaches and dunes;
- e) marine and estuarine ecosystems;
- f) coastal islands;
- g) geothermal ecosystems;
- h) karst ecosystems; and
- i) high mountain lands.

Future Proof area – land within the boundaries of Waikato District, Waipa District and Hamilton City as at 31 October 2010 (shown on Map 6.2).

Geothermal characteristics – the attributes or values that are included in the make-up of any part of the **Regional Geothermal Resource**. A **geothermal system** has a particular set of characteristics, a **geothermal feature** has another set of characteristics, and the characteristics of the **Regional Geothermal Resource** include these plus another set of attributes specific to the wider resource.

Geothermal energy* – means energy derived or derivable from and produced within the earth by natural heat phenomena, and includes all **geothermal water**.

Geothermal feature – a surface manifestation of geothermal processes or discharges. It includes steam-fed features, **geothermal water**-fed features and remnant features such as hydrothermal eruption craters and ancient sinters.

Geothermal system – an individual body of **geothermal energy** and water, not believed to be hydrologically connected to any other body. Such a system includes material containing heat or energy surrounding any **geothermal water**, and all plants, animals and other characteristics dependent on the body of geothermal energy and water.

Geothermal water* – means water heated within the earth by natural phenomena to a temperature of 30 degrees Celsius or more; and includes all steam, water, and water vapour, and every mixture of all or any of them that has been heated by natural phenomena.

Greenfield – an undeveloped or agricultural tract of land that is a potential site for industrial or **urban** development.

Hapū – *collections of whānau groups living together in close location to one another and who extend from a common ancestor.*

Hazardous substance* – includes, but is not limited to, any substance defined in section 2 of the Hazardous Substances and New Organisms Act 1996 as a hazardous substance.

Heritage order* – means a provision made in a district plan to give effect to a requirement made by a **heritage protection authority** under section 189 or section 189A of the Resource Management Act.

Heritage protection authority* means –

- a) any minister of the Crown including:
 - i) the Minister of Conservation acting either on his or her own motion or on the recommendation of the New Zealand Conservation Authority, a local

- conservation board, the New Zealand Fish and Game Council, or a Fish and Game Council; and
- ii) the Minister of Māori Development acting either on his or her own motion or on the recommendation of an **iwi authority**;
- b) a **local authority** acting either on its own motion or on the recommendation of an **iwi** authority;
- c) Heritage New Zealand in so far as it exercises its functions under the Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga Act 2014; or
- d) a body corporate that is approved as a heritage protection authority under section 188 of the Resource Management Act.

High class soils – those soils in Land Use Capability Classes I and II (excluding peat soils) and soils in Land Use Capability Class IIIe1 and IIIe5, classified as Allophanic Soils, using the New Zealand Soil Classification.

High risk flood zones – land that is subject to river or surface flooding during an event with an **annual exceedance probability** of no more than one per cent, and during such an event:

- i) the depth of flood waters exceeds one metre;
- ii) the speed of flood waters exceeds two metres / second; or
- iii) the flood depth multiplied by the flood speed exceeds one.

Historic and cultural heritage –

- a) those **natural and physical resources** that contribute to an understanding and appreciation of New Zealand's history and cultures, deriving from any of the following qualities:
 - i) archaeological;
 - ii) architectural;
 - iii) cultural;
 - iv) historic;
 - v) scientific;
 - vi) technological; and
- b) includes:
 - i) historic sites, **structures**, places, and areas;
 - ii) archaeological sites;
 - iii) sites of significance to Māori, including *wāhi tapu*; and
 - iv) surroundings associated with the natural and physical resources.

Indigenous – in relation to species, native to or occurring naturally in New Zealand as opposed to introduced by humans.

Infrastructure* means –

- a) pipelines that distribute or transmit natural or manufactured gas, petroleum, biofuel or **geothermal energy**;
- b) a network for the purpose of telecommunication as defined in section 5 of the Telecommunications Act 2001;
- c) a network for the purpose of radiocommunication as defined in section 2(1) of the Radiocommunications Act 1989;
- d) facilities for the generation of electricity, lines used or intended to be used to convey electricity, and support **structures** for lines used or intended to be used to convey electricity, excluding facilities, lines, and support structures if a person–
 - i) uses them in connection with the generation of electricity for the person's use; and
 - ii) does not use them to generate any electricity for supply to any other person;
- e) a water supply distribution system, including a system for irrigation;
- f) a drainage or sewerage system;
- g) structures for transport on land by cycleways, rail, roads, walkways, or any other means;

- h) facilities for the loading or unloading of cargo or passengers transported on land by any means;
- i) an airport as defined in section 2 of the Airport Authorities Act 1966;
- j) a navigation installation as defined in section 2 of the Civil Aviation Act 1990;
- k) facilities for the loading or unloading of cargo or passengers carried by sea, including a port-related commercial undertaking as defined in section 2(1) of the Port Companies Act 1988; or
- l) anything described as a network utility operation in regulations made for the purposes of the definition of **network utility operator** in section 166 of the Resource Management Act.

Integrated Transport Assessment – a comprehensive review of all the potential transport impacts of a development proposal.

Intrinsic value – the value something has in itself or for its own sake (rather than its use value, for example).

***Iwi** – a large number of **whānau** groups or collections of **hapū** who have common ancestry.*

Iwi authority* – means the authority which represents an ***iwi*** and which is recognised by that ***iwi*** as having authority to do so.

***Kaitiaki** – those that safeguard **taonga**. They are usually people, but have also been known to be spiritual forces. It is not a role of ownership, but one of custodianship.*

***Kaitiakitanga** – is exemplified through the practices used by **kaitiaki** in safeguarding, protecting and caring for resources.*

***Kōhanga** – a nursery and is commonly used for preschool facilities.*

***Kura** – a school.*

Large Geothermal System – a **geothermal system** that generally covers a large area and contains large volumes of heated rock and geothermal fluid of temperatures above 100°C. Large Geothermal Systems include those shown on Map 9-1.

Lifeline utilities – entities named or described in Part A, or that carries on a business described in Part B of Schedule 1 of the Civil Defence and Emergency Management Act 2002 and their associated essential **infrastructure** and services.

Local authority* – means a regional council or territorial authority.

***Mahinga kai** – the process of cultivating food.*

***Mana** – the authority or importance bestowed on and/or inherited by a person or people to act, direct, give counsel or make decisions among other things.*

***Mana whenua** – the priority given to people to make decisions about the use of resources over an area of land that they are responsible for.*

***Marae** – an area of land (not exclusive to Māori land) that may include independently, or collectively as a complex, a meeting house, dining hall, educational and other associated facilities and **structures**, as well as residential accommodation associated with the marae.*

***Mātauranga Māori** – traditional Māori knowledge - the body of knowledge originating from Māori ancestors, including the Māori world view and perspectives, Māori creativity and cultural practices.*

Mauri – the life principle instilled in objects by **Atua**. *Mauri is also the life principle that gives being and form to all things in the universe.*

Mineral* – means a naturally occurring inorganic substance beneath or at the surface of the earth, whether or not under water; and includes all metallic minerals, non-metallic minerals, fuel minerals, precious stones, industrial rocks and building stones, and a prescribed substance within the meaning of the Atomic Energy Act 1945.

Minimum flow – the minimum flow required in a **water body** to provide for the values of that water body.

Natural and physical resources* – includes land, water, air, soil, **minerals** and energy, all forms of plants and animals (whether native to New Zealand or introduced), and all **structures**.

Natural character – in relation to the coastal environment, **wetlands**, and lakes and rivers and their margins, the degree of naturalness of an area, as evidenced by the degree to which it possesses qualities and features that are products of nature as opposed to products of human activities.

Natural hazard* – means any atmospheric or earth or water related occurrence (including earthquake, tsunami, erosion, volcanic and geothermal activity, landslip, subsidence, sedimentation, wind, drought, fire, or flooding), the action of which adversely affects or may adversely affect human life, property, or other aspects of the environment.

Natural hazard risk – the probability or likelihood of specified negative consequence to life, well-being, property, economic activity, environmental or other specified values, due to a particular hazard or group of hazards. Three levels of risk are identified in the Regional Policy Statement:

- a) intolerable: risk which cannot be justified and risk reduction is essential e.g. residential housing being developed in a primary hazard zone;
- b) tolerable: risk within a range that a community can live with so as to secure certain net benefits. It is a range of risk that is not regarded as negligible or as something to ignore, but rather as something to be kept under review and reduced if possible; and
- c) acceptable: risk which is minor, and the cost of further reducing risk is largely disproportionate to the benefits gained e.g. residential housing being developed beyond coastal setbacks.

Naturally rare – (originally rare) rare before the arrival of humans in New Zealand.

Network utility operator* – means a person who:

- a) undertakes or proposes to undertake the distribution or transmission by pipeline of natural or manufactured gas, petroleum, biofuel or **geothermal energy**; or
- b) operates or proposes to operate a network for the purpose of:
 - i) telecommunication as defined in section 5 of the Telecommunications Act 2001; or
 - ii) radiocommunication as defined in section 2(1) of the Radiocommunications Act 1989; or
- c) is an electricity operator or electricity distributor as defined in section 2 of the Electricity Act 1992 for the purpose of line function services as defined in that section; or
- d) undertakes or proposes to undertake the distribution of water for supply (including irrigation); or
- e) undertakes or proposes to undertake a drainage or sewerage system; or

- f) constructs, operates, or proposes to construct or operate, a road or railway line; or
- g) is an airport authority as defined by the Airport Authorities Act 1966 for the purposes of operating an airport as defined by that Act; or
- h) is a provider of any approach control service within the meaning of the Civil Aviation Act 1990; or
- i) undertakes or proposes to undertake a project or work prescribed as a network utility operation for the purposes of this definition by regulations made under the Resource Management Act;

and the words **network utility operation** have a corresponding meaning.

No net loss – Means no reasonably measurable overall reduction in the type, extent, long-term viability and functioning of **indigenous biodiversity**. When the term is applied in a policy context it has regard to the overall contribution of regulatory and non-regulatory methods as contained in local indigenous biodiversity strategies. It does not create a no adverse effects regime.

Non-point source discharge – discharges not having a single point of origin or not introduced into the receiving environment from a specific outlet or facility.

Overwhelming – instances where the magnitude of a **natural hazard** event exceeds the design of the structural defence.

Papakāinga – *the idea of a homestead, an area or local vicinity that holds close kinship ties. Often used to describe housing in association with a marae or pa, or otherwise on Māori land.*

Papatūānuku – *Earth Mother and wife of Ranginui.*

Pātaka kai – *traditional food storehouse.*

Peat soils – those soils defined as Organic Soils in the New Zealand Classification System.

Point source discharge – discharges from a stationary or fixed facility.

Primary production - means the commercial production of raw material and basic foods, and which relies on the productive capacity of soil or water resources of the region. This includes the cultivation of land, animal husbandry/farming, horticulture, aquaculture, fishing, forestry, or viticulture. It does not include hobby farms, rural residential blocks, or land used for **mineral** extraction.

Primary hazard zone – an area in which the risk to life, property or the environment from **natural hazards** is intolerable.

Protected customary right – an activity, use, or practice:

- a) established by an applicant group in accordance with subpart 2 of Part 3 of the Marine and Coastal Area (Takutai Moana) Act 2011; and
- b) recognised by -
 - i) a protected customary rights order as identified in subpart 2 of Part 4 of the Marine and Coastal Area (Takutai Moana) Act 2011; or
 - ii) an agreement made under section 95 of the Marine and Coastal Area (Takutai Moana) Act 2011

Rāhui – *a tool used by kaitiaki to manage natural resources and are declared by kaitiaki to restrict access to and use of natural resources. Rāhui is a form of temporary restriction relating to the condition of a resource and the nature of the tapu in or around a specific area. Rāhui resemble prohibitions.*

Ranginui – Sky Father and husband of **Papatūānuku**.

Raupatu – the confiscation of land and includes the related invasion, hostilities, war, loss of life, destruction of **taonga** and property, and consequent suffering, distress, and deprivation.

Reasonable mixing – the spatial zone or temporal period, outside of which a **contaminant** is expected to have no more than minor effects on the air, land or water into which it is discharged.

Regional Geothermal Resource – includes all **geothermal energy** (including **geothermal water**), material containing heat or energy (derived from within the earth) surrounding any geothermal water, and all plants, animals, micro-organisms and characteristics dependent on the geothermal energy located in the region.

Regionally significant industry - means an economic activity based on the use of **natural and physical resources** in the region and is identified in regional or district plans, which has been shown to have benefits that are significant at a regional or national scale. These may include social, economic or cultural benefits.

Regionally significant infrastructure – includes:

- a) pipelines for the distribution or transmission of natural or manufactured gas or petroleum;
- b) **infrastructure** required to permit telecommunication as defined in the Telecommunications Act 2001;
- c) radio apparatus as defined in section 2(1) of the Radio Communications Act 1989;
- d) the national electricity grid, as defined by the Electricity Industry Act 2010;
- e) a network (as defined in the Electricity Industry Act 2010);
- f) **infrastructure** for the generation and/ or conveyance of electricity that is fed into the national grid or a network (as defined in the Electricity Industry Act 2010);
- g) significant transport corridors as defined in Map 6.1 and 6.1A;
- h) **lifeline utilities**, as defined in the Civil Defence and Emergency Management Act 2002, and their associated essential **infrastructure** and services;
- i) municipal wastewater treatment plants, water supply treatment plants and bulk water supply, wastewater conveyance and storage systems, municipal supply dams (including Mangatangi and Mangatawhiri water supply dams) and ancillary **infrastructure**;
- j) flood and drainage **infrastructure** managed by Waikato Regional Council;
- k) Hamilton City bus terminal and Hamilton Railway Station terminus; and
- l) Hamilton International Airport.

Renewable electricity generation - means generation of electricity from solar, wind, hydro-electricity, geothermal, biomass, tidal, wave, or ocean current energy sources.

Residual risk – the risk associated with existing **natural hazard** structural defences such as stopbanks and seawalls, including the risk of failure of a defence or of a greater than design event occurring.

Residual risk zone – an area subject to **residual risk** – that is the area that would be at risk from a **natural hazard** event but for a structural defence.

Reverse sensitivity – is the vulnerability of a lawfully established activity to a new activity or land use. It arises when a lawfully established activity causes potential, actual or perceived adverse environmental effects on the new activity, to a point where the new activity may seek to restrict the operation or require mitigation of the effects of the established activity.

Riparian areas – the strip of land adjacent to a **water body** and which contributes, or may contribute, to the maintenance and enhancement of the natural functioning, quality and character of the water body.

Rohe – *the geographical area closely linked to iwi or hapū. That iwi or hapū will exercise mana over that area and so has mana whenua over it.*

Rural-residential development – residential development in rural areas which is predominantly for residential activity and is not ancillary to a rural or agricultural use.

Sensitive activities – activities that are affected by the adverse effects typically associated with some lawful activities, for example, dust, spray or noise from a quarry/port facility or rural production activity, noise in an entertainment precinct or smells from a sewage treatment facility.

Significant Geothermal Features – Significant Geothermal Features in Development and Limited Development Systems are those geothermal features that are considered significant and are listed and mapped in the Waikato Regional Plan. In Protected, Research and Small Geothermal Systems, Significant Geothermal Features are those geothermal features that meet the description of one or more of the identified Significant Geothermal Feature Types listed in Table 9-1 (in Section 9B).

Significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitat of indigenous fauna – any area that meets one or more of the criteria in Section 11A.

Significant mineral resources – means **mineral** resources identified in accordance with Method 6.8.1.

Small Geothermal System – a **geothermal system** that:

- a) is not understood to be connected to a **Large Geothermal System** identified in the Waikato Regional Plan; and
- b) either:
 - i) does not produce water with a temperature equal to or greater than 100°C or
 - ii) does not occupy a volume of greater than 10 km³.

Soil quality – the life-supporting capacity of soil, including its biological, chemical and physical properties.

Solid fuel home heating appliance – a domestic heating appliance that burns solid fuel, including an appliance for interior space heating in buildings. This includes wood burners, pellet burners, domestic ranges and stoves, water heaters or central heating units, multi fuel (coal/wood and waste burning systems) and similar appliances, but excludes small scale domestic devices for smoking food.

Stock – includes all cattle (including dairy and beef cattle), other heavy bovines and deer, sheep and goats.

Structure* – means any building, equipment, device, or other facility made by people and which is fixed to land; and includes any raft.

Surf break – a natural feature that is comprised of swell, currents, water levels, seabed morphology, and wind. The hydrodynamic character of the ocean (swell, currents and water levels) combines with seabed morphology and winds to give rise to a "surfable wave". A surf break includes the "swell corridor" through which the swell travels, and the morphology of the seabed of that wave corridor, through to the point where waves created by the swell dissipate and become non-surfable. Surf breaks of national significance include the Whangamata Bar, Manu Bay, Whale Bay and Indicators at Raglan.

Sustainable yield – the amount of **fresh water** take from an aquifer that can be maintained indefinitely without causing adverse effects on the values in that aquifer.

Taiao – *the name given to identify the environment and nature.*

Tāngata whenua* – in relation to a particular area, means the *iwi*, or *hapū*, that hold *mana whenua* over that area.

Taonga – *treasures, or valuable items. Taonga is a broad concept and includes physical and metaphysical assets such as te reo and intellectual property and the traditional knowledge and use of these, social organisations and the arts.*

Tapu – *the sacred, dedicated, protected or that which is not ordinary or everyday. Tapu is the state or condition of a person or objects placed under the patronage of Atua. It is directly related to the mauri of a person, area or object and recognises an appreciation and respect of another life force.*

Taxa – named biological classification units assigned to individuals or sets of species (e.g. species, subspecies, genus, order, variety).

Territorial authority – a city council or a district council named in Part 2 of Schedule 2 of the Local Government Act 2002.

Tikanga – *lore, custom, practice or commonsense thoughts that are based on the Māori belief system. The application of Tikanga is diverse and can vary, depending upon when and where an event takes place. Tikanga provides a framework for rules that govern harvesting, the care and respect for customary resources and for the environment.*

Tūpuna – *ancestors.*

Urban – a concentration of residential, commercial and/or industrial activities, having the nature of a city, town, suburb or a village which is predominantly non-agricultural or non-rural in nature.

Urupā – *burial ground or cemetery.*

Wāhi tapu – *a sacred site. These are defined locally by the hapū and iwi who are the kaitiaki for the wāhi tapu. These typically include burial grounds and sites of historical importance to the tribe. In order to protect particular sites from interference and desecration, some tribes will refuse to disclose the exact location to outsiders. When tapu is applied to places of significance to iwi, hapū and/or whānau, they are deemed wāhi tapu. The literal translation is “sacred place”. Places can become wāhi tapu for many reasons. In some instances, they signify ahi kā; in other instances, they can be burial grounds, places used for ritual cleansing or healing, or simply where past incidents occurred. Some wāhi tapu are places or landscapes considered tapu because of their magnitude, or symbolic representation of a hapū or iwi.*

Wānanga – *forums for passing on traditional knowledge. It is often used to refer to modern tertiary institutions.*

Water body* – means **fresh water** or **geothermal water** in a river, lake, stream, pond, **wetland** or aquifer, or any part thereof, that is not located within the **coastal marine area**.

Water management plan – is the short title for a Water Conservation, Demand Management and Drought Management Plan. It is a plan that establishes a long-term strategy for the water requirements of domestic or municipal suppliers and their

communities. It also demonstrates that the volume of water required, including any increase over that previously authorised, has been justified and that the water take will be used efficiently and effectively.

Wetland – permanently or intermittently wet areas, shallow water, and land/water margins that support a natural ecosystem of plants and animals that are adapted to wet conditions, including within the **coastal marine area**.



APPENDICES

NGĀ ĀPITIHANGA

Appendix 1: Statutory acknowledgements

1 Statutory acknowledgements

A statutory acknowledgement is a means by which the Crown has formally acknowledged the statements made by iwi of their cultural, spiritual, historical and traditional association with a statutory area.

Statutory acknowledgements may apply to land, rivers, lakes, wetlands, landscape features or a particular part of the coastal marine area. Where a statutory acknowledgement relates to a river, lake, wetland or coastal area, the acknowledgement only applies to that part of the bed in Crown ownership or control.

1.1 Purpose of statutory acknowledgements

The purpose of statutory acknowledgements are to:

- a) require consent authorities, the Environment Court and Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga to have regard to the statutory acknowledgements;
- b) require consent authorities to forward summaries of resource consent applications for activities that would affect the area to which the statutory acknowledgement applies to the governance entity; and
- c) enable the governance entity and any member of the relevant iwi to cite a statutory acknowledgement as evidence of the association of the iwi with the areas to which the statutory acknowledgement relates.

1.2 Having regard to statutory acknowledgements

Local authorities must attach information recording statutory acknowledgements to all statutory plans that wholly or partly cover the area. The attachment of information to this Regional Policy Statement is for the purposes of information only and is not subject to the provisions of Schedule 1 of the Resource Management Act 1991.

Consent authorities must have regard to a statutory acknowledgement relating to a statutory area in forming an opinion, in accordance with 95 to 95G of the Resource Management Act, as to whether the governance entity may be adversely affected by the granting of a resource consent for activities within, adjacent to, or impacting directly on the statutory area.

2 Statutory acknowledgements within the Waikato region

The following statutory acknowledgments apply within the Waikato region. Detail and maps of the statutory areas for each are contained in the relevant settlements acts. The settlement acts that apply in the Waikato region are as follows:

- Ngati Tuwharetoa (Bay of Plenty) Claims Settlement Act 2005;
- Pouakani Claims Settlement Act 2000;
- Te Arawa Lakes Settlement Act 2006;
- Affiliate Te Arawa Iwi and Hapu Claim Settlement Act 2008;
- Maraeroa A and B Blocks Claims Settlement Act 2012;
- Ngāti Koroki Kahukura Claims Settlement Act 2014;
- Ngāti Hauā Claims Settlement Act 2014;
- Raukawa Claims Settlement Act 2014.

3 Statutory acknowledgement for Ngāti Tūwharetoa

In accordance with the provisions set out under section 42(1)(2) of the Ngati Tuwharetoa (Bay of Plenty) Settlement Act 2005, information is attached to this Regional Policy Statement by way of reference to sections 7 to 10 which records the statutory acknowledgement that wholly or in part covers the statutory areas.

4 Statutory acknowledgement for the people of Pouakani

In accordance with the provisions set out under section 42(1)(2) of the Pouakani Claims Settlement Act 2000, information is attached to this Regional Policy Statement by way of reference to sections 5 to 7 which records the statutory acknowledgement that wholly or in part covers the statutory areas.

5 Statutory acknowledgement for Te Arawa

In accordance with the provisions set out under section 65(1)(2) of the Te Arawa Lakes Settlement Act 2006, information is attached to this Regional Policy Statement by way of reference to section 7 to 9 which records the statutory acknowledgement that wholly or in part covers the statutory areas.

6 Statutory acknowledgement for Affiliate Te Arawa Iwi and Hapū

In accordance with section 32(2) of the Affiliate Te Arawa Iwi and Hapu Claim Settlement Act 2008, information is attached to this Regional Policy Statement recording the statutory acknowledgement that wholly or in part cover the statutory areas. This section provides a description of the statutory area within Waikato Regional Council jurisdiction, statements of association and relevant provisions of sections 27-34.

Section 40(2) of the Affiliate Te Arawa Iwi and Hapu Claim Settlement Act 2008 requires information relating to the Rotorua region geothermal system. This information includes a description of the geothermal systems within Waikato Regional Council jurisdiction, statements of association and relevant provisions of sections 36-42.

6.1 Statutory areas

The following table shows the areas to which the statutory acknowledgement relates within Waikato Regional Council jurisdiction.

Statutory Area	Map Reference
Matahana Ecological Area	SO 364721
Part of the Waikato River (Atiamuri Dam to Huka Falls)	SO 364734

6.2 Statements of association

In accordance with section 32(2) of the Affiliate Te Arawa Iwi and Hapu Claim Settlement Act 2008, the following statements of association are included below.

Statutory Area	Map Reference
Matahana Ecological Area	SO 364721

The following Statement of Association by the Affiliate Te Arawa Iwi/Hapū applies to the above Statutory Area.

The traditions of Ngāti Kearoa Ngāti Tuarā illustrate their cultural, historic and spiritual association with the Matahana Ecological Area. For Ngāti Kearoa Ngāti Tuarā, traditions such as these represent the links between ngā atua (the gods) and present generations. These histories reinforce tribal identity, connection and continuity between generations and confirm the importance of the Matahana Ecological Area to Ngāti Kearoa Ngāti Tuarā.

Ngāti Kearoa Ngāti Tuarā tradition tells of how Horohoro was named and its link to the Matahana Ecological Area. Kahumatamomoe, who came on the Arawa waka, is credited with naming Horohoro. On his travels around the island, Kahumatamomoe came to Horohoro Mountain and became affected by a tapu. In order to cleanse himself, he bathed in a small stream just in behind the north end of the mountain and location within the Matahana Ecological Area. The stream was given the name Waikarakia and the mountain became known as “Te Horohoroinga o Ngā Ringa o Kahumatamomoe, or the Washing of the Hands of Kahumatamomoe: (Horohoro for short).

The traditional association can also be tracked back to Haukapuanui and Tangiharuru’s visit to the area, where they were amazed at its fruitfulness. The streams were full of eels and water birds abounded. The bush likewise was full of bird and from that time on, the people lived well due to the plentiful resources.

The Matahana Ecological Area provided the people with valuable food resources, and continued to do so for hundreds of years. The young men of Ngāti Kearoa Ngāti Tuarā would often hunt pigs, trap eels, snare ducks, pūkeko, matuku (water fowl) and rats (brought from Hawaiki) in the Waikarakia Stream.

Other materials such as flax were highly sought after for their fine qualities. Leaves if the kawakawa, and berries from the miro and karaka trees provided both food and medicine.

There are many sites of cultural, historical and spiritual significance to Ngāti Kearoa Ngāti Tuarā within the Matahana Ecological Area. The sources of the Waikarakia and Pokaitu Streams are in deep bush. They flow through steep sided gorges and have many small caves. In some of these caves lie the bones of ancestors, and they are therefore considered tapu. The Waikarakia Stream, in particular, has a mystique to this day.

The Matahana Ecological Area is of great significance to Ngāti Kearoa Ngāti Tuarā. The Matahana Ecological Area was a significance source from which the physical wellbeing of Ngāti Kearoa Ngāti Tuara was sustained, and the spiritual wellbeing nourished.

Ngāti Kearoa Ngāti Tuarā have always maintained a considerable knowledge of the land of the Matahana Ecological Area, its history, the traditional trail of the tūpuna of the area, the places for gathering kai and other taonga, and ways in which to use the resource of the Matahana Ecological Area. Proper and sustainable resource management has always been at the heart of the relationship of Ngāti Kearoa Ngāti Tuarā with the Matahana Ecological Area.

Statutory Area	Map Reference
Part of the Waikato River (Atiamuri Dam to Huka Falls)	SO 364734

The following Statement of Association by the Affiliate Te Arawa Iwi/Hapū applies to the above Statutory Area.

The Waikato River is a resource of great cultural, historical, traditional and spiritual significance to the people of Ngāti Tahu Ngāti Whaoa.

From Pohaturoa in the north, to the Huka Falls in the south, the banks of the Waikato River provide for a number of historic sites that are significant to Ngāti Tahu Ngāti Whaoa. Importantly, the principal papakāinga (settlement) of Ngāti Tahu Ngāti Whaoa, Orakei- Korako, lay on the west bank of the River and remained so for many years.

The Waikato River was an integral part of life for Ngāti Tahu Ngāti Whaoa. Not only did it provide a rich food source, but also provided passage for the Ngāti Tahu Ngāti Whaoa people to access a number of wāhi tapu sites along the river.

The close connection Ngāti Tahu Ngāti Whaoa have with the Waikato River is illustrated by the significant number of places held sacred to them along the River between Pohaturoa and Huka Falls. Some of these sites are described below:

Huka Falls

The Huka Falls provided a place of residence for Ngāti Tahu Ngāti Whaoa and many Ngāti Tahu Ngāti Whaoa ancestors were buried there. The area also provided many food crops, including potatoes.

Nihorua

Nihorua was a Ngāti Tahu Ngāti Whaoa settlement on the banks of the Waikato River. kōkōwai (cockabully) and kōkopu (trout) were gathered from this part of the river, and the settlement was also a favoured place for gathering ducks. Nihorua also had one of the largest kāinga of the Ngāti Tahu Ngāti Whaoa people.

A rāhui post was placed on the track leading from Nihorua. Another rāhui post stood above Otamarauhuru, between the Waikato River and Lake Rotokawa. Rāhui were often set in place in areas where food needed to be conserved. In this instance, it is mentioned that the area was a favourite place for gathering birds. The rāhui ensured that the birds continued to flourish in the area.

Rua Hoata

Rua Hoata was a very large cave that was used primarily as a kāinga, but also as a place of refuge from invading iwi. Situated on the banks of the Waikato River, Rua Hoata was flooded when the hydro electric dam was built at Aratiatia.

Matauraura

Matauraura was a kūmara cultivation inland of the Parehawa hot spring, not far from Ohaaki. The remnants of a cave kumara pit are still visible today. A pā was built at Matauraura for protection during the time of Te Kooti, and remains of this pā are located on the bend of the Waikato River, upstream from the Ohaaki Bridge.

Tahunatara

Located south of Reporoa in the Waikato River, the man-made island of Tahunatara was formed after a trench was dug across the headland of the River. Tahunatara was formerly a raupō reserve situated on the Waikato River, where it flows through Broadlands. Both kōkopu (trout) and duck were caught at Tahunatara, kūmara and other crops were also grown, and the first willow trees in the area were planted there.

Ngaawapurua Pā and Cultivation

Occupied by Ngāti Whaoa, Ngaawapurua Pā was flooded when the Ohakuri Dam was built. The cultivations extended along the Waikato River, located at the southern part of the Ohakuri Dam.

Piripekapeka Pā

Piripekapeka Pā was located above Orakei-Korako and is the burial place of the chief, Matarae.

6.3 Affiliate Te Arawa Iwi and Hapu Claim Settlement Act 2008

In accordance with section 32(2) of the Affiliate Te Arawa Iwi and Hapu Claim Settlement Act 2008, this section sets out the relevant provisions of sections 27-34 in full.

27 Statutory acknowledgement by the Crown

- (1) *The Crown acknowledges the statements of association.*
- (2) *In sections 32 and 34, **statements of association** means the statements—*
 - a) *made by the Affiliate of the particular cultural, spiritual, historical, and traditional association of the Affiliate with each statutory area; and*
 - b) *in the form set out in Part 2 of Schedule 3 of the deed of settlement at the settlement date.*

28 Purposes of statutory acknowledgement

- (1) *The only purposes of the statutory acknowledgement are to—*
 - a) *require relevant consent authorities, the Environment Court, and Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga to have regard to the statutory acknowledgement, as provided for in sections 29 to 31; and*
 - b) *require relevant consent authorities to forward summaries of resource consent applications to the trustees, as provided for in section 33; and*
 - c) *enable the trustees and a member of the Affiliate to cite the statutory acknowledgement as evidence of the association of the Affiliate with the relevant statutory areas, as provided for in section 34.*
- (2) *This section does not limit sections 44 to 46.*

29 Relevant consent authorities to have regard to statutory acknowledgement

- (1) *On and from the effective date, a relevant consent authority must have regard to the statutory acknowledgement relating to a statutory area in forming an opinion in accordance with sections 93 to 94C of the Resource Management Act 1991 as to whether the trustees are persons who may be adversely affected by the granting of a resource consent for activities within, adjacent to, or directly affecting the statutory area.*
- (2) *Subsection (1) does not limit the obligations of a relevant consent authority under the Resource Management Act 1991.*

30 Environment Court to have regard to statutory acknowledgement

- (1) *On and from the effective date, the Environment Court must have regard to the statutory acknowledgement relating to a statutory area in determining under section 274 of the Resource Management Act 1991 whether the trustees are persons having an interest in proceedings greater than the public generally in respect of an application for a resource consent for activities within, adjacent to, or directly affecting the statutory area.*
- (2) *Subsection (1) does not limit the obligations of the Environment Court under the Resource Management Act 1991.*

31 Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga and Environment Court to have regard to statutory acknowledgement

- (1) *If, on or after the effective date, an application is made under section 44, 56, or 61 of the Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga Act 2014 for an authority to undertake an activity that will or may modify or destroy an archaeological site within a statutory area,—*
 - a) *Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga, in exercising its powers under section 48, 56, or 62 of that Act in relation to the application, must have regard to the statutory acknowledgement relating to the statutory area; and*
 - b) *the Environment Court, in determining under section 59(1) or 64(1) of that Act any appeal against a decision of Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga in relation to the application, must have regard to the statutory acknowledgement*

- relating to the statutory area, including in making a determination as to whether the trustees are persons directly affected by the decision.
- (2) In this section, **archaeological site** has the meaning given in section 6 of the Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga Act 2014

32 Recording statutory acknowledgement on statutory plans

- (1) On and from the effective date, each relevant consent authority must attach information recording the statutory acknowledgement to all statutory plans that wholly or partly cover a statutory area.
- (2) The attachment of information under subsection (1) to a statutory plan—
- must include the relevant provisions of sections 27 to 34 in full, the description of the statutory areas, and the statements of association; and
 - is for the purpose of public information only, and the information is not—
 - part of the statutory plan, unless adopted by the relevant consent authority; or
 - subject to the provisions of Schedule 1 of the Resource Management Act 1991, unless adopted as part of the statutory plan under subparagraph (i).

33 Distribution of resource consent applications to trustees

- (1) Each relevant consent authority must, for a period of 20 years from the effective date, forward to the trustees a summary of resource consent applications received by that consent authority for activities within, adjacent to, or directly affecting a statutory area.
- (2) The information provided under subsection (1) must be—
- the same as would be given under section 93 of the Resource Management Act 1991 to persons likely to be adversely affected, or as may be agreed between the trustees and the relevant consent authority; and
 - provided as soon as is reasonably practicable after the application is received, and before a determination is made in accordance with sections 93 to 94C of the Resource Management Act 1991.
- (3) The trustees may, by notice in writing to a relevant consent authority,—
- waive their rights to be notified under this section; and
 - state the scope of that waiver and the period it applies for.
- (4) For the purposes of this section, a regional council dealing with an application to carry out a restricted coastal activity in a statutory area must be treated as if it were the relevant consent authority in relation to that application.
- (5) This section does not affect the obligation of a relevant consent authority to—
- notify an application in accordance with sections 93 to 94C of the Resource Management Act 1991;
 - form an opinion as to whether the trustees are persons who may be adversely affected under those sections.

34 Use of statutory acknowledgement

- (1) The trustees and any member of the Affiliate may, as evidence of the association of the Affiliate with a statutory area, cite the statutory acknowledgement that relates to that area in submissions to, and in proceedings before, a relevant consent authority, the Environment Court, or Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga concerning activities within, adjacent to, or directly affecting the statutory area.
- (2) The content of a statement of association is not, by virtue of the statutory acknowledgement, binding as deemed fact on—
- relevant consent authorities;
 - the Environment Court;
 - Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga;
 - parties to proceedings before those bodies;
 - any other person who is entitled to participate in those proceedings.
- (3) Despite subsection (2), the statutory acknowledgement may be taken into account by the bodies and persons specified in that subsection.
- (4) Neither the trustees nor individual members of the Affiliate are precluded from stating that the Affiliate has an association with a statutory area that is not described in the statutory acknowledgement.
- (5) The content and existence of the statutory acknowledgement do not limit a statement made under subsection (4).

6.4 Geothermal Statutory Areas

The following table provides a description of the geothermal fields within the Rotorua Geothermal System that are located within the Waikato Regional Council jurisdiction.

Geothermal Area	Map Reference
Horohoro geothermal field	SO 364723
Waikite-Waiotapu Waimangu geothermal field	SO 364723
Reporoa geothermal field	SO 364723
Atiamuri geothermal field	SO 364723
Te Kopia geothermal field	SO 364723
Orakei Korako geothermal field	SO 364723
Ohaaki/Broadlands geothermal field	SO 364723
Ngatamariki geothermal field	SO 364723
Rotokawa geothermal field	SO 364723

6.5 Statements of Association

In accordance with section 32(2) of the Affiliate Te Arawa Iwi and Hapu Claim Settlement Act 2008, the following statement of association is included below.

Statutory Area	Map Reference
Rotorua Region Geothermal System	SO 364723

The following Statement of Association by the Affiliate Te Arawa Iwi/Hapū applies to the Rotorua Region Geothermal System.

Geothermal resources are regarded as taonga - resources that are inherited from the ancestors and highly-prized.

Among the first voyagers who came from Hawaiki to Aotearoa on the Arawa waka was the tohunga, Ngatoroirangi. On his travels around the district, Ngatoroirangi climbed Tongariro in order to survey the whole country from its summit. As he climbed the slopes of the mountain, the cold became unbearable, almost freezing him. He called on his sisters in Hawaiki to send him fire. On hearing his call, his sisters sent two taniwha underground, Pupu and Te Haeta, to bring him fire.

The passage the two taniwha took, and the places where they surfaced became the connecting route of the geothermal system – from Whakaari (White Island), via Kawerau, Rotorua and Taupō and on to Tongariro, distributing geothermal resources in the Rotorua districts including Rotoma, Taheke-Tikitere, Waikite-Waiotapu-Waimangu, Ohaaki and Orakei-Korako.

Places where surface geothermal activity was present were highly-favoured as places for settlement. All geothermal areas have traditional cultural and spiritual associations for the affiliate Te Arawa Iwi/Hapū. There was considerable mana associated with iwi whose lands included geothermal resources.

Geothermal resources were used in various ways. Hot pools (ngāwhā, puia, waiariki) provided hot water for cooking and bathing. Hot ground was used for cooking holes and ovens. Mud from some pools had medicinal properties, especially in the treatment of skin infections such as ngerengere. Paint and dyestuffs such as kōkōwai (red ochre) were obtained from hydro-thermally altered ground. Many hot pools had well-known therapeutic qualities in the treatment of muscular disorders, rheumatic and arthritic ailments, as well as skin conditions. Some had other qualities and were known as wahi tapu, for example, a place for ritual cleansing after battle, or other spiritual qualities

linked to medicinal or therapeutic use, or incidents of the past. Some had a particular tohunga associated with them. Some were burial places. Many hot pools are still regarded as wahi tapu, or sacred places.

In the 19th Century there was a hive of tourism activity in and around Lake Tarawera and Lake Rotomahana. The people of Tūhourangi had seen the potential in geothermal activity in and around the lakes and at Te Wairoa as an economic bastion.

The beauty of the Pink and White Terraces caused hordes of tourists to flock to Rotomahana from all over the world to see what was considered to be the eighth natural wonder of the world. Even after the eruption of the three peaks – Tarawera, Ruawahia and Wahanga on 10 June 1885 when the Pink & White Terraces were destroyed – Affiliate Te Arawa iwi/hapū continued to utilise the geothermal resources around the Rotorua Region.

6.6 Affiliate Te Arawa Iwi and Hapu Claim Settlement Act 2008

In accordance with section 40(2) of the Affiliate Te Arawa Iwi and Hapu Claim Settlement Act 2008, this section sets out the relevant provision of sections 36 - 42 in full relating to the Rotorua region geothermal areas.

36 Geothermal statutory acknowledgement by the Crown

- (1) *The Crown acknowledges the statement of association.*
- (2) *In sections 40 and 42, **statement of association** means the statement—*
 - a) *made by the Affiliate of the particular cultural, spiritual, historical, and traditional association of the Affiliate with, and its use of, the geothermal resource; and*
 - b) *in the form set out in Part 2 of Schedule 3 of the deed of settlement at the settlement date.*

37 Purposes of geothermal statutory acknowledgement

- (1) *The only purposes of the geothermal statutory acknowledgement are to—*
 - a) *require consent authorities and the Environment Court to have regard to the geothermal statutory acknowledgement, as provided for in sections 38 and 39; and*
 - b) *require relevant consent authorities to forward summaries of certain kinds of resource consent applications to the trustees, as provided for in section 41; and*
 - c) *enable the trustees and a member of the Affiliate to cite the geothermal statutory acknowledgement as evidence of the association of the Affiliate with the relevant geothermal resource, as provided for in section 42.*
- (2) *This section does not limit sections 44 to 46.*

38 Relevant consent authorities to have regard to geothermal statutory acknowledgement

- (1) *On and from the effective date, a relevant consent authority must have regard to the geothermal statutory acknowledgement in forming an opinion in accordance with sections 93 to 94C of the Resource Management Act 1991 as to whether the trustees are persons who may be adversely affected by the granting of a resource consent under section 14 of the Resource Management Act 1991 in respect of the geothermal resource.*
- (2) *Subsection (1) does not limit the obligations of a relevant consent authority under the Resource Management Act 1991.*

39 Environment Court to have regard to geothermal statutory acknowledgement

- (1) *On and from the effective date, the Environment Court must have regard to the geothermal statutory acknowledgement in determining under section 274 of the Resource Management Act 1991 whether the trustees are persons having an interest in proceedings greater than the public generally in respect of an application for a resource consent under section 14 of the Resource Management Act 1991 in respect of the geothermal resource.*
- (2) *Subsection (1) does not limit the obligations of the Environment Court under the Resource Management Act 1991.*

40 Recording geothermal statutory acknowledgement on statutory plans

- (1) On and from the effective date, each relevant consent authority must attach information recording the geothermal statutory acknowledgement to all statutory plans that wholly or partly cover the Rotorua region geothermal system.
- (2) The attachment of information under subsection (1) to a statutory plan—
 - a) must include the relevant provisions of sections 36 to 42 in full, a description of the Rotorua region geothermal system, and the statement of association; and
 - b) is for the purpose of public information only, and the information is not—
 - (i) part of the statutory plan, unless adopted by the relevant consent authority; or
 - (ii) subject to the provisions of Schedule 1 of the Resource Management Act 1991, unless adopted as part of the statutory plan under subparagraph (i).

41 Distribution of resource consent applications to trustees

- (1) Each relevant consent authority must, for a period of 20 years from the effective date, forward to the trustees a summary of resource consent applications made under section 14 of the Resource Management Act 1991 received by that consent authority in respect of the geothermal resource.
- (2) The information provided under subsection (1) must be—
 - a) the same as would be given under section 93 of the Resource Management Act 1991 to persons likely to be adversely affected, or as may be agreed between the trustees and the relevant consent authority; and
 - b) provided as soon as is reasonably practicable after the application is received, and before a determination is made in accordance with sections 93 to 94C of the Resource Management Act 1991.
- (3) The trustees may, by notice in writing to a relevant consent authority,—
 - a) waive their rights to be notified under this section; and
 - b) state the scope of that waiver and the period it applies for.
- (4) For the purposes of this section, a regional council dealing with an application to carry out a restricted coastal activity in a statutory area must be treated as if it were the relevant consent authority in relation to that application.
- (5) This section does not affect the obligation of a relevant consent authority to—
 - a) notify an application in accordance with sections 93 to 94C of the Resource Management Act 1991;
 - b) form an opinion as to whether the trustees are persons who may be adversely affected under those sections.

42 Use of geothermal statutory acknowledgement

- (1) The trustees and a member of the Affiliate may, as evidence of the association of the Affiliate with, and use by the Affiliate of, the geothermal resource, cite the geothermal statutory acknowledgement in submissions to, and in proceedings before, a relevant consent authority or the Environment Court concerning the taking, use, damming, or diverting of any geothermal resource.
- (2) The content of the statement of association is not, by virtue of the geothermal statutory acknowledgement, binding as deemed fact on—
 - a) relevant consent authorities;
 - b) the Environment Court;
 - c) parties to proceedings before those bodies;
 - d) any other person who is entitled to participate in those proceedings.
- (3) Despite subsection (2), the geothermal statutory acknowledgement may be taken into account by the bodies and persons specified in that subsection.
- (4) Neither the trustees nor individual members of the Affiliate are precluded from stating that the Affiliate has an association with a geothermal resource that is not described in the geothermal statutory acknowledgement.
- (5) The content and existence of the geothermal statutory acknowledgement do not limit a statement made under subsection (4).

7 Statutory acknowledgement for Maraeroa A and B Blocks

In accordance with section 28 of the Maraeroa A and B Blocks Claims Settlement Act 2012, information is attached to this Regional Policy Statement recording the statutory acknowledgement that wholly or in part cover the statutory areas. This section provides

a description of the statutory area, statements of association and relevant provisions of sections 23-30.

7.1 Statutory areas

The following table shows the areas to which the statutory acknowledgement relates.

Statutory Area	Map Reference
Ongarue River	As shown on OTS-120-13
Mangaparuhou Stream	As shown on OTS-120-17
Tahorakarewarewa	As shown on OTS-120-16
Taporaroa Pa	As shown on OTS-120-19
Tikiwhenua	As shown on OTS-120-09
Tomotomo Ariki	As shown on OTS-120-10
Waimiha Stream	As shown on OTS-120-22
Waimoanaiti	As shown on OTS-120-11
Karamarama Stream	As shown on OTS-120-14
Weraroa	As shown on OTS-120-15
Commencement of Waipa River	As shown on OTS-120-08
Kahaho Stream	As shown on OTS-120-26

7.2 Statements of association

In accordance with section 28 of the Maraeroa A and B Blocks Claims Settlement Act 2012, the following statements of association are included below.

These are statements of the settling group's particular cultural, spiritual, historical, and traditional association with identified areas.

	Name of Site	Land owner Admin Body	Name of area/Reserve	Statement of Association
1.	Ongarue River (as shown on deed plan OTS-120-13)	Department of Conservation	Maraeroa A2	Ongarue is a sacred river commencing on Pureora-o-Kahu mountain. Its name means "the tremors." Ongarue It was formed by an earthquake in pre-European times and is a main contributory to the Whanganui river. Ngāti Rereahu and other local iwi regard the Ongarue as a taonga (treasure) and he wai whakarite (ceremonial waters). There were special places along the river where ceremonial blessings were performed as well as places for mahinga kai (making food) and also points where water was drawn for general living requirements. The Ongarue was an important source of food and a means of transportation right through to Whanganui. Kokopu, koaru, marearea, tuna, koura, piharau were plentiful in the river and putangitangi and kereru inhabited the riverbanks. Also harvested were the komata and hinau growing on the banks of the river.
2.	Mangaparuhou Stream (as shown	Department of Conservation	Maraeroa A1	Paruhou is a sacred river also commencing on Pureora-o-Kahu

STATUTORY ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

	on deed plan OTS-120-17)			mountain and joins the Ongarue near the headwaters of the Ongarue. It was formed by an earthquake in pre-European times and the name Paruhou means “new earth” which was so named due to an earthquake unveiling new soil from which the water flowed. Ngāti Rereahu and other local iwi regard the Paruhou as a taonga (treasure) and he wai whakarite (ceremonial waters). There were special places along the river where ceremonial blessings were performed as well as places for mahinga kai (making food) and also points where water was drawn for general living requirements. The Paruhou is still used today for the same purposes as our tupuna used them.
3.	Tahorakarewarewa (as shown on deed plan OTS-120-16)	Department of Conservation	Maraeroa A2	Tahorakarewarewa is one of the traditional boundary markers or Pou recognised by tupuna of old from both the Te Arawa and Tainui tribes. It marks the place of the papakāinga (village) which belonged to the tupuna Haakuhaanui. Tahorakarewarewa is an ancient kōrero which is interpreted as being a very significant place both in size and stature. It is one of several recognised boundary markers that marked the eastern boundary between Tainui and Te Arawa.
4.	Taporaroa Pa (as shown on deed plan OTS-120-19)	Department of Conservation	Maraeroa A1	Taporaroa is the most significant papakāinga (village) of to Ngāti Rereahu papakāinga (village) and other local iwi as it was the most ancient of the old villages in the time of Kahupekarere (Pureora-o-Kahu) Turongo, Raukawa, Rereahu, Maniapoto and their families. It was also a neutral place for the tribes of Tainui and Te Arawa because of a shared ancestry first through Kahupekarere, then Raukawa and Turongoihi. Taporaroa meaning “a long mat” was named after the whariki (mat) that Raukawa and Turongoihi were betrothed as infants. The Taporaroa village also covered a large area and was well populated in the ancient times therefore the name also refers to the size and extent of the area.
5.	Tikiwhenua (as shown on deed plan OTS-120-09)	Department of Conservation	Maraeroa A1	Tikiwhenua is a sacred burial site or Urupā where lay the remains of the many tupuna who fought in the battle of “Ngahau” in the 18th Century between Rereahu/Maniapoto and the Whanganui tribes.

STATUTORY ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

6.	Tomotomo Ariki (as shown on deed plan OTS-120-10)	Department of Conservation	Maraeroa A1	Tomotomo Ariki is an ancestral pathway and is referred to as “He huarahi tangata – he ara tupuna”, meaning a road way for people, - an ancestral pathway. It was a major pathway at the time of the 1864 battles of Orakau and Rangiaowhia. Tomotomo Ariki provided a travel way between Waikato, Raukawa, Maniapoto, Rereahu and Tuwharetoa districts and was also well used by those tribes as well as by visiting tribes.
7.	Waimiha Stream (as shown on deed plan OTS-120-22)	Department of Conservation	Maraeroa A2	Waimiha o Kahu Punawai: The “Waimiha o Kahu” punawai or spring is situated just below the summit of Pureora mountain on the northern face. The water from the spring was used to perform the miha (ritual) to cleanse or purify a person from their ailments. The spring is also the source of the Waimihia river which flows down the mountain eventually joining the Ongarue. Waimiha o Kahu was named after Kahupekarere who recovered from a serious illness after the purification ceremony was performed with water from the spring. Further purification was obtained from standing on the summit and being purified by the winds. The saying “Purea I te wai, purea I te hau” refers to the purification rituals performed there. Waimiha o Kahu is therefore referred to as “He wai whakarite” or sacred waters. Waimiha o Kahu: Waimiha o Kahu. he waahi tango wai, Water drawing points. He wai tino tapu, nei nga whakaaro o Rereahu me etehi atu mo te Waimiha –o-Kahu. Divine Water is how Rereahu and others consider the entire Waimiha River. However here the water drawing points and there are many along the river, deals specifically with the area directly below Nga Herenga Papakāinga a span of 500 meters with the waters flowing north, considered in ancient times as the mauri (life essence) of the Papakāinga Rereahu and other local iwi descendants believe it important to be addressed as a waahi tapu.
8.	Waimoanaiti (as shown on deed plan	Department of Conservation	Maraeroa A1	Waimoanaiti is part of the wetlands that forms the beginning of the

STATUTORY ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

	OTS-120-11)			Waipa river. In times of heavy rain it turned into a lake or lagoon hence the name Waimoanaiti or “little sea”. It was also a wahi pakanga or the place of the extended site of the historic battle of Ngahau.
9.	Karamarama Stream (as shown on deed plan OTS-120-14)	Department of Conservation	Maraeroa A1	The Karamarama stream flowed below the village of Waitaramoa. It was a beautiful stream of crystal clear waters and full of koura (fresh water crayfish). Water was drawn from the Stream at various drawing points by inhabitants of Waitaramoa Pa and areas were also set aside for ceremonial purposes. It was therefore a wai whakarite or sacred stream. Karamarama means crystal clear or pure water and the stream eventually flows into the Waipapa River.
10.	Weraroa (as shown on deed plan OTS-120-15)	Department of Conservation	Maraeroa B1	Weraroa is a historic Rereahu village and traditional boundary marker defining the Tainui/Te Arawa boundary line. Weraroa means a large fire and likely named after the Taupo eruption scorched the earth so badly that the land remains largely vacant of trees and other plants even today.
11.	Commencement of Waipa River (as shown on deed plan OTS-120-08)	Department of Conservation	Maraeroa A1	The Waipa River commences at Taporaroa and is a very sacred river to both Rereahu and Maniapoto and is the source and original home of the taniwha, Waiwaia. (spiritual water guardian). The Waipa eventually flows into the Waikato river at the Ngaruawahia confluence. When the chieftaness Kahupekarere first arrived in the district at Pakaumanu she was overheard to say “I pa mai te rongo haruru ana, aa ka mutu, he wai noa”. That is she heard the thunderous sounds of the water long before she saw it. Pakaumanu makes further reference to the Waipa River as having the sound of birds wings. The place where the water from the swamp actually turns into a stream is known as pekepeke which means “to bounce” which happens when you walk on the moss areas of swamp lands. The Waipa River was also a traditional food gathering area where once were an abundance of tuna (eels), koura (crayfish) and manu (birds).
12.	Kahaho Stream (as shown on deed plan OTS-120-26) This stream is known to	Department of Conservation	Maraeroa B	Te Mangakakaho ano ra he wai tapu, he wai whakahira, whakahara, ki a matou o Rereahu me ona uri.

	the descendants of the original owners of the Maraeroa A and B blocks as Mangakakaho Stream.			Managakakaho Stream, sacred water of quality and utmost importance to Rereahu and other local iwi descendants. From a water shed of small puna wai (springs) in the Maraeroa C block, it flows firstly towards the West then turns East into Maraeroa B through part of Crafar Farms here flowing slightly North, eventually joining the Waimiha River. The Mangakakaho Stream is an important waahi tapu, particularly nga punawai termed wai whakarite (Blessing Water), and is used for this purpose even today by some members of Rereahu and other local iwi. The northern section was identified and used by Rereahu and other iwi whanau to prepare stone implements, adzes, axes, etc. Along most of the Mangakakaho Stream in terms of food, Mokopuna are still able to gather freshwater Koura, Kokopu, Tuna, Ti-komata as did our ancestors in their time.
--	---	--	--	---

7.3 Maraeroa A and B Blocks Claims Settlement Act 2012

In accordance with section 28 of the Maraeroa A and B Blocks Claims Settlement Act 2012, this section sets out the relevant provisions of sections 23-30 in full.

23 Statutory acknowledgement by the Crown

The Crown acknowledges the statements of association.

24 Purposes of statutory acknowledgement

- (1) *The only purposes of a statutory acknowledgement are to—*
- (a) *require relevant consent authorities, the Environment Court, and Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga to have regard to the statutory acknowledgement, in accordance with sections 25 to 27; and*
 - (b) *require relevant consent authorities to provide summaries of resource consent applications or, as the case requires, copies of notices of applications, to the trustees in accordance with section 29; and*
 - (c) *enable the trustees and any member of the settling group to cite a statutory acknowledgement as evidence of their association with the relevant statutory area, as provided for in section 30.*
- (2) *This section does not limit sections 33 to 35.*

25 Relevant consent authorities to have regard to statutory acknowledgement

- (1) *On and from the effective date, a relevant consent authority must have regard to the statutory acknowledgement relating to a statutory area in deciding, under section 95E of the Resource Management Act 1991, whether the trustees are affected persons in respect of an application for a resource consent for an activity within, adjacent to, or that directly affects a statutory area.*
- (2) *Subsection (1) does not limit the obligations of a relevant consent authority under the Resource Management Act 1991.*

26 Environment Court to have regard to statutory acknowledgement

- (1) *On and from the effective date, the Environment Court must have regard to the statutory acknowledgement relating to a statutory area in deciding, under section 274 of the Resource Management Act 1991, whether the trustees have an interest greater than that of the general public in respect of proceedings relating to an application for a resource consent for an activity within, adjacent to, or that directly affects a statutory area.*
- (2) *Subsection (1) does not limit the obligations of the Environment Court under the Resource Management Act 1991.*

27 Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga and Environment Court to have regard to statutory acknowledgement

- (1) *If, on or after the effective date, an application is made under section 44, 56, or 61 of the Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga Act 2014 for an authority to undertake an activity that will or may modify or destroy an archaeological site within a statutory area,—*
 - (a) *Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga, in exercising its powers under section 48, 56, or 62 of that Act in relation to the application, must have regard to the statutory acknowledgement relating to the statutory area; and*
 - (b) *the Environment Court, in determining under section 59(1) or 64(1) of that Act any appeal against a decision of Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga in relation to the application, must have regard to the statutory acknowledgement relating to the statutory area, including in making a determination as to whether the trustees are persons directly affected by the decision.*
- (2) *In this section, **archaeological site** has the meaning given in section 6 of the Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga Act 2014.*

28 Recording statutory acknowledgement on statutory plans

- (1) *On and from the effective date, a relevant consent authority must attach information recording a statutory acknowledgement to all statutory plans that wholly or partly cover a statutory area.*
- (2) *The information attached to a statutory plan must include the relevant provisions of this Act in full, the descriptions of the statutory areas, and the statements of association.*
- (3) *The attachment of information to a statutory plan under this section is for the purpose of public information only, and the information is not—*
 - (a) *part of the statutory plan, unless adopted by the relevant consent authority; or*
 - (b) *subject to the provisions of Schedule 1 of the Resource Management Act 1991, unless adopted as part of the statutory plan.*

29 Provision of information about resource consent applications to trustees

- (1) *Each relevant consent authority must, for a period of 20 years on and from the effective date, provide to the trustees the following for each resource consent application for an activity within, adjacent to, or that directly affects a statutory area:*
 - (a) *a summary of the application, if the application is received by the consent authority; or*
 - (b) *a copy of the notice served under section 145(10) of the Resource Management Act 1991, if the application is served on the consent authority.*
- (2) *The information provided under subsection (1)(a) must be—*
 - (a) *the same as would be given to an affected person under section 95B of the Resource Management Act 1991, or as may be agreed between the trustees and the relevant consent authority; and*
 - (b) *provided—*
 - (i) *as soon as is reasonably practicable after an application is received by the relevant consent authority; and*
 - (ii) *before the relevant consent authority decides under section 95 of that Act whether to notify the application.*
- (3) *A copy of the notice given under subsection (1)(b) must be provided not later than 10 business days after the day on which the consent authority receives the notice.*

- (4) *The trustees may, by notice in writing to a relevant consent authority,—*
 (a) *waive their rights to be notified under this section; and*
 (b) *state the scope of that waiver and the period it applies for.*
- (5) *This section does not affect the obligation of a relevant consent authority to decide,—*
 (a) *under section 95 of the Resource Management Act 1991, whether to notify an application;*
 (b) *under section 95E of that Act, whether the trustees are affected persons in relation to an activity.*

30 Use of statutory acknowledgement

The trustees and any member of the settling group may, as evidence of their association with a statutory area, cite the statutory acknowledgement that relates to that area in submissions or proceedings concerning activities within, adjacent to, or that directly affect the statutory area and that are made to or before—

- (a) *the relevant consent authorities; or*
 (b) *the Environment Court; or*
 (c) *Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga; or*
 (d) *the Environmental Protection Authority or a board of inquiry under Part 6AA of the Resource Management Act 1991.*

8 Statutory acknowledgment for Ngāti Koroki Kahukura

In accordance with section 27(2) of the Ngāti Koroki Kahukura Claims Settlement Act 2014, information is attached to this Regional Policy Statement recording the statutory acknowledgement that wholly or in part cover the statutory areas. This section provides a description of the statutory area within Waikato Regional Council jurisdiction, statements of association and relevant provisions of sections 22-26 and 28-29.

8.1 Statutory areas

The following table shows the areas to which the statutory acknowledgement relates within Waikato Regional Council jurisdiction.

Statutory Area	Map Reference
Little Waipā Recreation Reserve	As shown on OTS-180-14
Whitehall Estate site	As shown on OTS-180-15
Pōkaiwhenua Stream (Pokaiwhenua Stream) marginal strip site	As shown on OTS-180-17
Waikato River and its tributaries within the area of interest	As shown on OTS-180-27
Lake Arapuni	As shown on OTS-180-28
Lake Karapiro	As shown on OTS-180-29

8.2 Statements of association

In accordance with section 27(2) of the Ngāti Koroki Kahukura Claims Settlement Act 2014, the following statements of association are included below.

Little Waipā Recreation Reserve (as shown on deed plan OTS-180-014)

Waipa Iti continues to be of significant ancestral value to Ngāti Koroki Kahukura, and nearby Ngāti Koroki Kahukura pā drew upon it. Waretini and Taehuri (Ngāti Koroki Kahukura) lived at Waipa Iti but moved when the lake waters covered their lands. There were fruit plantations on this land and fruit was harvested by our tūpuna. The Mangakarā Creek at Waipa Iti was the place where Wīwī and Raupō were plentiful and they were used to line our whare (houses). Ropes and whips which were made from flax were exported for sale.

In more recent years, a young person drowned in the river upstream from Waipa Iti. It was Ngāti Koroki Kahukura tupuna Tioriori who waited at Waipa Iti in vigil to perform the karakia. The tūpuna provided awahi (support) to the bereaved whānau until the tūpāpaku emerged and could be returned to their marae for burial.

Ngāti Koroki Kahukura have also supported the re-interment of wheua/kōiwi (bones) that have been found in the area within the Pōhara urupā.

Whitehall Estate site (as shown on deed plan OTS-180-015)

Ngāti Koroki Kahukura know the Whitehall area as Te Miro and this area continues to hold significant ancestral value to Ngāti Koroki Kahukura.

Te Miro was a traditional bush settlement kāinga. Our tūpuna harvested native flora and fauna from the bush and waterways in this area for nourishment, building materials and medicinal purposes. Kawakawa leaves were used to treat respiratory illnesses. The bush provided sustenance by way of berries and manu (birds). Mātauranga Māori methods of seasonal hunting to protect resources were exercised in this area. As kaitiaki, Ngāti Koroki Kahukura understood the habits of the kererū: which food made them fat, which seasons it was best to harvest them or best to leave them. When berries were plentiful it was considered to be an indication that there were few manu around and, as such, many of the manu may not have been worth eating. However, if there were hardly any berries on the trees, that was a tohu (sign) that many manu were present which had eaten the berries. The plentiful manu would be plump and slow making them easier to catch. The rituals of harvest and preparation for cooking and storing kai were part of the traditional knowledge handed down from their tūpuna. The waterways in the Whitehall Fisheries site were also an important source of food. This included watercress, tuna (eels) and koura (little crayfish). One way to catch koura was to stand in the water, lift up the stones and catch them by the tails. Koura were very quick so catching them was quite a skill. Tuna were caught by the fisherman putting his arm down an eel-hole to feel if one was present. Then using a hook, the eel would be snatched and thrown to another person on the riverbank. Another method involved setting hīnaki (eel traps) at night, baited with huhu grubs from the bush. Huhu were threaded onto fine strands of harakeke which were tied into a ball and secured to the end of a long thin pole. This pole was dangled into the water and the huhu scent attracted the tuna. When the tuna bit the ball of harakeke and huhu its teeth caught in the harakeke and the fisherman would pull the line and tuna from the water before it could release its bite. This area was particularly important during harsh times because of its rich food resources.

Pōkaiwhenua Stream marginal strip site (as shown on deed plan OTS-180-017)

Pōkaiwhenua stream is a tributary of the Waikato River, the awa tupuna of Ngāti Koroki Kahukura. As an iwi who resides by its banks, Ngāti Koroki Kahukura have, over generations, developed tikanga, mātauranga, and a profound respect for our awa tupuna and all life within it. Pōkaiwhenua was both a seasonal settlement and also a resting place for our people when travelling between settlements. Pōkaiwhenua continues to hold significant ancestral value to Ngāti Koroki Kahukura.

When Pōkaiwhenua was used as a settlement area for Ngāti Koroki Kahukura, they cultivated many māra kai (food gardens). Amongst other produce, various types of rīwai Māori (Māori potatoes) were grown. Some of the types that were grown were Muimui (which had streaks of purple through it), hua karoro (which was yellow in colour) and the kōtero (which was green in colour). Ngāti Koroki Kahukura kaumātua believe these types of rīwai Māori do not exist anymore.

Ngāti Koroki Kahukura tūpuna would place kānga (corn) in the Pōkaiwhenua stream. Kānga wai was placed in the water for approximately three months and, in this time, the corn would ferment. It would then be ready for cooking to a porridge consistency, creating a delicacy enjoyed to this day by many Ngāti Koroki Kahukura. The kōtero (Rīwai Māori) were prepared the same way as kānga and was also considered a

delicacy. Many Ngāti Koroki Kahukura ancestors such as Tioriori Te Hura, Piripi Whanatangi, Nepia Marino, Ihaia Tioriori, Karauria Ngamu, Raniera Te Wera, Aperehama Te Rangipouri and Pita (Marino), Rihia Te Kauae and Parakaia Te Pouepa lived at this site and cultivated the land.

Waikato River and its tributaries within the area of interest (as shown on deed plan OTS-180-027)

The Waikato River is the awa tupuna (ancestral river) and a living taonga of Ngāti Koroki Kahukura with its own mauri and spiritual integrity. The awa is part of us. Ngāti Koroki Kahukura regards the Waikato River as the life blood of our people. We regard the awa and its tributaries with reverence, significance and love. The awa continues to provide spiritual and physical sustenance to Ngāti Koroki Kahukura and is inextricably linked to our identity. Our maunga and our awa are inseparable, hence our saying:

Ko Maungatautari te maunga
ko Waikato te awa

*Our mountain is Maungatautari
Our ancestral river is Waikato.*

The awa tupuna had traditional healing powers. Spiritually, the Waikato River is constant, enduring and perpetual. It brings us peace in times of stress, relieves us from illness and pain, cleanses and purifies our bodies and souls from the many problems that surround us, and it is the home of the many Taniwha that reside here, hence the saying:

Ko Pōtatau te Tangata
Ko Taupiri te Maunga
Ko Waikato te Awa
He Piko He Taniwha
He Piko He Taniwha.

Over generations, Ngāti Koroki Kahukura developed tikanga which reflect a profound respect for the Waikato River and the life within it. Tikanga related to the blessing of children, to cleansing, and to healing.

In addition to its spiritual dimension, physically the Waikato River in times past, present and future, has, and will provide for our people the means to sustain ourselves. Its waters enabled the land to remain fertile thereby allowing the gardens of Ngāti Koroki Kahukura to flourish. The awa tupuna yielded aquatic foods such as fish and tuna and the Arapuni region was known as 'te rohe o te tuna - the region of the plentiful eels'. The lyrics of the well-known waiata for the river 'Waikato Te Awa', originally composed by Rangi Harrison who worked on the Waikato river dam system, include:

'Titiro whakakatau au, ko Maungatautari, Ko Ngāti Koroki, Ko Arapuni rā, te rohe o te tuna e...'

From Karapiro I look south and to my right, and there is Maungatautari and Ngāti Koroki through to Arapuni, the domain of the eel.

According to oral histories when spearing eels, little ones were thrown back. Food was not eaten right by the river, but taken home to eat. Elderly tribal members recall being taught not to be greedy, to take only enough food for a meal, and not to mistreat the river. Rāhui, or prohibitions on fishing or other activities, were imposed in defined areas to prevent fishing for a time to allow for food species to rejuvenate.

In addition to eels, food species that were once abundant include whitebait, inanga, catfish, trout, river cod, freshwater crayfish, mullet, fresh water pipi and mussels, water fowls of all kinds and watercress. Ngāti Koroki Kahukura also accessed the waterways to prepare the traditional fermented delicacy, kānga wai.

The Waikato River was the principal highway of trade for Ngāti Koroki Kahukura. Ngāti Koroki Kahukura were waka builders. From the nineteenth century that trade included sending wheat, flax and potatoes via waka north and overseas for trading. In addition to its role as part of the waka culture and transportation network, the river provided many resources including flax for weaving. Its flood plains and river valleys provided large areas of arable soils.

We are a river iwi. Our relationship with our awa tupuna (ancestral river) has developed over centuries. Ngāti Koroki Kahukura continues to exercise the customary rights and responsibilities of kaitiakitanga over the Waikato River from Karapiro through to Arapuni. As a kaitiaki of our ancestral river, Ngāti Koroki Kahukura continue to be responsible for protecting the health and well-being of the river for future generations.

This statement of association also applies to all lakes and tributaries of the awa tupuna.

Lake Arapuni (as shown on deed plan OTS-180-028)

The Waikato River, of which Lake Arapuni forms part, is the awa tupuna (ancestral river) and a living taonga of Ngāti Koroki Kahukura with its own mauri and spiritual integrity. The awa is part of us. Ngāti Koroki Kahukura regards the Waikato River as the life blood of our people. We regard the awa and its tributaries with reverence, significance and love. The awa continues to provide spiritual and physical sustenance to Ngāti Koroki Kahukura and is inextricably linked to our identity. Our maunga and our awa are inseparable, hence our saying:

Ko Maungatautari te maunga ko Waikato te awa

Our mountain is Maungatautari

Our ancestral river is Waikato.

The awa tupuna had traditional healing powers. Spiritually, the Waikato River is constant, enduring and perpetual. It brings us peace in times of stress, relieves us from illness and pain, cleanses and purifies our bodies and souls from the many problems that surround us, and it is the home of the many Taniwha that reside here, hence the saying:

Ko Pōtatau te Tangata

Ko Taupiri te Maunga

Ko Waikato te Awa

He Piko He Taniwha

He Piko He Taniwha.

Over generations, Ngāti Koroki Kahukura developed tikanga which reflect a profound respect for the Waikato River and the life within it. Tikanga related to the blessing of children, to cleansing, and to healing.

In addition to its spiritual dimension, physically the Waikato River in times past, present and future, has, and will provide for our people the means to sustain ourselves. Its waters enabled the land to remain fertile thereby allowing the gardens of Ngāti Koroki Kahukura to flourish. The awa tupuna yielded aquatic foods such as fish and tuna and the Arapuni region was known as 'te rohe o te tuna - the region of the plentiful eels'. The lyrics of the well-known waiata for the river 'Waikato Te Awa', originally composed by Rangi Harrison who worked on the Waikato river dam system, include:

'Titiro whakakatau au, ko Maungatautari, Ko Ngāti Koroki, Ko Arapuni ra, te rohe o te tuna e...'

From Karapiro I look south and to my right, and there is Maungatautari and Ngāti Koroki through to Arapuni, the domain of the eel.

According to oral histories when spearing eels, little ones were thrown back. Food was not eaten right by the river, but taken home to eat. Elderly tribal members recall being taught not to be greedy, to take only enough food for a meal, and not to mistreat the river. Rāhui, or prohibitions on fishing or other activities, were imposed in defined areas to prevent fishing for a time to allow for food species to rejuvenate.

In addition to eels, food species that were once abundant include whitebait, inanga, catfish, trout, river cod, freshwater crayfish, mullet, fresh water pipi and mussels, water fowls of all kinds and watercress. Ngāti Koroki Kahukura also accessed the waterways to prepare the traditional fermented delicacy, kānga wai.

The Waikato River was the principal highway of trade for Ngāti Koroki Kahukura. Ngāti Koroki Kahukura were waka builders. From the nineteenth century that trade included sending wheat, flax and potatoes via waka north and overseas for trading. In addition to its role as part of the waka culture and transportation network, the river provided many resources including flax for weaving. Its flood plains and river valleys provided large areas of arable soils.

We are a river iwi. Our relationship with our awa tupuna (ancestral river) has developed over centuries. Ngāti Koroki Kahukura continues to exercise the customary rights and responsibilities of kaitiakitanga over the Waikato River from Karapiro through to Arapuni. As a kaitiaki of our ancestral river, Ngāti Koroki Kahukura continue to be responsible for protecting the health and well-being of the river for future generations.

In addition to this statement regarding the Waikato River, Ngāti Koroki Kahukura states our specific association to Lake Arapuni.

Since the early 1800's, Ngāti Koroki Kahukura have farmed lands on both sides of our awa tupuna in the Arapuni area. What is now Lake Arapuni continues to hold significant historic, cultural and ancestral value for Ngāti Koroki Kahukura. Ngāti Koroki Kahukura continues to exercise kaitiakitanga in the Arapuni area through conducting karakia and pōwhiri and other customary activities.

Arapuni was the name of the rapids along the Waikato River which were submerged when the lake was formed. Ngāti Koroki Kahukura whānau worked on the dam construction project that led to the formation of the lake.

Ngāti Koroki Kahukura's presence in the area is recognised within the well-known Waikato waiata for the river 'Waikato Te Awa', originally composed by Rangi Harrison who worked on the Waikato river dam system, which says:

'Ko Maungatautari, ko Ngāti Koroki Kahukura, ko Arapuni rā, te rohe o te tuna e'.

Lake Arapuni covers a number of sites of significance to Ngāti Koroki Kahukura including travel routes important to the iwi. Many Ngāti Koroki Kahukura tūpuna lived on their lands along the eastern banks of our awa tupuna and crossed the river to travel.

Our burial caves lined both banks of the awa (once very steep) that is now Lake Arapuni, including a significant burial cave not far from Darby Rd. Mere Kara tells of the times of her childhood swimming at Arapuni. Because the banks of the river were so steep in other areas, they would travel to swim at Arapuni as it was more accessible and safer to swim there.

In more recent years, if there was mishap through drowning, Ngāti Koroki Kahukura waited in vigil at karakia and support and awhi the bereaved whānau until the tūpāpaku emerged. Ngāti Koroki Kahukura has also supported the reburial of wheua or kōiwi (bones) discovered in and around the Lake and re-interred these with due respect within urupā.

Lake Karapiro (as shown on deed plan OTS-180-029)

The Waikato River, of which Lake Karapiro forms part, is the awa tupuna (ancestral river) and a living taonga of Ngāti Koroki Kahukura with its own mauri and spiritual integrity. The awa is part of us. Ngāti Koroki Kahukura regards the Waikato River as the life blood of our people. We regard the awa and its tributaries with reverence, significance and love. The awa continues to provide spiritual and physical sustenance to Ngāti Koroki Kahukura and is inextricably linked to our identity. Our maunga and our awa are inseparable, hence our saying:

Ko Maungatautari te maunga

ko Waikato te awa

Our mountain is Maungatautari

Our ancestral river is Waikato.

The awa tupuna had traditional healing powers. Spiritually, the Waikato River is constant, enduring and perpetual. It brings us peace in times of stress, relieves us from illness and pain, cleanses and purifies our bodies and souls from the many problems that surround us, and it is the home of the many Taniwha that reside here, hence the saying,

Ko Pōtatau te Tangata

Ko Taupiri te Maunga

Ko Waikato te Awa

He Piko He Taniwha

He Piko He Taniwha

Over generations, Ngāti Koroki Kahukura developed tikanga which reflect a profound respect for the Waikato River and the life within it. Tikanga related to the blessing of children, to cleansing, and to healing.

In addition to its spiritual dimension, physically the Waikato River in times past, present and future, has, and will provide for our people the means to sustain ourselves. Its waters enabled the land to remain fertile thereby allowing the gardens of Ngāti Koroki Kahukura to flourish. The awa tupuna yielded aquatic foods such as fish and tuna and the Arapuni region was known as ‘te rohe o te tuna - the region of the plentiful eels’. The lyrics of the well-known waiata for the river ‘Waikato Te Awa’, originally composed by Rangi Harrison who worked on the Waikato river dam system, include:

‘Titiro whakakatau au, ko Maungatautari, Ko Ngāti Koroki,

Ko Arapuni ra, te rohe o te tuna e...’

From Karapiro I look south and to my right, and there is Maungatautari and Ngāti Koroki through to Arapuni, the domain of the eel.

According to oral histories when spearing eels, little ones were thrown back. Food was not eaten right by the river, but taken home to eat. Elderly tribal members recall being taught not to be greedy, to take only enough food for a meal, and not to mistreat the river. Rāhui, or prohibitions on fishing or other activities, were imposed in defined areas to prevent fishing for a time to allow for food species to rejuvenate.

In addition to eels, food species that were once abundant include whitebait, inanga, catfish, trout, river cod, freshwater crayfish, mullet, fresh water pipi and mussels, water fowls of all kinds and watercress.

The Waikato River was the principal highway of trade for Ngāti Koroki Kahukura. Ngāti Koroki Kahukura were waka builders. From the nineteenth century that trade included sending wheat, flax and potatoes via waka north and overseas for trading. In addition to its role as part of the waka culture and transportation network, the river provided

many resources including flax for weaving. Its flood plains and river valleys provided large areas of arable soils.

We are a river iwi. Our relationship with our awa tupuna (ancestral river) has developed over centuries. Ngāti Koroki Kahukura continues to exercise the customary rights and responsibilities of kaitiakitanga over the Waikato River from Karapiro through to Arapuni. As a kaitiaki of our ancestral river, Ngāti Koroki Kahukura continue to be responsible for protecting the health and well-being of the river for future generations.

In addition to this statement regarding the Waikato River, Ngāti Koroki Kahukura states our specific association to Lake Karapiro.

The Karapiro area is of immeasurable spiritual, cultural and ancestral significance to Ngāti Koroki Kahukura. It is a wāhi tino tapu.

Ngāti Koroki Kahukura have sustained our presence upon the lands in and around what is now Lake Karapiro for many generations, maintaining our presence to this day.

Taumatawiwi

In the 1800s, during times of inter-tribal conflict, other iwi and hapū occupied the Maungatautari and Karapiro area with Ngāti Koroki Kahukura's permission, but friction resulted, and a pivotal battle was fought by Ngāti Koroki Kahukura and others at Taumatawiwi in 1830. To prevent interference, slain bodies of fallen Ngāti Koroki Kahukura warriors (as well as warriors from other iwi who supported them in the battle), were burnt at the base of prominent rocks situated in the valley where the Hauoira Stream joined the Waikato River. Because of the foul odours emanating from the cremations, the place was called Karapiro (karā being a type of rock and piro meaning foul). These rocks are now submerged in the lake and, in the 1980s, monuments were established to commemorate the importance of the site.

The battle of Taumatawiwi is central to the identity and the on-going customary rights and responsibilities of Ngāti Koroki Kahukura in the area.

Ngāti Koroki Kahukura people lived in the Horahora village which was also flooded (along with the Horahora Dam) when the new dam was constructed at Karapiro between 1940 and 1947. This was the location of many traditional landmarks and food sources important to traditional customary practices.

Ngāti Koroki Kahukura has a deep and important on-going association with the Karapiro area on the basis that the bones of our ancestors as well as our former homes and burial grounds lie beneath the waters of the hydro lake.

8.3 Ngāti Koroki Kahukura Claims Settlement Act 2014

In accordance with section 27(2) of the Ngāti Koroki Kahukura Claims Settlement Act 2014, this section sets out the relevant provisions of sections 22-26 and 28-29 in full.

22 Statutory acknowledgement by the Crown

The Crown acknowledges the statements of association for the statutory areas.

23 Purposes of statutory acknowledgement

The only purposes of the statutory acknowledgement are—

- (a) to require relevant consent authorities, the Environment Court, and Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga to have regard to the statutory acknowledgement, in accordance with sections 24 to 26; and*
- (b) to require relevant consent authorities to record the statutory acknowledgement on statutory plans that relate to the statutory areas and to provide summaries of resource consent applications or copies of notices of applications to the trustees, in accordance with sections 27 and 28; and*

- (c) *to enable the trustees and any member of Ngāti Koroki Kahukura to cite the statutory acknowledgement as evidence of the association of Ngāti Koroki Kahukura with a statutory area, in accordance with section 29.*

24 Relevant consent authorities to have regard to statutory acknowledgement

- (1) *This section applies in relation to an application for a resource consent for an activity within, adjacent to, or directly affecting a statutory area.*
- (2) *On and from the effective date, a relevant consent authority must have regard to the statutory acknowledgement relating to the statutory area in deciding, under section 95E of the Resource Management Act 1991, whether the trustees are affected persons in relation to the activity.*
- (3) *Subsection (2) does not limit the obligations of a relevant consent authority under the Resource Management Act 1991.*

25 Environment Court to have regard to statutory acknowledgement

- (1) *This section applies to proceedings in the Environment Court in relation to an application for a resource consent for an activity within, adjacent to, or directly affecting a statutory area.*
- (2) *On and from the effective date, the Environment Court must have regard to the statutory acknowledgement relating to the statutory area in deciding, under section 274 of the Resource Management Act 1991, whether the trustees are persons with an interest in the proceedings greater than that of the general public.*
- (3) *Subsection (2) does not limit the obligations of the Environment Court under the Resource Management Act 1991.*

26 Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga and Environment Court to have regard to statutory acknowledgement

- (1) *This section applies to an application made under section 44, 56, or 61 of the Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga Act 2014 for an authority to undertake an activity that will or may modify or destroy an archaeological site within a statutory area.*
- (2) *On and from the effective date, Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga must have regard to the statutory acknowledgement relating to the statutory area in exercising its powers under section 48, 56, or 62 of the Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga Act 2014 in relation to the application.*
- (3) *On and from the effective date, the Environment Court must have regard to the statutory acknowledgement relating to the statutory area—*
 - (a) *in determining whether the trustees are persons directly affected by the decision; and*
 - (b) *in determining, under section 59(1) or 64(1) of the Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga Act 2014, an appeal against a decision of Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga in relation to the application.*
- (4) *In this section, **archaeological site** has the meaning given in section 6 of the Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga Act 2014.*

28 Provision of summary or notice to trustees

- (1) *Each relevant consent authority must, for a period of 20 years on and from the effective date, provide the following to the trustees for each resource consent application for an activity within, adjacent to, or directly affecting a statutory area:*
 - (a) *if the application is received by the consent authority, a summary of the application; or*
 - (b) *if notice of the application is served on the consent authority under section 145(10) of the Resource Management Act 1991, a copy of the notice.*
- (2) *A summary provided under subsection (1)(a) must be the same as would be given to an affected person by limited notification under section 95B of the Resource Management Act 1991 or as may be agreed between the trustees and the relevant consent authority.*
- (3) *The summary must be provided—*

- (a) *as soon as is reasonably practicable after the relevant consent authority receives the application; but*
- (b) *before the relevant consent authority decides under section 95 of the Resource Management Act 1991 whether to notify the application.*
- (4) *A copy of a notice must be provided under subsection (1)(b) not later than 10 working days after the day on which the consent authority receives the notice.*
- (5) *The trustees may, by written notice to a relevant consent authority,—*
 - (a) *waive the right to be provided with a summary or copy of a notice under this section; and*
 - (b) *state the scope of that waiver and the period it applies for.*
- (6) *This section does not affect the obligation of a relevant consent authority to decide,—*
 - (a) *under section 95 of the Resource Management Act 1991, whether to notify an application;*
 - (b) *under section 95E of that Act, whether the trustees are affected persons in relation to an activity.*

29 Use of statutory acknowledgement

- (1) *The trustees and any member of Ngāti Koroki Kahukura may, as evidence of the association of Ngāti Koroki Kahukura with a statutory area, cite the statutory acknowledgement that relates to that area in submissions concerning activities within, adjacent to, or directly affecting the statutory area that are made to or before—*
 - (a) *the relevant consent authorities; or*
 - (b) *the Environment Court; or*
 - (c) *Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga; or*
 - (d) *the Environmental Protection Authority or a board of inquiry under Part 6AA of the Resource Management Act 1991.*
- (2) *The content of a statement of association is not, by virtue of the statutory acknowledgement, binding as fact on—*
 - (a) *the bodies referred to in subsection (1); or*
 - (b) *parties to proceedings before those bodies; or*
 - (c) *any other person who is entitled to participate in those proceedings.*
- (3) *However, the bodies and persons specified in subsection (2) may take the statutory acknowledgement into account.*
- (4) *To avoid doubt,—*
 - (a) *neither the trustees nor members of Ngāti Koroki Kahukura are precluded from stating that Ngāti Koroki Kahukura has an association with a statutory area that is not described in the statutory acknowledgement; and*
 - (b) *the content and existence of the statutory acknowledgement do not limit any statement made.*

9 Statutory acknowledgement for Ngāti Hauā

In accordance with section 36(2) of the Ngāti Hauā Claims Settlement Act 2014, information is attached to this Regional Policy Statement recording the statutory acknowledgement that wholly or in part cover the statutory areas. This section provides a description of the statutory area within Waikato Regional Council jurisdiction, statements of association and relevant provisions of sections 31-35 and 37-38.

9.1 Statutory areas

The following table shows the areas to which the statutory acknowledgement relates within the Waikato Regional Council Jurisdiction.

Statutory Area	Map Reference
Waiorongomai (being part of Kaimai Mamaku Conservation Park)	As shown on OTS-190-02
Ngatamahinerua (being part of Kaimai	As shown on OTS-190-03

Mamaku Conservation Park and part of Maurihiro Scenic Reserve)	
Te Wairere (being Wairere Falls Scenic Reserve, part of Gordon Park Scenic Reserve, and part of Kaimai Mamaku Conservation Park)	As shown on OTS-190-04
Te Weraiti (being part of Kaimai Mamaku Conservation Park)	As shown on OTS-190-05
Whewells Bush Scientific Reserve	As shown on OTS-190-06
Te Oko Horoi	As shown on OTS-190-07
Waikato River and tributaries within the Ngāti Hauā Area of Interest	As shown on OTS-190-08

9.2 Statements of association

In accordance with section 36(2) of the Ngāti Hauā Claims Settlement Act 2014, the following statements of association are included below:

Waiorongomai (as shown on deed plan OTS-190-02)		
Site Type	Puke Tapu (Sacred hill)	Ngāti Hauā association (history, significance)
Location	South of Te Aroha, North of Old Te Aroha Road	Waiorongomai is a Puke Tapu of great significance to Ngāti Hauā.
Description of Site	Being part of Kaimai Mamaku Conservation Park	
Ngāti Hauā Tupuna association	Te Waharoa, Te Wharenuī	According to Ngāti Hauā traditions, Waihoka pa was located at the base of Waiorongomai.
Ngāti Hauā hapū association	Ngāti Te Oro / Ngāti Rangi / Ngāti Tawhaki / Ngāti Werewere	
Pepeha, waiata or whakatauki	<i>Ka titiro au ki te rangi Ko whea tera e tu ana, Ā, ko Te Aroha o Kahu</i> <i>I look skyward And I am amazed by the impressive stance of the Love of Kahu (Te Aroha)</i>	Waiorongomai overlooked areas where Ngāti Hauā resided, cultivated, hunted, gathered food, and fished. Ngāti Hauā have continually used Waiorongomai area for eeling and other purposes right up to this present time.

Nga Tamahine e Rua (as shown on deed plan OTS-190-03)		
Site Type	TeTihī Maunga (Mountain Peaks)	Ngāti Hauā association (history, significance)
Location	Part of Kaimai Mamaku Conservation Park and part of Maurihiro Scenic Reserve, Kaimai Ranges	Ngā Tamahine e Rua is located in the Kaimai Ranges.
Description of Site	Nga Tamahine e Rua are two large peaks in the Kaimai Ranges.	
Ngāti Hauā Tupuna association	Te Waharoa, Wiremu Tamehana	Ngā Tamaahine e Rua overlooks the Waiharakeke area and was used as a significant marker by the Ngāti Hauā people, who had a number of settlements and cultivations in the vicinity.
Ngāti Hauā hapū association	Ngāti Hauā / Ngāti Te Oro / Ngāti Rangi / Ngāti Tāwhaki	
Pepeha, waiata or whakatauki	<i>Ka puia taku mata ki te horowai Ki Te Wairere Ka huri atu rā ki Waiharakeke E noho ana i te taumarumarutanga O Ngā Tamaahine e Rua Ka titiro au ki te rangi, ko whea tērā e tū ana Ā, ko Te Aroha o Kahu e Katahi ka tere taku haere ki</i>	According to Ngāti Hauā traditions, Ngāti Hauā's occupation at the foot of Nga Tamahine e Rua was solidified by the cementing of peace following the battle of Taumatawiwi in 1830.

STATUTORY ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

	<i>Tātuanui o Hauā</i> <i>My face has succumbed to the wondrous cascade of Te Wairere And I turn to gaze upon Waiharakeke, Which is sheltered by the envelopment of Ngā Tamaahine e Rua</i> <i>I look skyward And I am amazed by the impressive stance of the Love of Kahu (Te Aroha)</i> <i>Thenceforth I continue my journey to Te Tātua nui o Hauā</i>	Ngāti Hauā have always lived in the vicinity of Ngā Tamahine e Rua and have used this area for food gathering (birds), hunting and collection of rongoā. Ngāti Hauā to this day have land in Ngā Tamahine e Rua, and continue to gather food in this area.
--	---	---

Te Wairere (as shown on deed plan OTS-190-04)		
Site Type	Horowai (waterfall) and track	Ngāti Hauā association (history, significance)
Location	Wairere Falls Scenic Reserve, and being part of Gordon Park Scenic Reserve, and part of Kaimai Mamaku Conservation Park, Kaimai Ranges	The Wairere Falls is a unique landmark and provides spiritual sustenance to the Ngāti Hauā people. The source of the Wairere Falls travels from the Tauranga district and runs through the heart of the Kaimai Ranges, then flows out into the Okauia Valley and gushes into the Waihou river. According to the traditions of Ngāti Hauā, from ancient times Ngāti Tāwhaki, Ngāti Rangi and Ngāti Hauā maintained their rights of access to and from Omokoroa via the Wairere track which passed over the Kaimai Ranges. The Wairere Falls is also a site of great historical significance for the people of Ngāti Hauā. In the early contact period, the Wairere track was used to transport flax for trade over the Kaimai Ranges to the port at Tauranga. In the year 1836, Wairere Falls was the place where Tarore, the grand-niece of Te Waharoa, was killed by a raiding party, who were at war with Ngāti Hauā. According to Ngāti Hauā traditions, Tarore's bible was stolen from the Wairere campsite and was credited with converting her assailant, who later sought forgiveness from Tarore's
Description of Site	The Wairere Falls is a waterfall nestled at the southern end of the Kaimai Ranges and flows down into the Waihou River	
Ngāti Hauā Tupuna association	Te Waharoa, Tamehana Te Waharoa	
Ngāti Hauā hapū association	Ngāti Hauā / Ngāti Tāwhaki / Ngāti Rangi	
Pepeha, waiata or whakatauki	Wiremu Tamehana was walking through the Kaimai Ranges when he quotes the following tongikura. Upon seeing the burning fires, he knew that there was comfort, with the people living there. <i>Kua kaimai ahau a paowa nei</i> <i>I have eaten From the smoke of the fire</i> <i>As long as I see The smoke of the burning fires It is sufficient for food</i>	

STATUTORY ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

		father Ngākuku. Tarore's bible, "The Gospel of Luke", cemented peace with Ngāti Hauā. It was then taken to Otaki, and possibly even to the South Island, in the possession of Māori preaching the gospel of peace and reconciliation. Such was the influence of this book, "The Gospel of Luke" and the story of this young girl Tarore who died at Te Wairere. In August 1838 Te Waharoa was taken ill at Motu Hoa, in Tauranga. As Te Waharoa's illness grew stronger, Ngāti Hauā carried him home to Matamata, to die. According to Ngāti Hauā traditions, as they approached Wairere Falls, they stopped at a place near the river of Waitioko, which flows in the forest, between Wairere and Waipapa. Te Waharoa thence asked for a drink of Waitioko's sweet waters. Subsequently his people went to fill his calabash, and gave it to him, which revived him for a while. Te Waharoa thence declared the stream his own. The Wairere Falls overlooked Papa Kainga and sacred burial grounds, and is professed to be near the resting place of Te Waharoa's renowned son, Wiremu Tamehana.
--	--	--

Te Weraiti (as shown on deed plan OTS-190-05)		
Site Type	Puke Tapu (Sacred Hill)	Ngāti Hauā association (history, significance)
Location	Te Weraiti (Being part of Kaimai Mamaku Conservation Park), at the southern end of the Kaimai Ranges	Te Weraiti is a Puke tapu of Ngāti Hauā located in the Okauia district; it is a key boundary marker used to define both the eastern and southern boundaries of Ngāti Hauā rohe.
Description of Site	Te Weraiti is a hill in the Kaimai Ranges	
Ngāti Hauā Tupuna association	Te Waharoa, Tamehana Te Waharoa	
Ngāti Hauā hapū association	Ngāti Rangī / Ngāti Tāwhaki / Ngāti Te Oro	Te Weraiti was acknowledged as a significant landmark, viewed from Ngāti Hauā pā and kāinga in the vicinity of Te Weraiti. According to Ngāti Hauā tradition, Te Waharoa of Ngāti Hauā provided protection to those who resided in the areas below Te
Pepeha, waiata or whakatauki	None provided	

STATUTORY ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

		Weraiti at Waihou, Waiharakeke, Parekarewarewa and Okauia where there were mahinga kai (areas of cultivation), papa kāinga (inhabitations) and urupā (sacred burial grounds). Ngāti Hauā, through the hapū of Ngāti Rangi Te Oro, Ngāti Rangi, Ngāti Tāwhaki, have had a strong association with Te Weraiti.
--	--	--

Whewells Bush Scientific Reserve (as shown on deed plan OTS-190-06)		
Site Type	Scientific Reserve	Ngāti Hauā association (history, significance)
Location	Tamahere	The Tamahere area, where the Whewells Bush Scientific Reserve is located, is a significant cultural landscape of Ngāti Hauā. The Tamahere area has many wāhi tapu of great significance to Ngāti Hauā. Our ancestor Hauā was born and raised at Te Rapa Pā. Maniapoto Pā was situated besides Mangaone stream, which is one of the three Ngāti Hauā fortresses that is expounded in Ngāti Hauā's pepeha: Mai i Te Pae o Tūrāwaru Ki Te Kaweitiki Ki Maniapoto According to the Kaumatua of Ngāti Hauā, Maniapoto Pā was also known as a 'launching pad' for many of the warring campaigns of the Ngāti Hauā taua (warriors) during the early 1700's under the leadership of Taiporutu and Tangimoana. Tamahere was renowned for its rich fertile soil. The Ngāti Hauā people cultivated the land, and traded with the Auckland markets in the 1850s – 1860s. It was there in Tamahere where Wiremu Tamehana laid down his taiaha before his enemy of the time, as a covenant of peace between Ngāti Hauā and the Crown, which is known as Te Maungarongo o Tamehana.
Description of Site	Bush area	
Ngāti Hauā Tupuna association	Te Waharoa, Tamehana Te Waharoa	
Ngāti Hauā hapū association	Ngāti Rangi / Ngāti Tāwhaki / Ngāti Te Oro	
Pepeha, waiata or whakatauki	<i>Ka hunuku atu ki Motumaoho Ka haere tonu ra taku haere ki Kirikiriroa Ka titiro ki te rāwhiti ki te maunga I whakatau atu ngā manu nui o te motu</i> <i>Ko wai kē Ko Maungakawa Kei raro rā Ko Tamahere Ko te wāhi i hohouhia te maungarongo Ka tū kau ake rā ko Pukemoremore Ka huri tonu atu ki Te Tikitiki o Ihingarangi</i> <i>Journeying still to Motumāoho And traversing through to Hamilton The birthplace of our ancestor, Hauā My eyes are transfixed eastward To the mountain which embraced All noblemen and dignitaries Yes indeed it was Maungakawa Below was the hallowed setting of Tamahere The place upon which the covenant of peace was humbly cemented Within the refuge of the sacred prominence of Pukemoremore</i> <i>Mai i Te Pae o Tūrāwaru Ki Te Kaweitiki (Kaweitiki) Ki Maniapoto</i> <i>From the Pae o Tūrāwaru (Waharoa) Ki te Kaweitiki (Maungakawa) Ki Maniapoto (Tamahere)</i>	

Te Oko Horoi (as shown on deed plan OTS-190-07)		
Site Type	DOC owned Marginal Strip	Ngāti Hauā association (history, significance)
Location	Marginal Strip, Waikato River, Cambridge	Kemureti is captured within the well known proverb of King Tawhiao: <i>Ko Arekahanara taku haona kaha</i> <i>Ko Kemureti taku oko horoi</i> <i>Ko Ngaruawahia taku turangawaewae</i> <i>Alexandra will ever be a symbol of my strength</i> <i>Cambridge a symbol of my wash bowl of sorrow</i> <i>And Ngaruawahia my footstool.</i> Te Oko Horoi is within an area of high cultural significance to Ngāti Hauā. Notable sites in the area include Tikapu, Horotiu Pa and the Pa of Taowhakaio. According to Ngāti Hauā traditions, Koroki lived on the south side of the Waikato River near Cambridge at Tikapu and Taowhakaio lived on the northern bank of the river. When Taowhakaio found Koroki visiting his wife in his absence, he vowed to cook Koroki and eat him, Koroki wasted no time addressing this insult. He called on his Waikato cousins for help and together they attacked and defeated Taowhakaio and his people. Through the union of Koroki and Tumataura –Haua the eponymous ancestor of Ngāti Hauā iwi is born. Horotiu is acknowledged as one of the Pa where Haua was raised.
Description of Site	Marginal Strip situated alongside Cambridge Golf Course within the rohe of Kemureti.	
Ngāti Hauā Tupuna association	Koroki, Taowhakaio, Tumataura, Haua	
Ngāti Hauā hapū association	Ngāti Hauā whānui	
Pepeha, waiata or whakatauki	<i>Ko Arekahanara taku haona kaha</i> <i>Ko Kemureti taku oko horoi</i> <i>Ko Ngaruawahia taku turangawaewae</i> <i>Alexandra will ever be a symbol of my strength</i> <i>Cambridge a symbol of my wash bowl of sorrow</i> <i>And Ngaruawahia my footstool.</i>	

Waikato River		
Site Type	Te Awa Tupuna (The Ancestral River)	Ngāti Hauā association (history, significance)
Location	Waikato River	Waikato is our awa tapu (sacred river), our awa tupuna (ancestral river). It is our living taonga (a precious treasure)
Description of Site	Waikato River is the longest river in New Zealand	
Ngāti Hauā	Te Waharoa, Te Tiwha	

STATUTORY ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

Tupuna association		to the people of Ngāti Hauā. Ngāti Hauā is inextricably connected to the river through the ancestral ties of whakapapa which originated from the beginning of time, from the creation of the world when Ranginui (Sky Father) and Papatūānuku (Mother Earth) separated. That is when Tangaroa (Guardian of the Sea) flooded into the realm of daylight and brought nourishment to the world. This depicts the Ngāti Hauā worldview and highlights the importance of our waterways, it's tributaries, and all that dwell within, to the people of Ngāti Hauā. This forms the foundation of Kaitiakitanga, which states that this taonga must be cherished and respected, and is a matter of great significance and priority, for the Ngāti Hauā people as guardians of the Waikato river. The Waikato river was named by the ancestors of Tainui waka, of whom Ngāti Hauā descend. There is a well-known iwi legend which recounts the river Waikato being given as a gift hailing from Ruapehu maunga, by Tongariro, to his sick relative, Taupiri. The Waikato River, and its region, has been populated for at least the past 700 to 800 years. The river provides physical and spiritual sustenance, and traditional healing powers for the people of Ngāti Hauā living along its catchment. The Waikato river is synonymous with mana, and Ngāti Hauā regard the awa as a source of mana, and an indicator of their own mauri, identity and wellbeing. According to Ngāti Hauā the Waikato River provided nutrients that enabled lands to remain fertile, thereby allowing areas of cultivation to flourish. These fertile areas yielded water fowl to reproduce aquatic foods such as fish and tuna, with the Ngāti Hauā region being known as 'Te rohe o te Tuna' (The land that was rich in
Ngāti Hauā hapū association	Ngāti Hauā	
Pepeha, waiata or whakatauki	<i>Waikato taniwha rau</i> <i>He piko, he taniwha</i> <i>He piko, he taniwha</i> <i>Waikato of many taniwha (chiefs)</i> <i>A taniwha (chief), at every Bend</i> <i>Indeed, a taniwha (chief), at every bend</i> <i>Tōku awa koiora</i> <i>Ko ngōna pikonga</i> <i>He kura tangihia nō te Mātaamuri</i> <i>My river of life</i> <i>Each curve</i> <i>More beautiful than the last</i>	

		tuna) in those times, right up to this present time. The tupuna Te Oro, originator of the hapū Ngāti Te Oro, was a grandson to Hauā, and he resided at Horotiu, on the banks of the Waikato River. Ngāti Hauā are infinitely connected to the awa through the renowned chief, Te Waharoa, and his warriors, who fought at the significant battle of Taumatawiwi, at Karāpiro, on the Waikato River. In the lull of battle Te Waharoa burnt his fallen warriors there, which is the derivation of the name Karāpiro, karā meaning rock and piro from the putrid smell of the burning bodies.
--	--	---

9.3 Ngāti Hauā Claims Settlement Act 2014

In accordance with section 36(2) of the Ngāti Hauā Claims Settlement Act 2014, this section sets out the relevant provisions of sections 31-35 and 37-38 in full.

31 Statutory acknowledgement by the Crown

The Crown acknowledges the statements of association for the statutory areas.

32 Purposes of statutory acknowledgement

The only purposes of the statutory acknowledgement are to—

- (a) require relevant consent authorities, the Environment Court, and Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga to have regard to the statutory acknowledgement, in accordance with sections 33 to 35; and*
- (b) require relevant consent authorities to record the statutory acknowledgement on statutory plans that relate to the statutory areas and to provide summaries of resource consent applications or copies of notices of applications to the trustees, in accordance with sections 36 and 37; and*
- (c) enable the trustees and any member of Ngāti Hauā to cite the statutory acknowledgement as evidence of the association of Ngāti Hauā with a statutory area, in accordance with section 38.*

33 Relevant consent authorities to have regard to statutory acknowledgement

- (1) This section applies in relation to an application for a resource consent for an activity within, adjacent to, or directly affecting a statutory area.*
- (2) On and from the effective date, a relevant consent authority must have regard to the statutory acknowledgement relating to the statutory area in deciding, under section 95E of the Resource Management Act 1991, whether the trustees are affected persons in relation to the activity.*
- (3) Subsection (2) does not limit the obligations of a relevant consent authority under the Resource Management Act 1991.*

34 Environment Court to have regard to statutory acknowledgement

- (1) This section applies to proceedings in the Environment Court in relation to an application for a resource consent for an activity within, adjacent to, or directly affecting a statutory area.*
- (2) On and from the effective date, the Environment Court must have regard to the statutory acknowledgement relating to the statutory area in deciding, under section 274 of the Resource Management Act 1991, whether the trustees are persons with an interest in the proceedings greater than that of the general public.*

- (3) Subsection (2) does not limit the obligations of the Environment Court under the Resource Management Act 1991.

35 Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga and Environment Court to have regard to statutory acknowledgement

- (1) This section applies to an application made under section 44, 56, or 61 of the Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga Act 2014 for an authority to undertake an activity that will or may modify or destroy an archaeological site within a statutory area.
- (2) On and from the effective date, Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga must have regard to the statutory acknowledgement relating to the statutory area in exercising its powers under section 48, 56, or 62 of the Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga Act 2014 in relation to the application.
- (3) On and from the effective date, the Environment Court must have regard to the statutory acknowledgement relating to the statutory area—
- (a) in determining whether the trustees are persons directly affected by the decision; and
 - (b) in determining, under section 59(1) or 64(1) of the Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga Act 2014, an appeal against a decision of Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga in relation to the application.
- (4) In this section, **archaeological site** has the meaning given in section 6 of the Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga Act 2014.

37 Provision of summary or notice to trustees

- (1) Each relevant consent authority must, for a period of 20 years on and from the effective date, provide the following to the trustees for each resource consent application for an activity within, adjacent to, or directly affecting a statutory area:
- (a) if the application is received by the consent authority, a summary of the application; or
 - (b) if notice of the application is served on the consent authority under section 145(10) of the Resource Management Act 1991, a copy of the notice.
- (2) A summary provided under subsection (1)(a) must be the same as would be given to an affected person by limited notification under section 95B of the Resource Management Act 1991 or as may be agreed between the trustees and the relevant consent authority.
- (3) The summary must be provided—
- (a) as soon as is reasonably practicable after the relevant consent authority receives the application; but
 - (b) before the relevant consent authority decides under section 95 of the Resource Management Act 1991 whether to notify the application.
- (4) A copy of a notice must be provided under subsection (1)(b) not later than 10 working days after the day on which the consent authority receives the notice.
- (5) The trustees may, by written notice to a relevant consent authority,—
- (a) waive the right to be provided with a summary or copy of a notice under this section; and
 - (b) state the scope of that waiver and the period it applies for.
- (6) This section does not affect the obligation of a relevant consent authority to decide,—
- (a) under section 95 of the Resource Management Act 1991, whether to notify an application;
 - (b) under section 95E of that Act, whether the trustees are affected persons in relation to an activity.

38 Use of statutory acknowledgement

- (1) The trustees and any member of Ngāti Hauā may, as evidence of the association of Ngāti Hauā with a statutory area, cite the statutory acknowledgement that relates to that area in submissions concerning activities within, adjacent to, or directly affecting the statutory area that are made to or before—
- (a) the relevant consent authorities; or

- (b) *the Environment Court; or*
- (c) *Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga; or*
- (d) *the Environmental Protection Authority or a board of inquiry under Part 6AA of the Resource Management Act 1991.*
- (2) *The content of a statement of association is not, by virtue of the statutory acknowledgement, binding as fact on—*
 - (a) *the bodies referred to in subsection (1); or*
 - (b) *parties to proceedings before those bodies; or*
 - (c) *any other person who is entitled to participate in those proceedings.*
- (3) *However, the bodies and persons specified in subsection (2) may take the statutory acknowledgement into account.*
- (4) *To avoid doubt,—*
 - (a) *neither the trustees nor members of Ngāti Hauā are precluded from stating that Ngāti Hauā has an association with a statutory area that is not described in the statutory acknowledgement; and*
 - (b) *the content and existence of the statutory acknowledgement do not limit any statement made.*

10 Statutory acknowledgement for Raukawa

In accordance with section 27 of the Raukawa Claims Settlement Act 2014, information is attached to this Regional Policy Statement recording the statutory acknowledgement that wholly or in part cover the statutory areas. This section provides a description of the statutory areas within Waikato Regional Council jurisdiction, statements of association and relevant provisions of sections 22-26, 28 and 29.

Section 34 of the Ruakawa Claims Settlement Act 2014 requires information relating to the geothermal resource be included in statutory plans. This information includes a description of the geothermal systems within Waikato Regional Council jurisdiction, statements of association and sections 30-33, 35 and 36.

10.1 Statutory areas

The following tables show the areas to which the statutory acknowledgement relates within Waikato Regional Council jurisdiction.

Statutory Area	Map Reference
Part Kaimai Mamaku Conservation Park	As shown coloured yellow on OTS-113-17
Part Pureora Conservation Park (being part of Pureora Forest Park)	As shown coloured yellow on OTS-113-21
Titiraupenga	As shown on OTS-113-31

Statutory Area	Map Reference
Arahiwi Scenic Reserve	As shown on OTS-113-22
Arapuni Scenic Reserve	As shown on OTS-113-04
Kaahu Scenic Reserve	s shown on OTS-113-06
Lake Arapuni	As shown on OTS-113-24
Lake Atiamuri	As shown on OTS-113-28
Lake Karapiro	As shown on OTS-113-30
Lake Maraetai	As shown on OTS-113-26
Part Lake Ohakuri	As shown coloured yellow on OTS-113-29
Lake Waipapa	As shown on OTS-113-25
Lake Whakamaru	As shown on OTS-113-27
Puniu River and its tributaries	As shown on OTS-113-19
Waihou River Marginal Strip	As shown on OTS-113-23
Waihou River and its tributaries	As shown on OTS-113-18

Waikato River and its tributaries	As shown on OTS-113-20
-----------------------------------	------------------------

Statutory Area	Map Reference
Te Kohera-Kawakawa Bay	As shown on OTS-113-35

10.2 Statements of association

In accordance with section 27 of the Raukawa Claims Settlement Act 2014, the following statements of association are included below:

Part Kaimai-Mamaku Conservation Park

The area known as the Kaimai-Mamaku Ranges (which falls within the conservation park of the same name) played a significant role in the establishment of the iwi of Raukawa. The Kaimai-Mamaku Ranges covers a large tract of land stretching from the Hauraki Golf in the north to the Mamaku Ranges in the south. The Raukawa association with the Kaimai-Mamaku Ranges extends from Te Wairere in the north through to the Mamaku forests in the south.

Raukawa have had an association to the Kaimai-Mamaku Ranges from the time of Tūrongo and Māhina-a-rangi through to the present day. When Māhina-a-rangi was with child, Tūrongo desired for his child to be born in his lands. Consequently, he returned to Rangiātea to prepare a home for his new bride and child. Māhina-a-rangi was to later follow. Whilst heavy with child, Māhina-a-rangi and her entourage journeyed from the east coast to be with Tūrongo. Raukawa tradition notes that her journey took her by way of Wairoa, Huirau, Ruatahuna, Te Whaiti, Waitapu and Rotorua, then onwards to the Kaimai Ranges where she gave birth to her child. The boy was named Raukawa in commemoration of the perfume she wore to attract her husband, Tūrongo. The birthplace of Raukawa is found in the modern-day Kaimai-Mamaku Conservation Park and is known as Whenua ā-kura.

Ngāti Āhuru, a hapū of Raukawa, credits the naming of the Kaimai Range to the ancestors, Āhuru and his brother. As grown men, the two brothers came by way of Mount Kakaramea to Rotorua and then on to the Kaimai Ranges. Here the two men were hungry so Āhuru gathered berries. Upon his return to his brother, he stretched forth his hands and offered the food to him saying 'Kaimai' which translates as 'Let us eat'.

Throughout the generations, hapū of Raukawa have occupied and moved all around the area. There were pā and settlement sites such as Weraroa, Kaitorenuī, Kuranui and Te Rake, as well as urupā (burial site) at Hengaroa, Kotare and Ngamotu and many other sites throughout the ranges. Bird snaring places such as Nga-Manu-a-Tamarau and Kakahuiti are also located within the ranges and considered to be sites of significance to the hapū of Ngāti Mōtai. Further, the Mangatotara and Āhuru streams supplied pātuna (eels) as well as the water supply for the local whānau and hapū.

In the Wairere area, a significant battle was fought between Raukawa and another iwi in the 1830s resulting in the death of a daughter of a leader of the other iwi. Following this fight and a subsequent battle, peace was arranged between the iwi with a boundary being established at Te Wairere with the agreement of both iwi.

During times of war the Kaimai-Mamaku Ranges provided a safe haven for Raukawa. Many Raukawa pā sites were established as hideouts in the Kaimai Ranges.

Raukawa hapū also maintained a strong association with the Mamaku Forest Plateau. Within the Mamaku Plateau stands the maunga, Hautere which was named after the Raukawa ancestress born five generations after Raukawa. Hautere is the ancestral mountain of the Ngāti Āhuru and is well remembered in Raukawa oral tradition. According to Raukawa kaumātua, Hautere maunga provided the people with an

abundance of food and in times of war, was used to trap unsuspecting enemy in deep pits found scattered around the maunga.

Pātetere was a brother of Hautere and is the ancestor that the area Te Kaokaoroa-o-Pātetere was named after. The tūpuna Pātetere and Hautere are well remembered today in song, pepehā and are depicted in the carvings that adorn the meeting house at Ngātira marae.

At the foot of the Paepae Whakarei Hills is the source of the Waihou River that wends its way out to the Hauraki Gulf. The Waihou River is an important feature to many Raukawa hapū who relied upon the clear fresh waters. The source is called 'Te Matapuna o Waihou' and is found near the settlement of Hamaria. In Raukawa traditions, King Tāwhiao would often visit the settlement at Hamaria. Raukawa kaumātua today still recall hunting for pig as they made their way through Hamaria, Puke Manuka, Takahua and Mangatapu.

The Mamaku plateau is unique in terms of its geological history and formation and thus it has provided the hapū of Raukawa with a unique and very special garden and food basket. The waterways were a highway for hapū of Raukawa as trading routes with other iwi for a long period of time. Along the banks of the waterways were strategically placed defendable pā sites such as Takahua, Tikitiki, Kakahuiri and Hiwiroa.

The healing waters of the Opuiake, Kahatahi and Oraka are also sites of significance to Raukawa. In terms of the geological history of the plateau, the underground water supply is in its purest of form, Rhyolite (proven to be over 1000 years old at Te Waihou spring), and feeds the ground waterways such as the Pokaiwhenua, Whakauru, Matarawa, Oraka, Waimakariri and Mangatapu rivers.

Today, the Kaimai-Mamaku Ranges have deep associations for a number of Raukawa hapū including Ngāti Mōtai, Ngāti Āhuru, Ngāti Mahana, Ngāti Te Apunga, Ngāti Tukorehe, Ngāti Kirihihi and Ngāti Wehiwehi. There are five Raukawa affiliated marae that continue to maintain a presence in the Kaimai-Mamaku Ranges - Ūkaipō, Rengarenga, Te Omeka, Tangata and Ngatira. Many traditional tracks throughout the ranges continued to be used by descendants of Raukawa today and the conservation park is still a rich source of plants for food and medicine.

Te Kohera - Kawakawa Bay.

Raukawa have a long association to Kawakawa Bay stemming back to the time of the grandchildren of Raukawa. Te Kohera resided at Kawakawa. The son of Te Kohera, Pakaketaiari, also lived at Kawakawa. Pakaketaiari's eldest child was Te Rangipumamao who lived at Kawakawa and as an adult was tragically killed by a falling tree there. Pakaketaiari's fourth child, Ngamotu, and his descendants, also lived at Kawakawa and other pā.

The Raukawa chief, Hitiri Te Paerata, a descendant of Ngamotu, was also born in a cave at Kawakawa.

Part Pureora Conservation Park

The Pureora Conservation Park covers a considerable area within the south-western portion of the Raukawa rohe and includes many areas and sites that are highly revered by Raukawa. The Pureora Conservation Park stretches across parts of a number of land blocks. These blocks include Maraeroa, Tihoi, Pouakani, Wharepuhunga and Rangitoto.

The maunga, Pureora, is in itself an iconic site of significance for Raukawa. Its distinctive pyramidal shape is covered in forests. In Raukawa tradition, Pureora was named by Rakatāura, the tohunga of the Tainui waka and ancestor of Raukawa. Following his arrival in Aotearoa, Rakatāura and his wife Kahukeke, the daughter of Hoturoa, travelled into the central North Island naming places that they came upon. It

was at Wharepūhunga, Kahukeke fell ill and consequently Rakatāura built a house for her to rest. Rakatāura climbed a mountain where he performed a purification ritual in order to heal his wife. He was successful and his wife recovered at Wharepūhunga. He named the mountain that he prayed on Te Pureora-o-Kahu, in recognition of that event. Te Whakakākahō o Kahukeke was also named by Rakatāura as the collection site of sticks that were used to build the whare (hut/house) that Kahukeke laid in while she was recuperating from her illness. Unfortunately, Kahukeke did not fully recover from her illness and her journey was short lived. Stricken by the death of his beloved wife, Rakatāura named the place in memorial of her death, Puke o Kahu.

Raukawa traditions state that Rakatāura also deposited at Pureora one of the 'mauri stones' brought from Hawaiki to Aotearoa. This stone was a talisman used to attract birds into an area. From that day forward, Pureora became one of several famed bird snaring areas used by Raukawa hapū to hunt Kēreru and other native birds.

Pureora was a valuable source of food for Raukawa hapū, particularly the wide variety of birds and other plant life including 'perei', similar to kumara but tubular in appearance. According to Raukawa tradition, a great feast was held in commemoration of the marriage between Te Rangipumaomao and a woman from a neighbouring iwi.

The food for this wedding was gathered from Pureora and Kaiperei.

Pureora also contains numerous waterways and mahinga kai of significance to Raukawa. The waterways of Huruhurumāku were so named due to the tupuna, Hā dropping his taiaha in the waters and the feathers that adorned the taiaha getting wet. Other waterways such as Kākāhō, Pūrākaukerea and the Puketapu streams were sources for Raukawa of food such as tuna (eels) and koura (freshwater crayfish) as well as the daily water supply. The waterways were also used for healing.

Pureora is also renowned for having an abundant supply of poaka (pigs). According to some kaumātua, this area was vastly hunted to supply meat to many of the pā in the Te Pae-o-Raukawa rohe (area). Large mahingā kai (gardens) were grown around the pā to help supply food for the people and their manuwhiri (visitors), especially when the occasion was for a tangihanga (funeral).

Many hapū were associated with the Pureora area including Ngāti Te Kohera, Ngāti Wairangi and Ngāti Hā. There are also many sites associated with specific hapū of Raukawa within the Pureora area. According to oral traditions of Ngāti Te Kohera, it was at the settlement and defensive pā of Tutakamoana that the chief, Te Hoariri, was renamed Te Paerata due to his gallant achievements in battle. Te Paerata was to later lead the successful defence of Tutakamoana against marauding forces.

The conservation park also falls within part of the Tīhoi block. In that area, Raukawa history records that following the murder of Te Atainutai, his grandson sought revenge. Consequently, he joined with Whitipatoto of Raukawa from Wharepūhunga and together they marched on the iwi that had killed Te Atainutai. As a result of his offensive march through the Pureora forest, Whitipatoto named the area now known as Tīhoi.

By the time Christianity came into the Pureora region in the nineteenth century, Raukawa hapū continued to reside upon lands around Pureora including Puketoro, a kāinga and bird snaring place, Putakoura, a kāinga and potato plantation and Puketapu where food was stored in a cave. Te Ahiahi-a-te-maraeua, a lagoon and kainga situated near Pureora, was a further bird snaring place used by Raukawa.

Titiraupenga

The maunga, Titiraupenga, is an iconic part of the Raukawa landscape. Its uniquely distinctive shape dominates the surrounding scenery.

Titiraupenga was a famed bird mountain with large stocks of kereru, kākā and other native birds. During the early nineteenth century, the renowned leader, Te Momo of Ngāti Te Kohera, conducted bird snaring rituals at Titiraupenga and according to tradition, a whare wānanga was also established at Titiraupenga. In a pātere composed by Ngawaero, she tells the story of the rich and abundant birdlife of Titiraupenga and makes reference to Te Momo erecting the pou known as Papa o Te Raro a talisman he used to attract the birdlife.

There were many Raukawa kainga at Titiraupenga including Te Kākāho and Arataki and kokowai caves above Waione.

Ngāti Hā, a hapū of Raukawa (also sometimes referred to under the collective name, Te Tini a Parekāwa in the Native Land Courts), populated the area around Titiraupenga together with other Raukawa hapū, namely Ngāti Moekino, Ngāti Whāita and Ngāti Wairangi-Parewhete.

To the side of Titiraupenga was the large Raukawa settlement of Kaiwhā. For many Raukawa hapū today, Titiraupenga is recognised as their ancestral mountain and is visible from Raukawa marae.

Arahiwi Scenic Reserve

Raukawa have a long association with the Pātetere area and the resources within the Arahiwi Scenic reserve.

The region became known as Te Kaokaoroa-o-Pātetere, literally meaning the long outstretched armpit of Pātetere. Pātetere was a fifth generation descendant of Raukawa.

The descendants of Raukawa continued to live in the Pātetere region. The Arahiwi Scenic Reserve is within the rohe of the hapū of Ngāti Ahuru, a Raukawa hapū, who built a pā nearby including the ancient pā at Hamaria and Takahua.

The Arahiwi Scenic Reserve has been used by the people of the Raukawa marae at Ngātira and Whakaaratamaiti.

Arapuni Scenic Reserve

The Arapuni Scenic Reserve lies within an important bird snaring area for Raukawa. Located on the banks of the Waikato River, the area also enabled easy access to the Waikato Awa and provided for the physical and spiritual sustenance of the Raukawa people.

The Raukawa ancestor, Tehe, a fourth generation descendant of Wairangi, built his pā at Te Tuki and settled the area. South of Te Tuki was the ancient pā, Kotaramu that was populated by the descendants of Takihiku who travelled to Te Tuki to snare birds.

Kaahu Scenic Reserve

Raukawa have a long association to the area of the Kaahu Scenic Reserve dating back to the arrival of the Tainui waka.

Following his arrival in Aotearoa, Rakatāura, tohunga of the Tainui waka and ancestor of Raukawa, and his wife Kahukeke travelled inland from Kāwhia into the central North Island naming places that they came upon. When they arrived in Whakamaru, Rakatāura and Kahukeke settled in the area and built an ancient shelter at Kaahu mountain. Rakatāura named the mountain, Kaahu, in commemoration of his wife.

Raukawa hapū continued to occupy the area including Ngāti Whāita, Ngāti Wairangi, Ngāti Upokoiti, Ngāti Moekino and Ngāti Hā. The area provided the hapū with access to the Waikato Awa and the resources that they could draw from its waters.

Waihou River Marginal Strip

Located on the banks of the Waihou Awa, Raukawa have a long association to area within vicinity of the Waihou marginal strip. The Waihou River supplied water and resources to four Raukawa marae namely Ngātira, Whakaaratamaiti, Tapapa and Ruapeka marae, and the river was important to hapū of Raukawa due to its proximity to the Waihou Springs (Blue Springs), the waters of which flow into the Waihou River. The spring was an important resource for the Raukawa hapū of Ngāti Āhuru, Ngāti Tukorehe, Ngāti Te Rangi and others as it was located centrally between the marae and access to the spring and the river was shared.

Waikato, Waihou and Pūniu Awa and Tributaries

The Waikato, Waihou and Pūniu Awa and tributaries are the veins carrying the lifeblood of Papatūānuku. If events or activities affect the awa, they in turn affect Papatūānuku. The awa hold mana in their own right (spiritual authority and power, or a right to exist in a pristine state for intrinsic reasons) and its life essence or life force is the mauri of the awa. Each awa carries the life force for the Raukawa people; that which affects the awa, affects the people.

The Raukawa association to the Waikato, Waihou and Pūniu Awa stems back to the time of the arrival of the Tainui waka to Aotearoa. The Tainui ancestors, Rakatāura and Kahukeke were the first people to settle in the western interior of the central North Island and were responsible for naming significant landmarks.

Waikato Awa and Tributaries

Raukawa have a special relationship with the Waikato Awa and its tributaries. This includes the seven hydro lakes being Karapiro, Arapuni, Waipapa, Maraetai, Whakamaru, Atiamuri and Ohakuri.

Thirteen generations after the arrival of the Tainui ancestors, Rakatāura and Kahukeke, Raukawa established their interests in the Waikato Awa from the Huka Falls to Tiki o Ihingarangi. Since that time Raukawa hapū have maintained their ahikāroa.

For over 600 years, Raukawa have held that the mauri of the Waikato Awa and the mauri of Raukawa are inextricably linked. The Waikato Awa is a taonga to Raukawa. It is a whole and indivisible entity that flows from Ruapehu to Te Puaha o Waikato (the mouth) and includes its water, banks, beds (and all minerals under them), and its streams, waterways, tributaries, lakes, aquatic life, vegetation, flood plains, wetlands, islands, springs, water column, geothermal aspects, airspace and substratum as well as its metaphysical elements.

Within the region which the awa flows, the relationship that Raukawa have with the awa is paramount. It includes the enhancement of tribal mana but also gives rise to the responsibilities to protect the awa, its mana and mauri. These responsibilities are woven within the customary assertion of mana whakahaere, which is encompassed within long established kawa and tikanga.

Raukawa continue to exercise customary rights and kaitiakitanga in relation to the Waikato Awa within the Raukawa rohe. In accordance with the principles of ahikāroa, Raukawa marae, hapū and whānau still reside next to and live every day with the Waikato Awa. The awa has provided a source of spiritual, cultural, social and physical sustenance for the Raukawa people and, in turn, the role of kaitiaki embraces respect and an inter-generational responsibility.

Waihou River

Raukawa have an association with the Waihou Awa and its tributaries, and in particular, the source of the Waihou and the Waihou Springs. Raukawa acknowledge that other iwi share interests in parts of the Waihou River and its tributaries.

Thirteen generations after the arrival of the Tainui ancestors, Rakatāura and Kahukeke, the ancestor, Raukawa, was born and spent his first days in the region of the Waihou Awa. The grandchildren of Raukawa returned to this region to defeat another iwi. Since that time Raukawa hapū have maintained their ahikāroa.

For over 600 years, Raukawa have held that the mauri of the Waihou Awa and the mauri of Raukawa are inextricably linked. The Waihou Awa is a taonga to Raukawa. It is a whole and indivisible entity that flows from the punawai (source) of the Waihou to the Blue Springs near Putaruru to Te Puaha o Waihou (the mouth) and includes its water, banks, beds (and all minerals under them), and its streams, waterways, tributaries, lakes, aquatic life, vegetation, flood plains, wetlands, islands, springs, water column, geothermal aspects, airspace and substratum as well as its metaphysical elements.

As tāngata whenua within a region which the awa flows, the relationship that Raukawa have with the awa is paramount. It includes the enhancement of tribal mana but also gives rise to the responsibilities to protect the awa, its mana and mauri. These responsibilities are woven within the customary assertion of mana whakahaere, which is encompassed within long established kawa and tikanga.

Raukawa continue to exercise customary rights and assert the rights and responsibilities of kaitiakitanga in relation to the Waihou Awa within the Raukawa rohe. The awa has provided a source of spiritual, cultural, social and physical sustenance for the Raukawa people and, in turn, the role of kaitiaki embraces respect and an inter-generational responsibility. Raukawa consider the Waihou Awa to be a boundary marker remembered in the pepeha ‘Mai te Wairere ki Maungatautari’

In accordance with the principles of ahikāroa, many Raukawa marae and hapū were located near the Waihou Awa. To the west of the Waihou Springs stand the Ngāti Ahuru marae of Ngātira and Whakaaratamaiti. Also in this area are the remnants of ancient marae and wahi tapu, including Hamareha which is also known as Hamaria where the source of the Waihou Awa is found. To the east of the Waihou Awa stand the Ngāti Tūkorehe and Ngāti Te Rangi marae of Ruapeka and Tāpapa, Ūkaipō marae of Ngāti Kirihihi and Ngāti Wehiwehi and Tangata marae. Also in this area once stood the Ngāti Tūkorehe pā of Tokopikowhakahau. To the south of the Waihou stands the Ngāti Mōtai and Ngāti Te Apunga marae of Paparaamu. Also in this area is the old pā of Wairereaurangi and an eel weir called Ruatu, which was used by the hapū of Ngāti Mōtai, Ngāti Tūkorehe, and Ngāti Kirihihi.

There are also particular sites of significance associated with the Waihou Awa that are of inestimable importance to Raukawa people. The swamp, Te Mana-o-Kahu, which forms part of the Waihou Awa, was named by Rakatāura following the death of his wife, Kahukeke. One of the four famous niu pole, Te Niu o Tuwharakarara, is located to the north of the Waihou Springs in a village sustained by the spring waters. The Mangaowheo stream, a tributary of the Waihou, includes the Ruataupuku falls, and the eel weir at Kopuaroa. At Te Maire and Iwituaroa on the Waihou River, there were more eel weirs. Other tributaries of the Waihou River including the streams of Waiteariki and Manganui also supplied hapū with tuna (eels) and koura (freshwater crayfish) as well as their daily drinking water supply.

Pūniu River

Raukawa have a special relationship with the Pūniu Awa and its tributaries, particularly that part of the awa located in the Wharepūhunga Block. This includes the source of the Pūniu and tributaries such as Owairaka.

The history of the Tainui ancestors, Rakatāura and Kahukeke in the Wharepūhunga region, where the Pūniu Awa flows, is particularly rich. It was in this region that Kahukeke fell ill. Rakataura consequently built a house for her to rest in and climbed a mountain where he performed a purification ritual to heal her. He was successful and

his wife recovered. From this time forward, this region has been known as Wharepūhunga.

Thirteen generations later, Raukawa returned to this region and defeated another iwi. Since that time Raukawa hapū have maintained their ahikāroa. In particular, Whakatere, a son of Raukawa, had numerous descendants settle on the lands around the Pūniu at Wharepūhunga. Significant pā were built near the river, including Puketarata, Totorewa, Pataokatoka, Tangimanaia and Pamotumotu.

For over 600 years, Raukawa have held that the mauri of the Pūniu Awa and the mauri of Raukawa are inextricably linked. The Pūniu Awa is a taonga to Raukawa. It is a whole and indivisible entity that flows from the punawai (source) of the Pūniu to Te Puaha o Pūniu (the mouth) and includes its water, banks, beds (and all minerals under them), and its streams, waterways, tributaries, lakes, aquatic life, vegetation, flood plains, wetlands, islands, springs, water column, geothermal aspects, airspace and substratum as well as its metaphysical elements.

As tāngata whenua within a region which the awa flows, the relationship that Raukawa have with the awa is paramount. It includes the enhancement of tribal mana but also gives rise to the responsibilities to protect the awa, its mana and mauri. These responsibilities are woven within the customary assertion of mana whakahaere, which is encompassed within long established kawa and tikanga.

Raukawa continue to exercise customary rights and the responsibilities of kaitiakitanga in relation to the Pūniu Awa within the Raukawa rohe. The awa has provided a source of spiritual, cultural, social, and physical sustenance for the Raukawa people, and in turn, the role of kaitiaki embraces respect and an inter-generational responsibility.

In accordance with the principles of ahikāroa, many Raukawa marae and hapū are still located near the Pūniu Awa, including the Ngāti Puehutore marae of Whakamārama, the Ngāti Takihiku marae of Rāwhitiroa which sits at the confluence of the Owairaka stream and Pūniu Awa, the Ngāti Kiriupokoiti marae of Aotearoa and the Ngāti Werakoko marae of Parawera.

The Pūniu Awa provided important physical and spiritual sustenance to particular sites that are of inestimable importance to the Raukawa iwi:

- Te Horanga pā is located south of Kihikihi on the north bank of the Pūniu Awa. This site is significant as a pā taken by Raukawa in battle.
- Whakapirimata pā is located on the north bank of the Pūniu Awa near St Leger Road and not far from Te Horanga. This pā was built by Whāita after Raukawa settled in the area.
- Pane-o-Whaita is located on the north bank of the Pūniu Awa near Whakapirimata pā. This is where Whāita was buried.
- Several significant ancient pā of Ngāti Whakatere drew from/relied on the Pūniu Awa, including Puketarata (found to the north of the Mangaorongo Stream and south of Kakepuku), Totorewa (near the confluence of the Waipa River and Mangaorongo Stream), Patokatoka (near Mihimihi further up the Mangarongo Stream) and Tangimania and Pamotumotu (on a ridge west of the Mangatutu Stream).
- The pā site at Orakau is located near the Pūniu Awa. Orakau is a very significant site for Raukawa as this is where Raukawa lost many of their leading chiefs in the war with the Crown forces in 1864. The battle of Orakau is still commemorated by Raukawa iwi today.

Waikato Awa Hydro Lakes

The Raukawa association to the Waikato Awa hydro lakes is based on their association with the awa itself. This stems back to the time of the arrival of the Tainui ancestors, Rakatāura and Kahukeke who were the first people to settle in the western interior of

the central North Island and were responsible for naming significant landmarks. Subsequent Raukawa descendants took up occupation beside the Waikato Awa and Raukawa hapū continue to maintain their ahikaroa in the area that is now the Waikato hydro lakes.

When the Waikato Awa was raised during the twentieth century for hydro power generation, the resultant flooding spread across land that was important to Raukawa and submerged important historical and cultural sites. The Raukawa association with the areas that have subsequently become hydro lakes is detailed below.

Raukawa has a very long association with the land now on the bed of the seven hydro lakes within the Raukawa rohe (being Karapiro, Arapuni, Waipapa, Maraetai, Whakamaru, Atiamuri and Ohakuri). This association stems back to the time of the arrival of the Tainui waka to Aotearoa.

Lake Karapiro

Following the birth of Raukawa, Māhina-a-rangi continued her journey until she arrived at the Waikato Awa. At the time, it would have been too difficult to cross the river at Arapuni as the rapids were located there. Instead at a place now known as Horahora, (near present day Karapiro), Māhina-a-rangi crossed the river and continued on her journey to her husband. Horahora was named after the action of Māhina-a-rangi laying out the wet clothes of her baby to dry.

Three generations after Tūrongo and Māhina-a-rangi, the first grandchild of Raukawa was born. His name was Te Ihingarangi and he was the eldest son of Rereahu, the eldest son of Raukawa. Problems arose between Te Ihingarangi and his younger brother Maniapoto. During the ensuing fight, Maniapoto deposed his elder brother and Te Ihingarangi moved from his homeland and built a pā at Karapiro. According to Raukawa tradition, Karapiro was the stronghold of Te Ihingarangi.

The stretch of water at Karapiro was known in ancient times as Horotiu.

Before the dam was built, the awa at Karapiro supplied the people of Raukawa with tuna (eels), koura (freshwater crayfish) and kokopu (freshwater fish). It was a source of physical and spiritual wellbeing.

The Raukawa hapū of Ngāt Huri, Ngāti Tukorehe, Ngāti Mōtai, and Ngāti Te Apunga maintain a presence at Karapiro. These hapū built marae within the area and cultivated the lands.

Lake Arapuni

A number of Raukawa hapū lived in the Arapuni area including Ngāti Tamatehura, Ngāti Kapu, Ngāti Ngārongo, Ngāti Huri, Ngāti Hineone, and Ngāti Mutu. These hapū had pā, urupā, and cultivations in this area. In terms of Ngāti Mutu, their eponymous ancestor was a fifth generation descendant from Raukawa and it is said he met his untimely death when he drowned in the Arapuni rapids.

Arapuni was also a well known spot for eel fishing despite the presence of tumultuous rapids. Some of the names of these sites along the Arapuni stretch of the river are Te Takangaongaoko a kainga belonging to Ngāti Tukorehe, Huihuitaha stream (a eel source for many hapū), Te Ana Kaitangata, Mangare, Puketotara, Pawaiti and Hapenui. Hapenui was one of the first pā to fall to the combined forces of Whāita, Tamatehura, Wairangi, Upokoiti and Pipito. These sites are regarded as highly significant to the many hapū of Raukawa.

Also near Arapuni is the ancient pā site of Piraunui (previously known as Motu Kākāpō). Piraunui was a pā taken from another iwi by the Raukawa forces led by Whāita. During the attack, because speed was of the essence, Raukawa threw their

opponents from the cliff top and left the bodies of their enemy to rot at the escarpment floor below, hence the name Piraunui.

In the early 1800s, some Raukawa hapū in the Maungatautari area migrated to Kāpiti while others like Ngāti Huri remained on the lands at Arapuni and do so today. The marae at Te Mātiti, although no longer used, still remains. The name of the whare was Te Maioha o Maihi Te Ngaru.

At Pikitū stands the Ngāti Huri marae. The name of the wharenui is Huri in commemoration of their eponymous ancestor. The people from Pikitū marae continue to interact with the Waikato Awa at Arapuni. They were able to excavate from the lake bed, artefacts from a sunken village. These artefacts included an old waka that is now safely housed in a whare taonga on the marae.

Lake Waipapa

Waipapa is a kāinga site and was one of the traditional Raukawa boundary markers. The hapū of Ngāti Wairangi, Ngāti Moe, Ngāti Parekawa, and Ngāti Te Kohera lived in the area. They had cultivations, and set eel pā in the river. East of Waipapa are the swamps Waikura and Hamotea where Raukawa hapū collected raupō for roofing in shelters. Waipapa is also particularly significant as it is the location at which the taniwha, Rangikakake resides.

Te Atainutai, the son of the conqueror, Upokoiti settled the area at Waipapa.

Today the hapū of Ngāti Whāita, Ngāti Wairangi, Ngāti Poroaha and Ngāti Hā maintain a presence in the Waipapa area. The Ngāti Whāita pā at Ongaroto is located approximately 26km east of Waipapa dam.

Lake Maraetai

The hapū that descended from Upokoiti, Wairangi and Whāita, who conquered the area, lived within the Maraetai area, namely, Ngāti Whāita, Ngāti Poroaha (who are also identified as Ngāti Poroahi). The tupuna, Poroaha is a descendant of Rereahu, the first born child of Raukawa. His daughter, Te Akamorunga married the tupuna, Huri who descends from Whakatere, the second child of Raukawa.

Ngāti Whāita had cultivations on the land that is now Lake Maraetai at Wairere, Opukera, Motuhauhi, Taiamoe and Te Ruahoko. There was also a pā called Whakaheketaka, this is also where the dead were buried.

Lake Whakamaru

The hapū that lived in the Whakamaru area of the Waikato Awa were Ngāti Moekino, Ngāti Whāita and Ngāti Wairangi-Parewhete.

Whakamaru is a shortening of the name Te Whakamarumarutanga o Kahukeke. This was named by the ancestor Rakatāura, for his wife Kahukeke (the daughter of Hoturoa, chief of the Tainui waka) as this was where he built her a shelter in which she could continue her excellent and well known work with flax and kākāho.

There were many Raukawa kāinga near and at Whakamaru including Te Kākāho and Arataki and kokowai caves above Waione. Stretching across the Waikato Awa was the Ngāti Whāita/Ngāti Wairangi stronghold of Waimahana. This area was submerged by the creation of Lake Whakamaru.

When the dam was constructed in 1949 the people of Ongaroto pā were forced to quickly remove the bones of ancient tūpuna from their urupā. Not all the bones could be found.

Lake Atiamuri

Many hapū, including Ngāti Whāita, Ngāti Wairangi, Ngāti Moekino and Ngāti Hā maintained a presence in the Atiamuri area. These hapū built marae and cultivated the lands.

The river gave sustenance to the pā on the ancestral Raukawa maunga (mountain) Pohaturoa, which is located at Atiamuri. It was at Pohaturoa that Raukawa finally defeated another iwi and on top of Pohaturoa, the hapū Ngāti Whāita and later Ngāti Kikopiri occupied a pā. Tūpuna (ancestors) were also buried on Pohaturoa.

Situated on the right bank of the Waikato Awa, was a settlement of the hapū Ngāti Whāita and Ngāti Wairangi known as Niho-o-te-Kiore. A pā was built at Niho-o-te-Kiore belonging to Rongonui (the grandfather of Hitiri Te Paerata). Aniwaniwa was also a settlement on the banks of the Waikato in the Atiamuri area that was occupied by Ngāti Wairangi, Ngāti Te Kohera and Ngāti Whāita. As well, Waiaute was a cultivation in the Atiamuri area belonging to the hapū Ngāti Pakau and Ngāti Wairangi.

The Ngāti Whāita pā at Ongaroto is situated approximately 5 kilometres west of Atiamuri dam. It is the only pā still standing within the area. Another marae, Rongopai, was also built at Ongaroto but it no longer exists today. The people of Ongaroto pā continue to fish and recreationally use Atiamuri for swimming and for the collection of koura. Many Raukawa continue to live in Atiamuri village today.

Lake Ohakuri

Lake Ohakuri was formed between 1956 and 1961 over parts of the Tatua West and East blocks, Tutukau lands, Tauri block, and the Rotomahana-Parekarangi block. Many Raukawa hapū built marae within the area and cultivated the lands and Rautawhiri, Ohakuri, and Taewhanga were of particular significance. Hitiri Te Paerata, a leading Raukawa chief, had a kāinga at Ohakuri on the Tatua West block near the present day Ohakuri dam. Ohakuri was also a source of food for the hapū, especially tuna and koura. Today, Raukawa people hunt in the bush around Ohakuri Lake, fish and recreationally use the lake for camping and swimming.

Statement of association for Te Kohera - Kawakawa Bay

Raukawa have a long association to Te Kohera - Kawakawa Bay and the surrounding area stemming back to the time when the grandchildren of Raukawa drew resources from the bay. In capturing the lands, Raukawa fought five key battles. These battles were in retaliation to offences against Raukawa committed by other iwi. It was as a result of the death of Te Atainutai and a subsequent battle between Raukawa and a neighbouring iwi, that Raukawa ancestors continued to occupy the lands at Kawakawa.

The Raukawa ancestor, Te Kohera, resided at Kawakawa. The son of Te Kohera, Pakaketaiari, also lived at Kawakawa. The eldest child of Pakaketaiari was Te Rangipumamao who lived at Kawakawa and as an adult was tragically killed by a falling tree there. The fourth child of Pakaketaiari, Ngamotu also lived at Kawakawa and his subsequent descendants continued to occupy Kawakawa and other pā including Tutakamoana, Te Korae, Poutangotango and other places. Today, the whare tūpuna at Mokai Marae is named Pakaketaiari and Ngāti Te Kohera is a well known hapū of the northern Taupō region.

The Raukawa chief, Hitiri Te Paerata, a descendant of Ngamotu, was also born in a cave at Kawakawa.

10.3 Raukawa Claims Settlement Act 2014

In accordance with section 27 of the Raukawa Claims Settlement Act 2014, this section sets out the relevant provisions of sections 22-26, 28 and 29 in full.

22 Statutory acknowledgement by the Crown The Crown acknowledges—

- (a) *the statements of association for the statutory areas described in Parts 1 and 2 of Schedule 1; and*
- (b) *the statement of association for Te Kohera-Kawakawa Bay statutory area arising through the tupuna Te Kohera.*

23 Purposes of statutory acknowledgement

The only purposes of the statutory acknowledgement are to—

- (a) *require relevant consent authorities, the Environment Court, and Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga to have regard to the statutory acknowledgement, in accordance with sections 24 to 26; and*
- (b) *require relevant consent authorities to record the statutory acknowledgement on statutory plans that relate to the statutory areas and to provide summaries of resource consent applications or copies of notices of applications to the trustees, in accordance with sections 27 and 28; and*
- (c) *enable the trustees and any member of Raukawa to cite the statutory acknowledgement as evidence of the association of Raukawa with a statutory area, in accordance with section 29.*

24 Relevant consent authorities to have regard to statutory acknowledgement

- (1) *This section applies in relation to an application for a resource consent for an activity within, adjacent to, or directly affecting a statutory area.*
- (2) *On and from the effective date, a relevant consent authority must have regard to the statutory acknowledgement relating to the statutory area in deciding, under section 95E of the Resource Management Act 1991, whether the trustees are affected persons in relation to the activity.*
- (3) *Subsection (2) does not limit the obligations of a relevant consent authority under the Resource Management Act 1991.*

25 Environment Court to have regard to statutory acknowledgement

- (1) *This section applies to proceedings in the Environment Court in relation to an application for a resource consent for an activity within, adjacent to, or directly affecting a statutory area.*
- (2) *On and from the effective date, the Environment Court must have regard to the statutory acknowledgement relating to the statutory area in deciding, under section 274 of the Resource Management Act 1991, whether the trustees are persons with an interest in the proceedings greater than that of the general public.*
- (3) *Subsection (2) does not limit the obligations of the Environment Court under the Resource Management Act 1991.*

26 Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga and Environment Court to have regard to statutory acknowledgement

- (1) *If, on or after the effective date, an application is made under section 44, 56, or 61 of the Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga Act 2014 for an authority to undertake an activity that will or may modify or destroy an archaeological site within a statutory area,—*
 - (a) *Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga, in exercising its powers under section 48, 56, or 62 of that Act in relation to the application, must have regard to the statutory acknowledgement relating to the statutory area; and*
 - (b) *the Environment Court, in determining under section 59(1) or 64(1) of that Act any appeal against a decision of Heritage New Zealand Pouhere*

Taonga in relation to the application, must have regard to the statutory acknowledgement relating to the statutory area, including in making a determination as to whether the trustees are persons directly affected by the decision.

- (2) *In this section, **archaeological site** has the meaning given in section 6 of the Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga Act 2014.*

28 Provision of summary or notice to trustees

- (1) *Each relevant consent authority must, for a period of 20 years on and from the effective date, provide the following to the trustees for each resource consent application for an activity within, adjacent to, or directly affecting a statutory area:*
- (a) *if the application is received by the consent authority, a summary of the application; or*
 - (b) *if notice of the application is served on the consent authority under section 145(10) of the Resource Management Act 1991, a copy of the notice.*
- (2) *A summary provided under subsection (1)(a) must be the same as would be given to an affected person by limited notification under section 95B of the Resource Management Act 1991 or as may be agreed between the trustees and the relevant consent authority.*
- (3) *The summary must be provided—*
- (a) *as soon as is reasonably practicable after the relevant consent authority receives the application; but*
 - (b) *before the relevant consent authority decides under section 95 of the Resource Management Act 1991 whether to notify the application.*
- (4) *A copy of a notice must be provided under subsection (1)(b) not later than 10 working days after the day on which the consent authority receives the notice.*
- (5) *The trustees may, by written notice to a relevant consent authority,—*
- (a) *waive the right to be provided with a summary or copy of a notice under this section; and*
 - (b) *state the scope of that waiver and the period it applies for.*
- (6) *This section does not affect the obligation of a relevant consent authority to decide,—*
- (a) *under section 95 of the Resource Management Act 1991, whether to notify an application;*
 - (b) *under section 95E of that Act, whether the trustees are affected persons in relation to an activity.*

29 Use of statutory acknowledgement

- (1) *The trustees and any member of Raukawa may, as evidence of the association of Raukawa with a statutory area, cite the statutory acknowledgement that relates to that area in submissions concerning activities within, adjacent to, or directly affecting the statutory area that are made to or before—*
- (a) *the relevant consent authorities; or*
 - (b) *the Environment Court; or*
 - (c) *Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga; or*
 - (d) *the Environmental Protection Authority or a board of inquiry under Part 6AA of the Resource Management Act 1991.*
- (2) *The content of a statement of association is not, by virtue of the statutory acknowledgement, binding as fact on—*
- (a) *the bodies referred to in subsection (1); or*
 - (b) *parties to proceedings before those bodies; or*

- (c) *any other person who is entitled to participate in those proceedings.*
- (3) *However, the bodies and persons specified in subsection (2) may take the statutory acknowledgement into account.*
- (4) *To avoid doubt,—*
- (a) *neither the trustees nor members of Raukawa are precluded from stating that Raukawa has an association with a statutory area that is not described in the statutory acknowledgement; and*
- (b) *the content and existence of the statutory acknowledgement do not limit any statement made.*

10.4 Geothermal statutory areas

The following tables show the geothermal areas to which the statutory acknowledgement relates.

Statutory Area	Map Reference
Atiamuri geothermal field	as shown on OTS-113-32
Mangakino geothermal field	as shown on OTS-113-32
Okauia geothermal field	as shown on OTS-113-32
Okoroire geothermal field	as shown on OTS-113-32
Ongaroto geothermal field	as shown on OTS-113-32
Taihoa geothermal field	as shown on OTS-113-32
Whakamaru Hot Beach geothermal field	as shown on OTS-113-32

10.5 Statements of association

In accordance with section 34 of the Raukawa Claims Settlement Act 2014, the following statements of association are included below:

Raukawa have an association with the geothermal resources within their area of association, including at Okauia, Taihoa, Okoroire, Horohoro, Mangakino, Atiamuri, Whakamaru, Ongaroto. Raukawa acknowledge that other iwi have interests in these geothermal fields.

The people of Raukawa regard geothermal resources as taonga, handed down through the generations. Raukawa also consider geothermal resources to have a mauri in their own right and that mauri is connected to the condition of the site. Raukawa regard themselves as a kaitiaki of this taonga.

Historically and through to the present day, geothermal resources have been used in a variety of ways. Hot pools were used for cooking and the hot ground was used for cooking holes and ovens. Hot pools were also used for bathing and the mud was used in a medicinal manner to treat ailments such as infections and muscular conditions. Other geothermal areas were wāhi tapu: some places were recognised as places for healing and cleansing after battle, others were used as burial places.

The Raukawa association with geothermal resources stems from the arrival of the Tainui waka to Aotearoa, and the explorations of the Tainui ancestors, Rakatāura and Kahukeke through the current-day Raukawa rohe. In Raukawa traditions, these ancestors named many important sites on and around the geothermal resources.

Okauia Geothermal SA

Okauia Springs were and continue to be well-used by Raukawa people and other iwi due to the springs' healing qualities, especially for rheumatism. There are springs on either bank of the Waihou River and across the river is Papahuia, the other main group of springs.

A key site at Okauia Springs is Te Ramaroa located at Papahuia. Te Ramaroa was used by the people of Tangata marae and other iwi for healing mauri (illnesses), and addressing general aches and pains of the body. According to legend, Te Ramaroa was named after a waka. The waka was crewed by a rangatira and his wife who ignored a warning not to go into the area. As a result they turned to stone and it is said that a perpetual fire remains under the bow of the waka.

Taihoa Geothermal SA

The significance of the Taihoa geothermal site for Raukawa stems back to the generation of Māhina-a-rangi. Having successfully given birth to her son Raukawa, tradition says that Māhina-a-rangi then bathed in the warm waters of the hot pool now known as Taihoa.

The name of this pool was referred to as “Te Waitikihanga a Māhina-a-rangi”. Since that time, the people of Tangata marae and other iwi have utilised the hot pools at Taihoa to heal aches and pains.

Okoroire Geothermal SA

Raukawa have a long association with the Okoroire Geothermal area. The springs at Okoroire were used by Raukawa hapū living in Te Kaokaoroa o Pātetere including Ngāti Tukorehe and Ngāti Te Rangi, Ngāti Mōtai and Ngāti Āhuru as healing pools to ease aches and pains and alleviate rheumatism. By 1889 the hot springs were world renowned.

Raukawa Association to Whakamaru, Ongaroto and Horohoro SA

Whakamaru Geothermal SA

The Raukawa association to the Whakamaru Geothermal SA stems back to the generation of Rakatāura, the tohunga of the Tainui waka, and his wife Kahukeke. According to Raukawa tradition, the Whakamaru area was named by Rakatāura for Kahukeke. Kahukeke was an artisan with flax and when she and her husband arrived in the area, he built her a shelter from which she could work. He named the area Te Whakamarumarutanga-o-Kahukeke.

Since that time hapū such as Ngāti Wairangi and Ngāti Whāita have resided at Whakamaru. Along the banks of the Waikato River was an ancient settlement named Waimahana which straddled both banks of the Waikato River. This was a settlement of Ngāti Whāita and Ngāti Wairangi. This settlement took its name from the geothermal riches of the area (literally, “warm water”), and was famed as a mahinga kai for kumara which grew plentifully here due to the warmth created through geothermal activity. Also nearby is the hot springs of Motumatai in the Waipapa River.

Ongaroto Geothermal SA

Raukawa has a long association with Ongaroto stemming back to the ancestors Whāita and Wairangi, Raukawa’s grandchildren, and continuing to the present day. These ancestors were among those who settled the area and their descendants continued to live on the land. Standing at Ongaroto is the marae known as Ongaroto Pā. The name of the wharenui is Whāita named after the eponymous ancestor.

Ongaroto is located on the right bank of the Waikato River and the hapū used the geothermal springs in conjunction with the cooler waters of the Waikato to ease muscular aches and pains. On occasion some of the ngāwhā were used to slowly cook food.

Horohoro Geothermal SA

Raukawa has a long association with the Horohoro area stemming back to the time of the ancestors Whāita and Wairangi. The Horohoro bluffs are a significant geographical marker for the iwi.

Ngāti Huri and Ngāti Wairangi have longstanding connections to the Horohoro area. Historically, Ngāti Wairangi maintained cultivations at Horohoro and they continue to maintain a connection to Horohoro through their employment as foresters or in other pursuits such as pig hunting in the area.

According to Raukawa tradition, the hot pool at Horohoro was named Pupumahana and was used for washing garments, bathing and as a healing spa. This use of the pool is still practiced today.

Over the past 30 years Raukawa kaumātua have identified many sites of significance in the Horohoro region including burial sites and rock art.

10.6 Raukawa Claims Settlement Act 2014

In accordance with section 34 of the Raukawa Claims Settlement Act 2014, this section sets out the relevant provisions of sections 30 to 33, 35 and 36 in full.

30 Geothermal statutory acknowledgement by the Crown

The Crown acknowledges the statement of association for the geothermal resource.

31 Purposes of geothermal statutory acknowledgement

The only purposes of the geothermal statutory acknowledgement are to-

- (a) require relevant consent authorities and the Environment Court to have regard to the geothermal statutory acknowledgement, in accordance with sections 32 and 33; and*
- (b) require relevant consent authorities to record the geothermal statutory acknowledgement on statutory plans that relate to the geothermal resource and to provide summaries of resource consent applications or copies of notices of applications to the trustees, in accordance with sections 34 and 35; and*
- (c) enable the trustees and any member of Raukawa to cite the geothermal statutory acknowledgement as evidence of the association of Raukawa with the geothermal resource, in accordance with section 36.*

32 Relevant consent authorities to have regard to geothermal statutory acknowledgement

- (1) This section applies in relation to an application for a resource consent for an activity within, adjacent to, or directly affecting the geothermal resource.*
- (2) On and from the effective date, a relevant consent authority must have regard to the geothermal statutory acknowledgement relating to the geothermal resource in deciding, under section 95E of the Resource Management Act 1991, whether the trustees are affected persons in relation to the activity.*
- (3) Subsection (2) does not limit the obligations of a relevant consent authority under the Resource Management Act 1991.*

33 Environment Court to have regard to geothermal statutory acknowledgement

- (1) This section applies to proceedings in the Environment Court in relation to an application for a resource consent for an activity within, adjacent to, or directly affecting the geothermal resource.*
- (2) On and from the effective date, the Environment Court must have regard to the geothermal statutory acknowledgement relating to the geothermal resource in deciding, under section 274 of the Resource Management Act 1991, whether the trustees are persons with an interest in the proceedings greater than that of the general public.*

- (3) *Subsection (2) does not limit the obligations of the Environment Court under the Resource Management Act 1991.*

35 Provision of summary or notice to trustees

- (1) *Each relevant consent authority must, for a period of 20 years on and from the effective date, provide the following to the trustees for each resource consent application for an activity within, adjacent to, or directly affecting the geothermal resource:*
 - (a) *if the application is received by the consent authority, a summary of the application; or*
 - (b) *if notice of the application is served on the consent authority under section 145(10) of the Resource Management Act 1991, a copy of the notice.*
- (2) *A summary provided under subsection (1)(a) must be the same as would be given to an affected person by limited notification under section 95B of the Resource Management Act 1991 or as may be agreed between the trustees and the relevant consent authority.*
- (3) *The summary must be provided—*
 - (a) *as soon as is reasonably practicable after the relevant consent authority receives the application; but*
 - (b) *before the relevant consent authority decides under section 95 of the Resource Management Act 1991 whether to notify the application.*
- (4) *A copy of a notice must be provided under subsection (1)(b) not later than 10 working days after the day on which the consent authority receives the notice.*
- (5) *The trustees may, by written notice to a relevant consent authority,—*
 - (a) *waive the right to be provided with a summary or copy of a notice under this section; and*
 - (b) *state the scope of that waiver and the period it applies for.*
- (6) *This section does not affect the obligation of a relevant consent authority to decide,—*
 - (a) *under section 95 of the Resource Management Act 1991, whether to notify an application;*
 - (b) *under section 95E of that Act, whether the trustees are affected persons in relation to an activity.*

36 Use of geothermal statutory acknowledgement

- (1) *The trustees and any member of Raukawa may, as evidence of the association of Raukawa with the geothermal resource, cite the geothermal statutory acknowledgement in submissions concerning the taking, use, damming, or diverting of any geothermal water or geothermal energy from the geothermal resource that are made to or before—*
 - (a) *the relevant consent authorities; or*
 - (b) *the Environment Court; or*
 - (c) *the Environmental Protection Authority or a board of inquiry under Part 6AA of the Resource Management Act 1991.*
- (2) *The content of a statement of association is not, by virtue of the geothermal statutory acknowledgement, binding as fact on—*
 - (a) *the bodies referred to in subsection (1); or*
 - (b) *parties to proceedings before those bodies; or*
 - (c) *any other person who is entitled to participate in those proceedings.*
- (3) *However, the bodies and persons specified in subsection (2) may take the geothermal statutory acknowledgement into account.*
- (4) *To avoid doubt,—*

STATUTORY ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

- (a) *neither the trustees nor members of Raukawa are precluded from stating that Raukawa has an association with a geothermal resource that is not described in the geothermal statutory acknowledgement; and*
- (b) *the content and existence of the geothermal statutory acknowledgement do not limit any statement made.*